StoreNext

ScanMaster

Installation Guide, ScanMaster 2.7.0

ScanMaster V2 Installation Guide

Date of Issue	Product Identification Number	Part Number	Brief Description
March 2005	45001/083	89000198	Initial Release
January 2006	45001/083	89000283	2.3.0 Release
May 2007	45001/083	89000341	2.4.1 Release
December 2007	45001/083	89000412	2.5.0 Release
January 2008	45001/083	89000415	2.5.0 Updated
January 2009	45001/083	89000504	2.6.0 Release
April 2009	45001/083	89000510	2.6.0 Updated
February 2010	45001/083	89000552	2.7.0 Release

©Copyright StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC 1995-2010
All rights reserved

This publication is protected by federal copyright law. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted into any human or computer language in any form or by any means, stored in a retrieval system, transmitted, redistributed, translated or disclosed to third parties, or de-compiled in any way including, but not limited to, photocopy, photograph, electronic, mechanical, magnetic or manual without the express written permission of StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC or its licensors, if any. All copies, so authorized, shall contain a full copy of this copyright notice.

StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC endeavors to ensure that the information in this document is correct and fairly stated but does not accept liability for any error or omission. StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC makes no representation or warranties with respect to the contents hereof, and specifically disclaims any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose or non-infringement. No commitments by StoreNext or its suppliers are made from this documentation which is provided for information only.

Development of StoreNext products and documentation is continuous: StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC reserves the right to revise this publication and to make changes from time to time in the contents hereof or in the products herein described or discussed without notice and without any obligation of StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC to notify any person or organization of such revision or changes. Information published in this document will likely become obsolete over time and it is recommended that users regularly check for updates and newer versions.

StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC has prepared this manual for use by users, authorized third parties and personnel of StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC as a guide to the proper installation, operation, customization and/or maintenance of StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC equipment and software. The drawings and specifications contained herein are the property of StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC and/or its licensors.

Third-party products, services, or company names referenced in this document may be trademarked or copyrighted by their respective owners, and are for identification purposes only.

Copyrights, trademarks and license agreements shall be governed and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of Texas and the Federal Arbitration Act, and shall benefit Retalix, its successors, and assigns.

Address comments and corrections to:

StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC
Software Program Director
6100 Tennyson Parkway
Suite 130
Plano, Texas 75024

Table of Contents

Chapter 1: **Introduction to ScanMaster 2.07.00** **1**

Introduction to ScanMaster 2.07.00 1
Supported Configurations 2
Combined Server/ Back Office PC 2
Individual Server & Back Office PC 2
Determining Your System Needs 3
LAN Communications 3
Remote Support 3
Combined Server & Back Office Workstation 4
Server and Individual Back Office Workstation 4
BackOffice Workstation 5
Fujitsu TeamPOS S POS Terminal 7
ScanMaster System Software 9
ScanMaster Application Software 9
Customer Information Products 12
Site Preparation 13
Before Installation 13
Site Wiring 13
Equipment location 14
Network Interconnection 14
The Ethernet Card (for File Server and Back Office PC) 14
Twisted-Pair Interface Cable 15
Requirements of Unshielded Twisted Pair Cable 15
Hubs (Concentrators) 16
Network Characteristics 16
Adding Computers to the Network 16

Chapter 2: 2.07.00-050 Upgrade and Installation Procedures **1**

ScanMaster Upgrade and Installation Overview Procedures 1
Summary of Installation – Table of Contents 4
Server Setup 7
Prerequisites 7
Operating System Installation for the Server 8
Windows 2003 Server 8
Installing Windows 2003 Server 8

Configuring your Server 10
Changing Display Settings on the Windows 2003 Server 10
Windows 2000 Server 11
Create Boot Disks 11
Installing Windows 2000 Server 11
Configuring your Server 13
Changing Display Settings on the Windows 2000 Server 13
Sharing the Server CD-ROM Drive (Windows 2000 Server) 14
Setting TCP/IP as the Network Protocol on the Server (Windows 2000 Server) 14
Windows XP Professional (Acer OEM Version) 15
Configuring your Server 16
Changing Display Settings on the Windows XP Professional server 16
Configuring the Firewall, Automatic Update and Virus Protection Options (XP Service Pack 2 and greater) 17
Disabling Windows Messenger (Optional) 18
Windows XP Professional 18
Change the Boot Sequence 18
Configuring your Server 20
Changing Display Settings on the Windows XP Professional server 21
Configuring the Firewall, Automatic Update and Virus Protection Options (XP Service Pack 2 and greater) 21
Disabling Windows Messenger 21
Windows 2000 Professional 22
Create Boot Disks 22
Installing Windows 2000 Professional 23
Connecting to the Network 24
Configuring your Workstation 24
Windows Vista Business 26
Installing Windows Vista Business 26
Configuring your Server 27
Setting up the Administrator Password. 28
Setting the Workgroup Name. 29
Setting up Network Options. 30
Power Management Settings 30
Windows 7 Professional (Small Store Server) 31
Prepare Windows 7 Professional for ScanMaster Install 31
Windows Server 2008 35

Prepare Server 2008 for ScanMaster Install 35
Pervasive Installation 40
Shutting Down Server Processes – Upgrades only 40
Installing Pervasive Server Engine on the Server 41
Pervasive v9.5 Patch Instructions when running Vista Business 43
ScanMaster 2.07.00 45
Full Installation of ScanMaster 2.07.00 on the Server 45
Upgrading ScanMaster 2.07.00 on the Server 48
Installing ScanMaster 2.07.00 PoS Workstation Software on the Server 52
Post Installation 53
Norton Antivirus (Windows XP Acer OEM Version) 53
Windows XP Professional as Server – Sharing adjustments 53
Back Office Workstation Setup 55
Prerequisites 55
Operating System Installation for the Back Office Workstation 56
Windows XP Professional (Acer OEM Version) 56
Configuring your Back Office Workstation 57
Changing Display Settings on the Windows XP Professional Back Office Workstation 58
Configuring the Firewall, Automatic Update and Virus Protection Options (XP Service Pack 2 and greater) 58
Disabling Windows Messenger (Optional) 59
Windows XP Professional 60
Change the Boot Sequence 60
Configuring your Workstation 62
Changing Display Settings on the Windows XP Professional Workstation 62
Configuring the Firewall, Automatic Update and Virus Protection Options (Windows XP Professional Service Pack 2 and greater) 62
Windows 2000 Professional 63
Change the Boot Sequence 63
Configuring your Workstation 64
Configuring your Display 65
Configuring TCP/IP Protocol on Windows 2000 Professional (Optional) 65
Windows Vista Business 67
Installing Windows Vista Business 67
Configuring your Workstation 68
Setting up the Administrator Password 69

Setting the Workgroup Name 70
Setting up Network Options 71
Power Management Settings 71
Windows 7 Professional 72
Prepare Windows 7 Professional for ScanMaster Install 72
Pervasive Installation 76
Shutting Down Server Processes – Upgrades only 76
Installing Pervasive Workstation Engine 77
Pervasive v9.5 Patch Instructions when running Vista Business 79
ScanMaster 2.07.00 80
Full Installation of ScanMaster 2.07.00 on the Back Office Workstation 80
Upgrading ScanMaster 2.07.00 on the Back Office Workstation 82
Post Installation 85
Norton Antivirus (Windows XP Acer OEM Version) 85
PoS Workstation Setup 86
Prerequisites 86
Fujitsu TeamPOS 3000XL / 3000XL2 PoS Workstation Combo Board Printer Jumper Settings 86
3000XL 86
3000XL2 86
Fujitsu TeamPOS M PoS Workstation Switch Settings 87
TeamPoS 36XX Configurations 88
TeamPoS 36XX Display Configurations 90
DVI Monitor 1 and VGA Monitor 2 90
Using two monitors, one DVI and one VGA on the TP36XX 90
BIOS Setup 90
Driver Setup 90
VGA Monitor 1 and VGA Monitor 2 92
Using two monitors, Both VGA on the TP36XX 92
BIOS Setup 92
Driver Setup 92
VGA Monitor 93
Using a single VGA monitor on the TP36XX 93
BIOS Setup 93
Driver Setup 93
TeamPoS 36XX Windows Media Component Installation 94
Operating System Installation for the PoS Workstation 96
Microsoft WePOS PoS and Windows XPe (Embedded) PoS Workstation Configuration 96

Configuring TCP/IP Network Protocol 96
Joining the Store Workgroup 97
Map the Network Drive 98
Disabling Windows Messenger (Does not apply to the TP3000XL/ TP3000XL2/TP3000XE/TP36XX Microsoft WePOS image) 99
Installing Windows XPe Patch on the PoS Workstation (Does not apply to the TP3000XL/ TP3000XL2/TP3000XE Microsoft WePOS image and TP36XX) 99
Pervasive Installation 100
Installing Pervasive Workstation Engine 100
Pervasive v9.5 Patch Instructions when running Vista Business 102
OPOS Installation 103
Installation Preparation 103
OPOS Common Control (RCS) 103
FTXS OPOS (Fujitsu) 104
Epson OPOS (For Installations w/ Epson Printers) 106
TPG OPOS (For Installations w/ TPG A760, A776, A794 Printers) 108
TPG USB Printer Driver Installation 109
Configuring Digital Video on TeamPoS M unit 109
Switching TeamPoS 2000 M from DVI to FJLCD 110
Switching TeamPoS 2000 M from FJLCD to DVI 112
Configuring Digital Video on the TeamPoS 3000XL / XL2 PoS 114
Setting up the TeamPoS 3000XL / 3000XL2 with dual monitors 114
TeamPOS 3000XE Second Video Card Setup 115
Touch Screen Driver Installation 118
Fujitsu D25 Touch Screen Drivers 118
Fujitsu D15 Touch Screen Drivers 119
Install the 3M TouchWare driver 119
Install 3M TouchWare Driver Utility on a Single monitor system. 120
Install 3M TouchWare Driver Utility on a Dual monitor system 120
Fujitsu D12/A12 Touch Screen Drivers 122
Dual Screen Installations 122
Calibrating the Fujitsu D12 or A12 Touch Screen 123
Fujitsu D22_D25 TeamKey 32-Key Mapping Utility 123
Fujitsu TeamKey 32-Key Mapping Utility 125
Disabling Windows Messenger 126
ScanMaster 2.07.00 128

Full Installation ScanMaster 2.07.00 on the PoS Workstation 128
Setup 3M TouchWare driver to work with ScanMaster PoS 132
Upgrading ScanMaster 2.07.00 on the PoS Workstations 133
Uninstalling ScanMaster on the Server and Back Office Workstations 135
Appendix A - Configuring Fujitsu Scanner/Scales 137
Configuring the Fujitsu Symphony 9900 Scanner/Scale 137
Configuring the Fujitsu SlimScan 1200 Scanner 138
Appendix B - Building the ScanMaster database manually in Pervasive SQL (v10.x) 140
Appendix C - Disk Mirroring 141
Setting Up Disk Mirroring in Windows NT 141
Setting Up Disk Mirroring in Windows 2000 142
If the Primary Hard Drive Fails 142
Appendix D - Configuring NCR Hardware using MakePOS 143
Appendix E - TeamPOS 3000 XE Hardware Configuration 146

Chapter 3: **Customizing Your System** **1**

Customizing Your System 1
ScanMaster Back Office Workstation Configuration 2
Additional Recommended Setup: 2
Setting Date and Time 2
ScanMaster Software Registration 3
Logging on to the ScanMaster Back Office Workstation 3
Entering Employees into the Database 4
Setting Up Departments and Subdepartments 4
Setting up Customer Maintenance Options 5
Setting up the Item File 5
Setting up the Customer File 5
Setting up the Tax Table 6
Setting up Security 6
Define Receipts 6
Setting up the SRR Editor 6
Configuring Setting Files (Back Office & POS Workstation) 7
Configuring Media 7
Configuring Keyboards 7

Chapter 4: **File Structure and Description** **1**

Workstation/Server Folder Structure 2
Folder Structure 2

Workstation/Server Folders 3
ScanMaster Executable Files 4
GROCERY - Grocery Folder 4
Item Maintenance 4
Miscellaneous Item Maintenance 4
Employee Maintenance 5
Department Maintenance 5
Customer Maintenance 5
Accounts Receivable 5
System Personalization 6
Media Configurator 6
Keyboard Configurator 6
Communications 6
Reports 7
Financial Reports 7
Item File Reports 7
End-of-Day Procedure 7
Office Procedures 8
System Services 8
General system log 9
Standalone Utilities (and DOS Applications) 9
Installation Utilities 10
Btrieve Data Files 11
GROCERY\HOST 19
GROCERY\LOCAL 19
GROCERY\OFFSALE 19
GROCERY\SIL\ACHIVE 19
GROCERY\SIL\BATCH 19
GROCERY\SIL\DECODE 19
GROCERY\SIL\ENCODE 19
GROCERY\SIL\OUTPUT 19
GROCERY\SIL\SOURCE 20
GROCERY\SIL\TEMPLATE 20
GROCERY\SRR 20
GROCERY\FILES\BLANK 20
GROCERY\FILES\CTL 20
GROCERY\FILES\LOG 22
GROCERY\FILES\ASC 23

GROCERY\FILES\MEDIA\IMAGES and GROCERY\FILES\MEDIA\MOVIES 23
GROCERY\FILES\MEDIA\CUSTOMERS 23
ASP – Application Service Provider Directory 24
HISTORY - History Directory 25
JOURNAL - Journal Directory 26
REGFILES - Register Files Directory 27
TELXON - Telxon Directory 31
TILL - Till Directory 31
UPDATE - Update Directory 31
Additional Workstation Software Index 32
Directory Structure 32
Additional Workstation Directories 33
POS Workstation Software Index 34
Directory Structure 34
POS Workstation Directories 35
Files for POS Workstation 36
<Program File Drive>:\ - ROOT Directory 36
GROCERY DIRECTORY <Program File Drive>:\GROCERY 36
<Program File Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES 38
<Program File Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\BLANK 39
<Program File Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\CT 40
RAMDRIVE DIRECTORY <Program File Drive>:\RAMDRIVE 40
REGSTART.DAT 41
ScanMaster Financial Data Flow 44
At the Register 44
Read Only 44
Write Only 44
Read and Write 44
EFT Logs 44
Signature Capture Files 45
Electronic Coupons 45
Electronic Journal 46
During each sale 46
At the end of each sale 46
Transaction Logs and Checklogs 47
Sign On 47
After Each Transaction 47
After Sign Off 47

Pickup and Loan Data Flow 48
Accept 48
The office record is modified in: 48
Details 48
SRR Adjustments for the Current Day 49
Handkeyed Receipt 49
The office record is modified in: 49
Handkeyed Paidout 49
The office record is modified in: 49
Mid-Day Deposit Data Flow 50
Office Totals 50
Accounts Receivable Postings 51
The office record is modified in: 51
Office Adjustment Data Flow 52
At accept 52
The office record is modified in: 52
Cashier Delay Data Flow 53
At Accept 53
Media Totals are moved. 53
Department totals are moved. 53
Cashier TLOGs are moved. 53
Zero-byte placeholder files are created. 53
Check Logs are moved. 53
Zero-byte placeholder files are created. 53
Cashier Settlement Data Flow 54
At Accept 54
Media Totals are moved 54
Department totals are moved 54
Office Record is Increased 54
Cashier TLOGs are Moved 54
Zero-byte Placeholder Files are Created 54
Check Logs are Moved 54
Zero-byte Placeholder Files are Created 54
A Settlement Record is Written 54
Adjust Settled Cashiers Data Flow 55
SM2ADJST.EXE 55
Modifies the Office Safe Totals. 55
The Cashier Over/Short and Net Store Over/Short on the SRR are updated. 55

Updates Cashier Over/Short In Cashier Totals 55
Writes both adjusted totals and new complete totals to the audit trail 55
End of Day Data Flow 56
SM2EOD.EXE 56
1 – Sets Flag Files 56
2 - Copies all of the Batches: 56
3 - Copies the register personalization files 56
4 - Copies all Btrieve files 56
5 - Secret Numbers Reset 56
6 – Makes REG Copy of Btrieve Files 56
7 - Copies Blank Data Collect Files 56
8 – Writes Register Flag Files 57
9 – Updates LASTZ.RUN 57
8 – Runs EOD Script 57
9 – Deletes End-of-Day Flag 57
Running the End-of-Day Script 58
A. SM2CTLOG.EXE 58
Consolidates TLOGs 58
Copies Files 58
B. SM2CDEPT.EXE 58
Processes The Department Totals 58
Updates Weekly Department Totals 58
C. SM2CSHPR.EXE 58
Compiles lane and cashier productivity 58
D. SM2TLRPT.EXE 59
Enhanced Dept Report for the Day 59
Enhanced Dept Report For The Current Week 59
Enhanced Dept Report Last Week 59
Coupon Totals 59
E. SM2NRT.EXE 59
F. SM2ACTVT.EXE 60
G. SM2BAPLY.EXE 60
H. User Added Applications 60
Using SM2EOD.SCR 60
Adding an Executable 60
Adding a Batch File 61
Automatic Batch Activation 62
End-of-Day Resets Register 63

1 – Resets Register Totals 63
2– Resets Random Winner 63
3 – Copies Blank Files 63
4 – Copies the Error Log 63
5 – Copies And Deletes EFT Logs 64
6 – Copies All Reg Files And Converts Them To Btrieve Files 64
7 – Deletes the End-of-Day flag 64
8 – Copies Personalization Files From <LAN Drive>:\Update 64
9 – Reboots the Workstation 65
End-of-Day Archive 66
SMWARC.EXE: 66
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\ASC\GRCTLOG.ASC 66
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GRCCLGss.ccc (individual cashier check logs) 66
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\SRR*.* 66
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\LASTZ.RUN 66
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\LOG\EJ.LOG 66
Archives and Deletes 67
Deletes Place Holders for Tlogs and Checklogs: 67
SRR Adjusts Current Day 68
Handkeyed Receipt: 68
Handkeyed Paidout 68
Office Reconciliation 69
SM2OFREC.EXE 69
Final Deposit 70
SM2DPSIT.EXE 70
Archiving Files for End of Day 71
Overview 71

Chapter 5: **Btrieve File Manager** **1**

Btrieve File Manager 1
Overview 1
SM2BUTIL Windows Interface 2
Displaying Btrieve File Statistics 2
SM2BUTIL -STAT <BTR Filename> 2
Creating a Btrieve File 5
SM2BUTIL -CREATE <BTR Filename> <CTL File> 5
Saving Btrieve Records to Another File 5

SM2BUTIL -SAVE <BTR File> <ASC Filename> 5
SM2BUTIL -LOAD <Btrieve File Name> <ASC File Name> 6
Recovering a Btrieve File 7
SM2BUTIL -RECOVER <BTR File> <Output File> 7
Rebuilding a Btrieve File 9
SM2BUTIL -REBUILD <BTR File> <Control File> 9
Pervasive.SQL v8 Utilities 10
Pervasive.SQL v8 Status Codes and Messages 11
Status Codes 11
Messages 11

Chapter 6: **Recovery Procedures** **1**

Recovery Procedures 1
Switching POS Workstations to Off-Line Mode 2
The Network Has Failed 2
If the network is down (the cashier is in the middle of a sale) 2
If the network is down and POS workstations are inoperable (the cashier is idle and no new sale has been initiated): 2
Powering Down the ScanMaster File Server 3
POS Workstations 3
ScanMaster Back Office Workstation 3
ScanMaster File Server 4
The ScanMaster File Server Requires Service or File Repair is Needed 4
Power On Sequence – File Server 5
Switching back to On-Line Mode 6
Setting Up and Initializing Backup 6
Overview 6
Creating a Batch File to Automatically Back Up ScanMaster during EOD 7
Syntax 7
Parameters 7
Manually Backing Up the System Using the User Defined Menu. 9
Editing the User-Defined Menu 9
File Recovery Procedures 10
Overview 10
Restoring a File Server Using a Tape Back-Up 10

Chapter 7: **Troubleshooting** **1**

Troubleshooting 1
Off-Line Mode 2
If Communication with the File Server Fails: Switching to Off-Line Mode 2
If the network is down: POS workstations are inoperable 2
If the Network is Up: Switching a POS workstation to Off-Line Mode 3
If the Network is Up: Switching Back to On-Line Mode 4
Corrupt Files 5
Corrupt Executables 5
Determining the Characteristics of a File 5
Recreating the Corrupted File 5
Recovering a Corrupted File 5
Responding to a Full-Disk Condition 6
Program Errors 6
Responding to a Full-Table Condition 6
Responding to a Locked File Condition 6
Conclusion 7
Troubleshooting the POS Workstation 7
Extracting TLog Files 8
Overview 8
ScanMaster TLog Extract Screen 8
Using the ScanMaster TLog Extract 8
Field Descriptions 9
Data to Extract from Consolidated Tlog: 9
Which TLog to Extract: 9
Button Options 10
Sample ScanMaster TLog Extract Report – Dept. Sales 10
Optimizing System Performance 11
Overview 11
Installing Hardware Accessories on Workstation PCs 11
Installing Background Processing Software on Workstation PCs 11
Limiting the Use of Screensavers 12
Adding a Second LAN Card to Speed up the Network 12
Trouble Shooting ScanMaster Balancing Problems 13
Why are there no Store Totals in the Office Reconciliation? 13
How can I reprocess sales and reproduce reports after I ran two End of Days? 13

Why are my handkeyed (0500) paidouts not reporting to the SRR on the correct line? 14
Why are my Handkeyed (0500) Paidouts reporting to two lines on the SRR? 14
Why don't the sales in my hourly activity report match my sales on other reports? 14
I can't get my SRR to balance. 14
What steps can I take to research an individual cashier report that doesn't balance? 15
How can I get Cashier Reports from a store without faxing? 15
How can I get the SRR from a store without faxing? 16
Option 1 16
Option 2 16

Appendix A: **Personalization Survey and Setup Guide 1**

Customer Survey 1
Set-Up Preparation 2
Customer Data Sheet 4
Customer Information 4
Installation Information 4
Store Information 5
Comments / Requirements 5
Item File 6
Mix & Match Maintenance 7
Flip Chart Maintenance 8
Promotion / Coupon Editor 9
Bottle Link Editor 10
Report Codes 11
Report Codes 11
Tare Table 12
Variable Tare Tables 13
Electronic Coupon Maintenance 14
Bundle File Maintenance 15
Adjective Price Maintenance 16
Unit of Measure Maintenance 17
Like Code Maintenance 18
Employee File 19
Enhanced Security 20
Enhanced Security Worksheet 22
Department File 25

Subdepartment Maintenance 26
Department Restriction Matrix 27
Group Descriptors 28
Customer File 29
Negative Check File Maintenance 30
Customer File Maintenance 31
Check/Charge Reason Codes 32
Frequent Shopper Discount Matrix 33
POS Workstation Settings Survey 34
POS Workstation Settings 35
Back Office Settings Survey 55
Back Office Setting Options 55
Banner File 60
Reason Code Maintenance 61
Reason Code Reasons 62
Tax Table Maintenance 63
Keyboard Configurator 64
Keyboard Options 64
Media Configurator 67
Cash 67
Check 67
Foreign Currency 68
ACH (Electronic Check) 69
Debit Card 70
Master Card, Visa, American Express & Discover 71
In-store Charge 72
Gift Certificate 73
Food Stamps 74
WIC 74
Master Card, Visa, American Express & Discover Credit 75
In-store Chg Credit 76
Store Coupon 77
MFG Coupon 77
Electronic Food Stamps 77
Electronic Benefit Transfer 78
Gift Card 80
Foreign Currency Rate Editor 81
Tax Code Editor 82
SRR Editor 83

Communication Parameters 84
Communication CRT Promo Editor 85

Index 1

Chapter 1: Introduction to ScanMaster 2.07.00

Introduction to ScanMaster 2.07.00

ScanMaster Release 2.07.00 is state of the art software for the grocery industry. Written in Microsoft Visual Basic for speed and efficiency, the ScanMaster back office runs on Windows XP Professional SP2, Windows 2000 Professional SP2, Windows 2000 Server SP2 and Windows 2003 Server. It provides the following benefits:

- **Task switching.** You can have many programs or tasks running at the same time and switch between them. This allows you to work more efficiently than with a system that only allows you to use one program at a time.
- **Ease of use and fast training.** Since Microsoft Windows is the largest selling Graphical User Interface (GUI), many users already know how to use it. Even if they do not, once they learn to use one ScanMaster function, they can quickly learn the others. Users spend less time learning to use ScanMaster, and more time in productive work.
- **Windows device support**. ScanMaster can use inkjet and laser printers, high-resolution monitors, sound cards, or any other device that has a Windows driver.

Supported Configurations

ScanMaster can be configured with a single PC, with the server and back office software on the same computer. ScanMaster can also be configured with two PCs, using one as a server and the other as a Back Office Workstation. The hardware must be certified with the selected operating system.

Combined Server/ Back Office PC

This configuration uses a single Pentium 1.7 GHz CPU/Server, which runs both the network and ScanMaster.

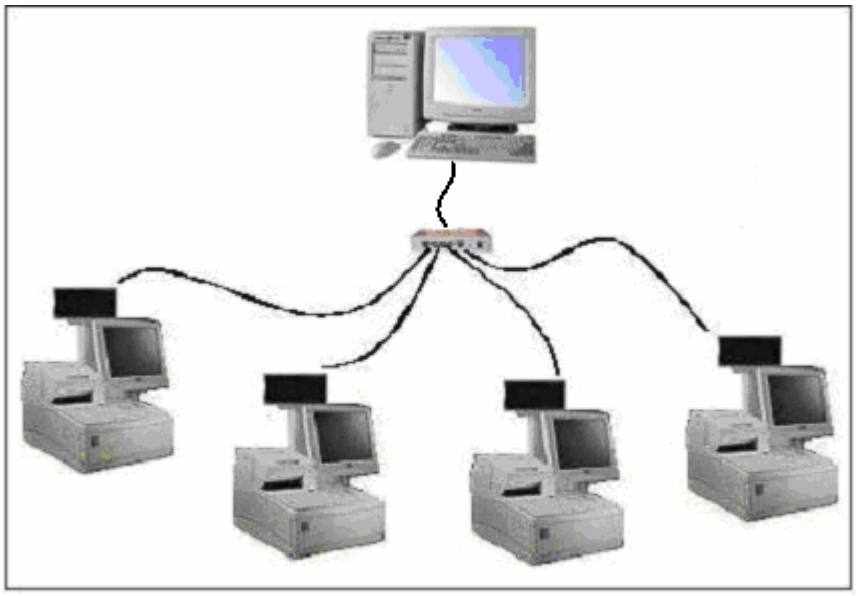


Figure 1-1: Combined Server / Back Office PC Configuration

Individual Server & Back Office PC

This configuration uses a Pentium 2.7 GHz CPU/Server, which runs both the network and ScanMaster software. It also uses a Pentium 2.7 GHz CPU as a Back Office Workstation.

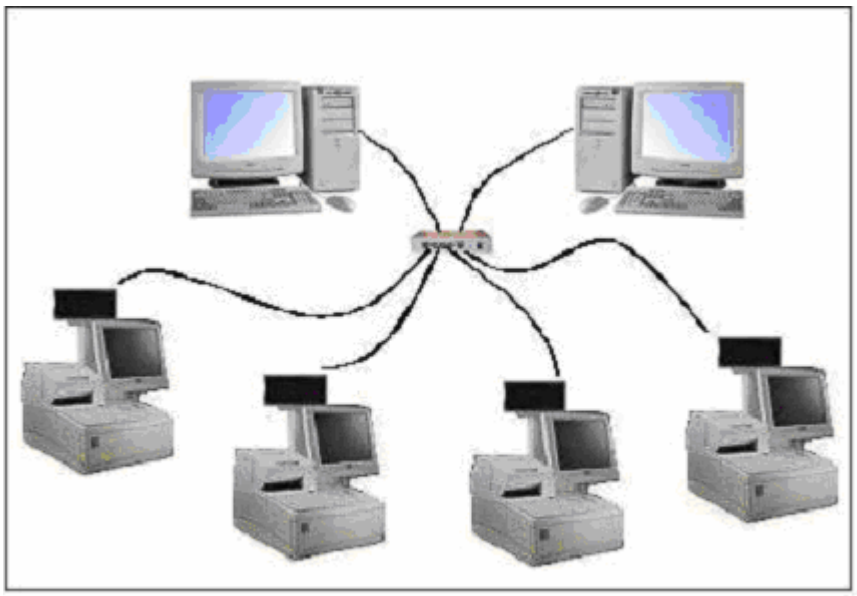


Figure 1-2: Individual Server & Back Office PC Configuration

Determining Your System Needs

Some of your system needs are determined by your actual working environment. For example, how many lanes are in your store and how busy are they? Other factors that affect your requirements include the following considerations.

- The size of your database is determined by the number of customers and transactions.
- Your choice of a combined or individual Back Office/Server combination will affect both your hardware and software requirements.

LAN Communications

A LAN communications network requires a hub device (concentrator) connecting the server, the Back Office, and every POS workstation. ScanMaster supports the following 10BaseT Ethernet cards:

- SMC Ethernet 10/100 BaseT Ethernet Cards
- Intel 10/100 BaseT Ethernet Cards

Remote Support

The easiest way for you to get ScanMaster upgrades and technical support is over the phone line. Your computers can receive software quickly, and customer support personnel can check the state of your computers. You must have a 28.8K Baud (or faster) Hayes Compatible Modem. Any software for the modem must support X-modem and Z-modem standards.

Combined Server & Back Office Workstation

Combined Server & Back Office Workstation Configuration	Minimum	Recommended
Hardware		
Processor	400 MHz Pentium or highter	2.7 GHz Pentium or higher
Disk	4.5GB SCSI Disk or Ultra IDE Disk	40GB SCSI Disk or Ultra IDE Disk (2 if mirroring)
Removable Disk	3.5" 1.44 MB Removable Disk	3.5" 1.44 MB Removable Disk
Memory	1 GB RAM	2 GB RAM
CD ROM	Required	Required
Video Display	SVGA - 1024 x 768, 256 Color Support, 14 Inch	SVGA – 1024 x 768, 256 Color Support, 17 Inch
Tape Back Up Unit	Required: XP Compatible Tape Drive (Minimum 4 GB)	Required: XP Compatible Tape Drive (Minimum 4 GB)
Uninterruptable Power Supply	Optional	Recommended
80 Column Printer	Ink Jet or Laser	Ink Jet or Laser
Modem (External type recommended)	28.8 KBPS, V.32 Hayes Compatible	56 KBPS, V.32 Hayes Compatible
Ethernet Card (Note: Recommend network card supporting multiple protocols).	10 BaseT (and equivalent Hub)	10-100 (and equivalent Hub)

Figure 1-3: Minimum and Recommended Requirements

Server and Individual Back Office Workstation

Server with 1 or more Workstations Configuration	Minimum	Recommended
Hardware		
Processor	400 MHz Pentium or higher	2.7 GHz Pentium or higher
Disk	4.5 GB SCSI Disk or Ultra IDE Disk	40 GB SCSI Disk or Ultra IDE Disk (2 if mirroring)
Removable Disk	3.5" 1.44 MB Removable Disk	3.5" 1.44 MB Removable Disk
Memory	1 GB RAM	2 GB RAM
CD ROM	Required	Required
Video Display	SVGA - 1024 x 768, 256 Color Support, 14 Inch	SVGA - 1024 x 768, 256 Color Support, 17 Inch
Tape Back Up Unit	Required: XP Compatible Tape Drive (Minimum 4 GB)	Required: XP Compatible Tape Drive (Minimum 4 GB)
Server with 1 or more Workstations	Minimum	Recommended

Configuration		
Uninterruptable Power Supply	Optional	Recommended
80 Column Printer	Ink Jet or Laser	Ink Jet or Laser
Modem	28.8 KBPS, V.32 Hayes Compatible	56 KBPS, V.32 Hayes Compatible
Ethernet Card (Note: Recommend network card supporting multiple protocols)	10BaseT (and equivalent Hub)	10-100 (and equivalent Hub)

Figure 1-4: Minimum and Recommended Requirements for Server with 1 or more Back Office Workstations

BackOffice Workstation

BackOffice Workstation Configuration	Minimum	Recommended
Hardware		
Processor	400 MHz Pentium or higher	2.7 GHz Pentium or higher
Disk	4.5 GB SCSI Disk	40 GB SCSI Disk (2 if mirroring)
Removable Disk	3.5" 1.44 MB Removable Disk	3.5" 1.44 MB Removable Disk
Memory	256 MB RAM (see Note below)	512 MB RAM (see Note Below)
CD ROM	Required	Required
Video Display	SVGA - 1024 x 768, 256 Color Support, 14 Inch	SVGA - 1024 x 768, 256 Color Support, 17 Inch
Tape Back Up Unit	Optional	Optional
Ethernet Card (Note: Recommend network card supporting multiple protocols)	10BaseT (and equivalent Hub)	10-100 (and equivalent Hub)

Figure 1-5: Minimum and Recommended Requirements for Back Office Workstation

Note: Memory requirements listed here are for the ScanMaster application only. If additional applications are loaded, the ScanMaster memory minimum and recommended requirements need to increase accordingly.

Fujitsu TeamPOS M POS Terminal

A description of the minimum and recommended POS hardware and software configurations and the peripherals that are supported by the Fujitsu TeamPOS terminal are detailed below.

Note: In addition to the software outlined below, it is necessary to obtain the proper number of workstation licenses. Please consult the Microsoft licensing requirements for further details.

POS Workstation TeamPOS	Minimum	Recommended
Hardware		
Processor	400 MHz or higher	1.3 GHz or higher
Disk	2 GB Hard Disk	40 GB Hard Disk or higher
Memory	256 MB	512 MB
Ethernet Adapter	Ethernet 10 Base T	Ethernet 10 Base T or 10/100
Software		
Windows	Microsoft XP Embedded or Windows 2000 Professional, Service Pack 2	Microsoft XP Embedded or Windows 2000 Professional, Service Pack 2
OPOS	Fujitsu OPOS Epson or Axiohm OPOS (PTR)	

Figure 1-6: Fujitsu TeamPOS 2000 M Requirements

Support 7452 Peripherals	
Printers	**Scanners & Scanner/Scales**
Epson h-TM6000II –113	Symphony 9900 (Single Cable RS232)
Epson h-TM6000II –118	SmartScan 9950 (Single Cable RS232)
Epson h-TM6000II –123	SlimScan 1200 (RS232)
Epson h-TM6000II –128	NCR 7835/7836/7837 Hand Scanners (RS232)
Axiohm A760	NCR 7875 UPC Scanner & Scanner/Scale (RS232 Magellan emulation)
	NCR 7870 Scanner/Scale (RS232 Magellan emulation)
	NCR 7880 Scanner Scale (RS232 Magellan emulation)

EPD's	Customer Displays
NCR 5944 (RS232) NCR 5945 (RS232) Verifone Omni-490 (RS232) Verifone Everest (RS232) Verifone Omni-7000 (RS232)	Fujitsu 2X20 (RS232) Fujitsu 15″ Flat Panel Display (Analog)
Keyboards	**Operator Displays**
Fujitsu 92M POS Keyboard w/ or w/o MSR Fujitsu 92U POS Keyboard w or w/o MSR	Fujitsu 15″ Touch Panel Digital (TeamPOS 2000 M) Fujitsu 15″ Panel No Touch Digital (TeamPOS 2000 M)
Cash Drawers	**Coin Dispenser**
Fujitsu Full size Cash Drawer Fujitsu	NCR Serial 2010

Figure 1-7: Fujitsu TeamPOS 2000 M Supported Peripherals

Fujitsu TeamPOS S POS Terminal

A description of the minimum and recommended POS hardware and software configurations and the peripherals that are supported by the Fujitsu TeamPOS S terminal are detailed below.

Note: In addition to the software outlined below, it is necessary to obtain the proper number of workstation licenses. Please consult the Microsoft licensing requirements for further details.

POS Workstation TeamPOS	Minimum	Recommended
Hardware		
Processor	400 MHz or higher	850 MHz or higher
Disk	2 GB Hard Disk	40 GB Hard Disk or higher
Memory	256 MB	512 MB
Ethernet Adapter	Ethernet 10 Base T	Ethernet 10 Base T or 10/100
Software		
Windows	Microsoft XP Embedded or Windows 2000 Professional, Service Pack 2	Microsoft XP Embedded or Windows 2000 Professional, Service Pack 2
OPOS	Fujitsu OPOS Epson or Axiohm OPOS (PTR)	

Figure 1-8: Fujitsu TeamPOS 2000 S Requirements

Printers	Scanners & Scanner/Scales
Epson h-TM6000II –113	Symphony 9900 (Single Cable RS232)
Epson h-TM6000II –118	SmartScan 9950 (Single Cable RS232)
Epson h-TM6000II –123	SlimScan 1200 (RS232)
Epson h-TM6000II –128	NCR 7835/7836/7837 Hand Scanners (RS232)
Axiohm A760	NCR 7875 UPC Scanner & Scanner/Scale (RS232 Magellan emulation)
	NCR 7870 Scanner/Scale (RS232 Magellan emulation)
	NCR 7880 Scanner Scale (RS232 Magellan emulation)
EPD's	**Customer Displays**
NCR 5944 (RS232) NCR 5945 (RS232) Verifone Omni-490 (RS232) Verifone Everest (RS232) Verifone Omni-7000 (RS232)	Fujitsu 15″ Flat Panel Display (Analog)
Keyboards	**Operator Displays**
Fujitsu 92M POS Keyboard w/ or w/o MSR Fujitsu 92U POS Keyboard w or w/o MSR	Fujitsu 15″ Touch Panel Analog Fujitsu 15″ Panel No Touch Analog
Cash Drawers	**Coin Dispenser**
Fujitsu Full size Cash Drawer Fujitsu	NCR Serial 2010

Figure 1-9: Fujitsu TeamPOS 2000 S Supported Peripherals

ScanMaster System Software

ID	Description	Integration Requirement	Configuration Notes and Workarounds
	Windows XP Professional SP2 Windows 2000 Server, SP2 Windows 2003 Server	Required Operating System for the ScanMaster Server	Please consult the Microsoft XP/2000 Server licensing requirements for details
	Windows XP Professional SP2 Windows 2000 Professional, SP2 Windows XP Professional	Required Operating System for the ScanMaster Back Office Workstation	Please consult the Microsoft XP/2000 Server licensing requirements for details
	Windows XP Embedded or Windows 2000 Professional, SP2	Required for each POS terminal	Typically is pre-loaded in each NCR POS terminal
	Pervasive SQL Version 8 Server Edition	Server version required for server	Note: Not StoreNext sourced. May be obtained through Pervasive distributors (800) 287-4383 or Retalix. Please consult this guide for installation instructions.
	Pervasive SQL Version 8 Workstation Edition	Required for each back office workstation and POS terminal.	Note: Not StoreNext sourced. May be obtained through Pervasive distributors (800) 287-4383 or Retalix. Please consult this guide for installation instructions.

Figure 1-10: ScanMaster System Software

ScanMaster Application Software

Description	Package Dependencies	Configuration Notes and Workarounds

ScanMaster **2.07.00** Base Application	None	This package contains the ScanMaster application software, which provides basic POS checkout functionality. It includes the necessary software for the POS and back office workstations as well as the server applications. It provides the user with such functionality as POS sales functions and processing, store accounting, sales reporting, and administrative functions such as file maintenance. This software is licensed on a per server basis.
ScanMaster **2.07.00** POS Workstation License	Base Application	Included in this package is the standard sales application software which resides in the TeamPOS 2000 workstations and is licensed on a per POS workstation basis. Note that it is necessary that this package be licensed for each POS workstation in use.
ScanMaster **2.07** Back Office Workstation License	Requires: Base Application	This package contains the necessary software to enable the use of back office clients, which reside on processors other than the ScanMaster server. This software is licensed on a per back office workstation basis.
ScanMaster **2.07** Electronic Journal Package	Requires: Base Application and either Sales Application for the POS Workstation	This software package provides the user with complete electronic journal functions. It includes the necessary software for the POS and back office workstations as well as the server. It eliminates the need for a paper journal to be used on each of the POS terminals by capturing this information electronically. In addition, it provides the user with the ability to do electronic searches and inquires as well as file management functions. This software is licensed on a per POS workstation basis.
ScanMaster **2.07** Electronic Coupon Package	Requires: Base Application	This software package provides the user with ability to link UPC's or PLU's to either manufacturer or store coupons. These coupons, which can be controlled by date and time, can reduce the price of an item (by a percentage or fixed amount) as well as issue frequent buyer points (regular or bonus.) Additionally, it provides the user the ability to create, edit and report upon coupons. This software is licensed on a per server basis.
ScanMaster **2.07** SIL Hostlink Package	Requires: Base Application	This software package provides the ability for the store system to communicate to a host processing system via the Standard Interchange Language (SIL.) This software is licensed on a per server basis.

Description	Package Dependencies	Configuration Notes and Workarounds
ScanMaster **2.07** FM Terminal Support Package	Requires: Base Application	This software package provides the necessary interfaces into the following FM terminals to support both direct and batch mode maintenance for the PLU file: • Telxon 912 terminals • Telxon 960 terminals • Symbol 6140 terminals • Symbol 6842 terminals • Symbol 6846 terminals Note that this package does not include the FM terminals nor the application, which resides in them. This must be obtained from the vendor or dealer selling the FM terminal. This software is licensed on a per server basis.
ScanMaster **2.07** RDS Shelf Label Interface	Requires: Base Application	This software package enables the RDS Shelf Label software to be interfaced into ScanMaster. Note that it does not include the RDS Shelf Label software itself, which must be obtained from an authorized supplier of this software. This software is licensed on a per server basis.
ScanMaster **2.07** EFT Interface	Requires: Base Application	This software package provides ScanMaster interfaces with the following EFT providers or networks: Concord Plourde EPS Hypercom (Microtrax) MPS Lynk Note that it does not include the EFT network hardware nor the authorization software itself, which must be obtained from an authorized supplier. The individual EFT suppliers should be contacted directly to obtain additional information relative to the switches supported and installation details. This software is licensed on a per server basis.

Description	Package Dependencies	Configuration Notes and Workarounds
ScanMaster **2.07** S&H Green Points Software Interface (formerly xiNETix)	Requires: Base Application	This software package provides the necessary software to interface the S&H Green Points software into ScanMaster. Note that it does not include the S&H Green Points software itself, which must be obtained from an authorized supplier of this software. This software is licensed on a per server basis.

Figure 1-11: ScanMaster Application Software

Customer Information Products

Description	How to Obtain
ScanMaster USER GUIDE Release 2.07	Publication is included on CD with new ScanMaster software orders.
ScanMaster Installing and Supporting Release 2.07	Publication is included on CD with new ScanMaster software orders.

Figure 1-12: Customer Information Products

Site Preparation

Before Installation

Careful planning assures successful installation of hardware and software components required for ScanMaster. The following factors require investigation and study ***before*** installation.

Site Wiring

Familiarize yourself with the layout of existing site wiring to aid in installing network cable and other wiring.

- **Grounding requirements**. Check the following items to ensure the integrity of the power grounding:
  - The ground wire must be an insulated wire, not a conduit.
  - Do **NOT** use the ground conductor as a return or neutral conductor for any equipment.
- **Receptacle requirements**.
  - All receptacles for the system must be 2-pole, 3-wire; 15 or 20 amperes.
  - The ground terminal must be insulated from the mounting hardware.
  - For 115 Volts AC, use Hubbell receptacle #IG5262 (15A) or #IG5362 (20 A).
  - No other device should be connected to these receptacles.

Equipment location

Compare the dimensions of the equipment when in use to the available free space. You may require the services of qualified electricians and maintenance personnel to assure successful installation.

- Communications hubs, also called concentrators
- Server
- Back office PCs
- Check stands for all lanes. Contact the vendor for specifications and installation requirements.
- Point-of-Sale (POS) Workstations (Registers)
- Location of all necessary communications cables, jacks, and connectors.
- Location of power boxes, grounds, conduits, and lightening protection devices.
- Location of existing equipment which may interfere with the operation of scanning equipment and software

Particular caution should be exercised when preparing installations around equipment producing electrical noise and heat, which present the potential for electrical interference.

- Familiarity with all existing regulations, codes and laws pertaining, but not limited to, electrical and power installation, safety and health considerations

Network Interconnection

Before ScanMaster software can be installed, the server, Back Office PC, and every POS workstation must be interconnected to the network.

The following requirements must be met in order to make network interconnection possible:

- An Ethernet card must be installed on each computer associated with the network, including the POS workstation, the server, and the Back Office PC.
- A twisted-pair interface cable must be provided for each computer associated with the network. The untwisted, flat cable commonly known as "silver satin" is **NOT** acceptable. Its use can cause false data collisions on the network

The Ethernet Card (for File Server and Back Office PC)

The Ethernet card includes the following components, which are visible at the rear of the computer when the card is installed:

- BNC connector
- AUI port

- RJ-45 port
- Link status LED indicator

The RJ-45 port is the preferred port for network interconnection.

When used with twisted-pair cable, the Ethernet card must always connect to a hub (concentrator). This results in a star-wired network, with the hub at the center of the star.

The Ethernet card is compatible with 10 BaseT hubs from Intel and SMC. The Ethernet card also is compatible with the NCR "StarLAN 10" twisted-pair signaling method, when the reference disk is used to produce the configuration.

An Ethernet card should already be installed on your PC. If for some reason an Ethernet card is not installed, install the Ethernet card and insert the setup disk.

Note: The Ethernet card must be installed before you can load the Windows NT software and ScanMaster.

Twisted-Pair Interface Cable

Twisted-pair interface cable has an eight-pin modular plug at each end that mate with RJ-45 ports.

NOTE: The untwisted, flat cable commonly known as "silver satin" is **NOT** acceptable. Its use can cause false data collisions on the network.

Requirements of Unshielded Twisted Pair Cable

Below are the requirements for twisted-pair cabling. This information pertains to the Ethernet PLUS Elite 10T/A adapter.

- Unshielded, twisted-wire pairs (2 pairs)
- 22, 24, or 26 gauge
- Characteristic impedance of 85 to 110 ohms at 10 MHz
- Maximum attenuation of 11.5 dB/100 meters at 10 MHz
- Maximum attenuation of 7.2 dB/100 meters at 5 MHz
- RJ-45 modular plugs: Molex 90075-0037, or equivalent
- Crimper Tool: Molex 11-01-0026 or equivalent RJ-45 Modular wall socket: Molex 95015-0003, or equivalent.

NCR D-Inside Wire (DIW and PDS)	
4-Pair/Non-Plenum	DIW 4/24 W1000
4-Pair/Plenum	C-Plenum 4 R1000
25-Pair/Non-Plenum	DIW 25/24 R1000
25-Pair/Plenum	C-Plenum 25 R1000
IBM Type 3	
6-Pair Twisted	Belden-9566
2-Pair Twisted	Belden-9562
4-Pair Twisted	Belden-1583A (cat.5)

Figure 1-17: Various Unshielded Twisted Pair Cables

Hubs (Concentrators)

Hubs must conform to IEEE 802.3 10 BaseT specifications.

Network Characteristics

The table below describes the characteristics required for the unshielded twisted-pair network:

Standard	IEEE 802.3 10 BaseT
Data Rate	10 MBps
Maximum length of connecting cable between a computer and concentrator	100m
Maximum number of computers (nodes per network)	1024
UTP Cable Type	NCR D-inside wire (DIW and PDS) IBM Type 3

Figure 1-18: Unshielded Twisted-Pair Network Characteristics

Adding Computers to the Network

1. Make sure an Ethernet card is installed into each computer intended for network interconnection.
2. Insert the modular plug at the end of the twisted-pair interface cable into the RJ-45 port at the rear of the computer.
3. Attach the other end of the interface cable to the RJ-45 port of a 10 BaseT-compatible hub.
4. After connecting the computer to the hub, power on both the computer and the hub.

5. Verify the connection by observing the green link (LNK) status LED indicators on the hub and at the rear of the computer.

If the computer and hub are powered on and a valid connection exists, the link status LED indicators light up. (If the AUI port is in use, the link status LED indicators do not light up.)

If the AUI port is not in use and the indicators do not light up after following the above steps, check the modular plug connections and all associated wiring.

Chapter 2: 2.07.00-050 Upgrade and Installation Procedures

ScanMaster Upgrade and Installation Overview Procedures

The procedures for this chapter outline full installation and upgrade instructions for ScanMaster version 2.07.00. This release supports the upgrade from ScanMaster versions 1.02.XX, 2.00.XX, 2.01.XX, 2.02.00, 2.03.XX, 2.04.XX, 2.05.XX and 2.06.XX.

Important Notes:

Note: Only 32-bit versions of supported Operating Systems are supported.

1. **New to this release- Introduction of new PoS hardware. The TeamPoS 36XX and TeamPoS 3000 XL2 are now available.**
2. **New to this release- Windows 7 Professional is now available as a Small Store Server or Backoffice Workstation. (Supported ONLY with 2.07.00-050 and Pervasive v10)**
3. **New to this release- Server 2008 with SP1 is now available for Server installations. (Supported ONLY with 2.07.00-050 and Pervasive v10)**
4. **New to this release- "New Look" to the graphical interface on the cashier display. (Be sure to set "Color Quality" under "Display Properties" to the highest available quality.)**
5. **New security for ScanMaster Login Screen. Default User 111 now has a default password of !StartPW1, which is case sensitive.**
6. **TeamPoS 3000 XL WePOS 1.1 SP3 is certified. Image version IMG-WEPOS-3KXL855 Rev. 1.05**
7. **Support for Vista Business on the Server (for Small Store Configurations) and Back Office Workstations. (Note: Vista is NOT supported in 2.07.)**
8. **Pervasive v10.x is supported starting with ScanMaster v2.06.00-050.**
9. **Note: Vista supports Pervasive v9.5 or v10.x only. With Vista, Pervasive v9.5 requires all PC's (Server, Workstation and POS) be patched; therefore v10.x is recommended with Vista. (Note: Vista is NOT supported in 2.07.)**

10. **ScanMaster security is implemented by a hardware key called a HASP. The HASP module needs installed to the ScanMaster Server's parallel port or to a USB port on the Server depending on the HASP model. The HASP module must be installed for ScanMaster software to run! There is no longer a grace period for securing the system. DO NOT perform an upgrade until a properly programmed HASP is available, and installed into the ScanMaster server.**
11. **Support for Windows 2003 Server Standard Edition and Windows XP SP3 for Back Office PCs. The ScanMaster Server should be setup as a Standard Server. ScanMaster doesn't require a Primary Domain or Active Directory Server, however ScanMaster can work on PDC/Active Directory but configuration is left up to IT or Dealer installer. ScanMaster is only documented and currently tested on a Standard Server install.**
12. **Due to Windows 2003/2008 Server requirements that no blank passwords are permitted, the ScanMaster Installation will create the following User Names and Passwords:**

    Back Office Workstations – Workstation User Names of "WRKSTN100" to "WRKSTN120" with Passwords of "BO100" through "BO120", respectively.

    PoS Workstations – Workstation User Names of "WRKSTN01" to "WRKSTN99" with Passwords of "POS01" through "POS99", respectively.

    (A "LOCALSM" user for Server login and "REMOTESM" user for remote support are also created.) All Users will be assigned to the Administrator's Group. For an initial installation, the installer should always be logged on as the Administrator. In addition, the Administrator on all PCs and PoS workstations accessing the ScanMaster Server should be set up with the same password. If the store system is to be part of a WAN then the IT installer will need to adjust the ScanMaster users' security according to the WANs requirements while ensuring proper access for users is granted for ScanMaster to install properly. The ScanMaster users' net permissions and file and folder permissions (on NTFS) will need granted full control on all folders created by the install.
13. **Do not attempt to install or upgrade to ScanMaster 2.07.00 unless at least 5 GB of hard drive space is available.**
14. **See previous chapter for supportable hardware configurations.**
15. **This release does not support the upgrade from ScanMaster 1.1.6. If an upgrade from 1.1.6 is desired, the system must first be upgraded from 1.1.6 to 2.00.00 (or 1.02.00), then to 2.07.00.**

16. **Beginning with ScanMaster 2.01.00, the Windows 98 operating system will no longer be supported, and beginning with ScanMaster 2.01.02., the Windows NT4 operating system will no longer be supported.**

    Only Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XPe(Embedded) , WePOS or POSReady for the 36XX is supported on the PoS terminals. Windows 2003/2008 Server, Windows 2000 Server, Windows 2000 Pro (for Small Store Configurations) and XP Professional (for Express or Expresso), Vista Business (for Small Store Configurations) and Windows 7 Professional (for Small Store Configurations) are supported on the ScanMaster Servers and Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Professional, Vista Business and Windows 7 Professional are supported on the BackOffice Workstations.

Note: Only 32-bit versions of supported Operating Systems are supported.

17. **<u>IMPORTANT UPGRADE NOTE</u>: If upgrading ScanMaster at a 24-hour site, upgrade all PoS workstations prior to upgrading the Server and any backoffice workstations. After each PoS workstation is upgraded it will run in "Offline mode" until the server has been upgraded. After upgrading the PoS Workstations, upgrade the Server and then the BackOffice Workstations.**

Note: Automatic Updates are not recommended because they require rebooting the computer (and will continually prompt for a reboot until it has been performed). It is recommended to manually install security updates only from the Windows Update Web Site at a store-convenient time when the computer can be rebooted. (See page 62 for more information).

Summary of Installation – Table of Contents

Part I – Server Installation

Prerequisites 7

Operating System

Windows 2003 Server 8

Windows 2000 Server 11

Windows XP Professional (Express or Espresso) 15

Windows 2000 Professional (Small Store) 22

Windows Vista Business (Small Store) 26

Windows 7 Professional (Small Store) 31

Windows Server 2008 35

Pervasive

Shutting down server processes (upgrade only) 40

Install Server Engine (v8.6 / v9.5 /v10.x) 41

Pervasive v9.5 Patch instructions when running Vista Business 43

ScanMaster 2.07.00

Full Installation 45

Upgrade 48

PoS Workstation Installation 52

Post Installation

Re-enabling Anti-Virus 53

Windows XP Professional Sharing Adjustments 53

Part II – BackOffice Workstation Installation

Prerequisites 55

Operating System

Windows XP Professional 56

Windows 2000 Professional 63

Windows Vista Business 67

Windows 7 Professional 72

Pervasive

Shutting down server processes (upgrade only) 76

Install Workstation Engine (v8.6/v9.5 / v10.x) 77

Pervasive v9.5 Patch instructions when running Vista Business 79
ScanMaster 2.07.00
Full Installation 80
Upgrade 82
Post Installation
Re-enabling Anti-Virus 85

Part III – PoS Workstation Installation

Prerequisites 86
TeamPoS 3000XL/XL2 PoS Combo Board Printer Jumper Settings 86
Retail Board DIP switches for M models 87
TeamPoS 36XX Configurations 88
TeamPoS 36XX Display Configurations 90
TeamPoS 36XX Windows Media Component Installation 94
Operating System
Windows XPe/WEPOS/POSReady Configuration 96
Windows XPe patch for Pervasive 99
Pervasive
Install Workstation Engine (v8.6/v9.5 /v10.x) 100
Pervasive v9.5 Patch instructions when running Vista Business 102
OPOS Installation
Installation preparation 103
Common Control OPOS 103
Epson OPOS 106
TPG OPOS 108
Configuring Digital Video on TeamPoS M unit 109
Switch from DVI to FJLCD 110
Switch from FJLCD to DVI 112
Configuring Digital Video on TeamPoS 3000XL/XL2 PoS 114
TeamPOS 3000XE Second Video Card Setup 115
Touch Driver Install
D25 Installation 119
D15 Installation 119

D12/A12 Installation 122
TeamKey 32-Key Mapping Utility 125
Disable Windows Messenger 126
ScanMaster 2.07.00 PoS Installation
Full Installation 128
Upgrade 133
Uninstalling ScanMaster on the Server and Back Office Workstations .. 135

Appendix

A - Configuring Fujitsu Scanner/Scales 137
B - Building the ScanMaster database manually in Pervasive SQL..... 140
C - Disk Mirroring 141
D - Configuring NCR Hardware using MakePOS…….……143
E – TeamPOS 3000 XE Hardware Configuration……146

Server Setup

This section describes the setup of a ScanMaster Server, including:

- Installing the operating system
- All necessary prerequisite components of ScanMaster
- Installing or upgrading ScanMaster 2.07.00
- Installing the PoS workstation installation on the server (for later network installation of the PoS workstations).

Prerequisites

Before starting the install/upgrade ensure you have:

- Operating System Installation CDs with "Product Key" from Microsoft if system is not preloaded.
- Pervasive v8.x\v9.x\v10.x Server Engine Installation CD
- ScanMaster 2.07.00 Installation CD
- At least 5GB available hard drive space on the server, after the Operating system has been installed.
- If upgrading, a complete data backup of the system.
- If upgrading a 24-hour site, upgrade all PoS workstations prior to upgrading the Server and any Back Office Workstations.

Operating System Installation for the Server

This section details the steps necessary to install the operating system on the ScanMaster server. Supported operating systems are:

- Windows 2003 Server
- Windows 2000 Server
- Windows XP Professional (Express and Espresso Configurations)
- Windows 2000 Professional (Small Store Configuration)
- Windows Vista Business (Small Store Configuration) (Not supported)
- Windows 7 Professional (Small Store Configuration)
- Windows Server 2008

Windows 2003 Server

Servers can be purchased with Windows 2003 Server pre-installed. If Windows 2003 Server is pre-installed on your server, continue to the section *Configuring Your Server (page 10)*.

Installing Windows 2003 Server

1. Boot your server from the CD-ROM drive with the Windows 2003 Server CD in the drive.

   The Windows Setup program initializes and the Welcome to Setup screen displays.

2. Press **Enter** to continue.

   The Windows 2003 Server Licensing Agreement screen displays.

3. (Optional) Press **Page Down** and read the License.
4. Press **F8** to accept the licensing agreement.

   The Windows 2003 Server Setup screen displays. If you have an existing partition, you will delete it using the instructions below. If you do not have a partition, skip to step #13.

5. Press **D** to delete the selected partition.
6. Press **Enter** to continue.
7. Press **L** to delete the partition.
8. Press **C** to create a partition in the unpartitioned space.
9. Take the default maximum partition size and press **Enter** to continue.
10. Press **Enter** to Install.
11. Select **NTFS** and press **Enter**.

The formatting may take several minutes. When the formatting is complete, you will be prompted to remove the diskette (if you booted from a floppy disk).

12. If booting from a floppy drive, remove the diskette and press **Enter**.

    The system reboots. When finished, the Regional Setting window displays.

13. Click **Next** to continue.

    The Personalize your Software window displays.

14. Type your **Name** and **Organization** in the fields provided and click **Next**.

    The Product key screen appears.

15. Type in the Product Key and click **Next.**

    The Licensing Modes screen appears.

16. Input the number of licenses and click **Next**.

    The Computer Name and Administrator Password windows display.

17. Type **SERVER** in the computer name field.

18. Type an administrator password and confirm that password.

Note: The password cannot be blank and must be at least 6-characters in length. (It may be a combination of letters and numbers)

19. Click **Next**.

    The Windows 2003 Server Components window displays.

20. Accept the default and click **Next** to continue.

    The Date and Time Settings window displays.

21. Set the correct date, time, and time zone and click **Next**.

    The system reboots.

22. Login as the Administrator.

    After additional file loading, the "Manage Your Server" window displays.

23. Click the "Don't Display This Page at Login" checkbox (lower left-hand portion of the screen) and close the window.

Note: If you need to install any hardware drivers follow the installation steps to install these drivers at this time. Consult your network administrator before assigning or changing any TCP/IP settings.

Note: Do not select any configuration that may make the server a Domain Controller.

Note: If you are prompted to install the Service Pack CD (which is already included on the some Windows 2003 Server CDs) keep the CD in the drive and acknowledge the message to continue.

24. When the program finishes the installation process, remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM and click **Finish**.

Configuring your Server

1. If not logged on, press CTRL + Alt + Delete to log on.
2. Type your Administrator name and Password in the fields provided and click **OK**.
3. Select **Start.**
4. Right-click on **My Computer** and select Properties from the pop-up menu.
5. Click the Computer Name Tab.
6. Click the **Change** button.
7. Confirm the "Workgroup" radio button is selected and enter the name of **STORE** for you workgroup, and click **OK**.

   The welcome to the STORE workgroup window displays.
8. Click **OK**.

   You are prompted to reboot the computer.
9. Click **OK.**
10. Click **OK.**
11. Click **Yes** to restart your computer.

Changing Display Settings on the Windows 2003 Server

1. Right-click on the Windows Desktop and select Properties from the pop-up menu.
2. Click the **Settings** tab.
3. Set the Screen Area to **800x600** pixels and click OK.

   A display properties informational box displays.
4. Click **OK** to apply the new settings.

   The Monitor Settings informational box displays asking if you wish to save these settings.
5. Click **OK**.

Windows 2000 Server

Servers can be purchased with Windows 2000 Server pre-installed. If Windows 2000 Server is pre-installed on your server, continue to the section *Configuring your Server (Page 13).*

Note: If the Server's BIOS supports a bootable CD, installation can be run from the CD (if the BIOS is set to check the CD-ROM drive prior to looking at the Hard Drive for the operating system. Most servers manufactured after 1997 have this BIOS option.) If you boot from a CD-ROM drive, skip to step 6 of ***Installing Windows 2000 Server*** below. Be sure to set your BIOS's boot sequences back to their original settings after the install.

Create Boot Disks

You will need to create boot disks if you server does not have the capability to boot from the server. Follow the directions below to create the boot disks.

1. Insert the Microsoft Windows 2000 Server CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
2. From a command (C:\) prompt, type **X:** (where X is the drive letter for your CD-ROM drive) and press **Enter**.
3. Type **CD BOOTDISK** and press **Enter** to change to the bootdisk folder.
4. Type **MAKEBOOT** and press **Enter** to launch the executable that will make your boot disks.
5. When prompted, specify the floppy drive to which you will copy the images.
6. Label a diskette Windows 2000 Server Setup Disk #1 and insert the diskette into the floppy drive.
7. Click **Enter** to continue.
8. When prompted insert diskettes #2, #3, and #4. Remember to label each diskette.

Installing Windows 2000 Server

1. Turn off the Server and insert Windows 2000 Server Setup Disk #1 into the floppy drive.
2. Power the Server on.

   The Windows 2000 Server Setup window displays.
3. When prompted, insert Windows 2000 Server Setup Disk #2 and press **Enter**.
4. When prompted, insert Windows 2000 Server Setup Disk #3 and press **Enter**.
5. When prompted, insert Windows 2000 Server Setup Disk #4 and press **Enter**.

   The Welcome to Setup screen displays.
6. Press **Enter** to continue.
7. Insert the Windows 2000 Server CD-ROM and press **Enter**.

The Windows 2000 Server Licensing Agreement screen displays.

8. Press **Page Down** and read the License.
9. Press **F8** to accept the licensing agreement.

   The Windows 2000 Server Setup screen displays. If you have an existing partition, you will delete it using the instructions below. If you do not have a partition, skip to step #14.

10. Press **ESC** to not repair the previous installation.
11. Press **D** to delete the selected partition.
12. Press **Enter** to continue.
13. Press **L** to delete the partition.
14. Highlight the unpartitioned space and press **C** to create a partition in that space.
15. Take the default maximum partition size and press **Enter** to continue.
16. Highlight the new partition and press **Enter** to Install.
17. Select **NTFS** and press **Enter**.

    The formatting may take several minutes. When the formatting is complete, you will be prompted to remove the diskette.

18. Remove any diskette in the floppy drive and press **Enter**.

    The system reboots. When finished, the Regional Setting window displays.

19. Click **Next** to continue.

    The Personalize your Software window displays.

20. Type your **Name** and **Organization** in the fields provided and click **Next**.

    The Product key screen appears.

21. Type in the Product Key and click **Next.**

    The Licensing Modes screen appears.

22. Input the number of licenses and click **Next**.

    The Computer Name and Administrator Password windows display.

23. Type **SERVER** in the computer name field.
24. Type an administrator password and confirm that password.
25. Click **Next**.

    The Windows 2000 Server Components window displays.

26. Ensure the IIS (Internet Information Service) component is unchecked and click **Next** to continue.

    The Date and Time Settings window displays.

27. Set the correct date, time, and time zone and click **Next**.

    Additional file loading continues.

28. When the program finishes the installation process, remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM and click **Finish**.
29. Login as the Administrator.
30. Click the "I will configure this server later" radio button and click **Next**.
31. Close the Windows 2000 Server Configure Your Server window.

Note: If you need to install any hardware drivers follow the installation steps to install these drivers at this time. Consult your network administrator before assigning or changing any TCP/IP settings.

Note: Do not select any configuration that may make the server a Domain Controller.

Note: If you are prompted to install the Service Pack CD (which is already included on some Windows 2000 Server CDs) keep the CD in the drive and acknowledge the message to continue.

Configuring your Server

1. If not logged on, press CTRL + Alt + Delete to log on.
2. Type your Administrator name and Password in the fields provided and click **OK**.
3. Upon reboot uncheck the "Show this screen at startup" checkbox and exit the Getting Started screen.
4. Right-click on **My Computer** and select Properties from the pop-up menu.
5. Click the Network Identification Tab.
6. Click the **Properties** button.
7. Confirm the "Workgroup" radio button is selected and enter the name of **STORE** for your workgroup, and click **OK**.

   The welcome to the STORE workgroup window displays.
8. Click **OK**.

   You are prompted to reboot the computer.
9. Click **OK.**
10. Click **OK.**
11. Click **Yes** to restart your computer.

Changing Display Settings on the Windows 2000 Server

1. Right-click on the Windows Desktop and select Properties from the pop-up menu.
2. Click the **Settings** tab.
3. Set the Screen Area to **800x600** pixels and click OK.

   A display properties informational box displays.

4. Click **OK** to apply the new settings.

   The Monitor Settings informational box displays asking if you wish to save these settings.

5. Click **OK**.

Sharing the Server CD-ROM Drive (Windows 2000 Server)

To install the various components of this release, you will need to share the CD-ROM drive on the server with the registers.

1. Click from the Windows taskbar Start → Programs → Accessories → Windows Explorer.
2. Click **My Computer.**
3. Right-click on the **CD-ROM** drive.
4. Select **Sharing** from the pop-up menu.
5. Click on the **Share this Folder** radio button.
6. In the Shared Name field type **CD_ROM**.
7. Click Permissions and then select Everyone. Ensure everyone has Full Control selected. Click **OK**.
8. Click **OK** to complete the operation.

Setting TCP/IP as the Network Protocol on the Server (Windows 2000 Server)

Note: If you find that TCP/IP has already been installed, click **Cancel** after Step 3 and exit the install procedure.

1. From the Microsoft Windows taskbar, select **Start → Settings → Control Panel**.

   The Control Panel window displays.

2. Double-click on the **Network and Dial Up Connections** icon**.**
3. Right-click on **Local Area Connection** and select Properties from the pop-up menu.
4. Look for the "Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)" and ensure it is checked (by clicking the box).
5. Click **OK**.

   The restart window may appear.

6. Click **Yes** to restart the server (if prompted).
7. If the server is restarted, log on to the server as Administrator.

Windows XP Professional (Acer OEM Version)

This section describes configuring the OEM version of Windows XP Professional preloaded on the Acer models V5600GT, and V7600GT PCs.

Note: Do not use this section if you are installing a new copy of Windows XP Professional on the PC. Instead use the section after this titled "Windows XP Professional" on page 18.

The first time the Acer is powered on, the "Welcome to Microsoft Windows" screen displays.

1. Click **Next**.

   The Select Your System Settings screen displays. The default selections are for United States, English (United States) Language, and US for the keyboard.

2. Click **Next**.

   The End User License Agreement screen displays.

3. Select the "Yes, I accept…" radio-button, and click Next.

   The "What's your computer's name?" screen displays.

4. Type **SERVER** in the computer name field.

5. Click **Next.**

   The "What's your Administrator password?" screen displays.

6. Type an administrator password and confirm that password.

   Note: It is recommended the password not be blank and be at least 6-characters in length. (It may be any combination of letters and numbers)

7. Click **Next.**

   The "Is this computer in a domain?" screen appears.

8. Select "No, don't make this computer part of the domain" radio-button, and then click **Next**.

   The system checks for Internet connectivity, and then displays the "Will this computer connect to the Internet…"screen.

9. Select the appropriate radio-button response, and click **Next**.

   The "Ready to register with Microsoft?" screen appears.

10. Select "Yes…" radio-button response, and click **Next**.

    The "Collecting Registration Information" screen appears.

11. Enter appropriate information and then click **Next**.

    The "Who will use this computer?" screen appears.

12. At least one user name must be entered. Enter **Local** in the "Your name" field and click **Next**.

The "Thank You!" screen displays.

13. Click **Finish**.
14. Login as the Administrator.
15. Turn off the Welcome screen by clicking **Start → Control Panel→ User Accounts→ Change the way users log on or off**.
16. Unselect "Use the Welcome Screen" and click Apply Options.
17. Close the User Accounts and Control Panel window.

Note: Install any Windows XP Professional Service Packs (**Start→All Programs→Windows Update** if connected to the Internet) that are available for your release level.

Configuring your Server

1. If not logged on, press CTRL + Alt + Delete to log on.
2. Type your Administrator name and Password in the fields provided and click **OK**.
3. Select **Start.**
4. Right-click on **My Computer** and select **Properties** from the pop-up menu.
5. Click the Computer Name Tab.
6. Click the **Change** button.
7. Confirm the "Workgroup" radio button is selected and enter the name of **STORE** for you workgroup, and click **OK**.

   The welcome to the STORE workgroup window displays.
8. Click **OK**.

   You are prompted to reboot the computer.
9. Click **OK.**
10. Click **OK.**
11. Click **Yes** to restart your computer.

Changing Display Settings on the Windows XP Professional server

1. Right-click on the Windows Desktop and select Properties from the pop-up menu.
2. Click the **Settings** tab.
3. Set the Screen Area to **800x600** pixels and click OK.

   A display properties informational box displays.
4. Click **OK** to apply the new settings.

   The Monitor Settings informational box displays asking if you wish to save these settings.

5. Click **Apply**.
6. Click the **Appearance** tab.
7. In the "Windows and Buttons" drop down box, select **Windows Classic Style**.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Right-click the **Start** button.
10. Choose **Properties** from the pop-up menu.
11. Select the "Classic Start Menu" radio-button.
12. Click **OK**.

Configuring the Firewall, Automatic Update and Virus Protection Options (XP Service Pack 2 and greater)

1. Click **Start→Control Panel→Security Center**.
2. In the Resources section (on the left), click "Change the way Security Center alerts me".
3. Uncheck all three Alert Setting options.
4. Click **OK**.
5. On the bottom, click Windows Firewall (under "Manage security settings for").
6. Click "Off".
7. Click **OK**.
8. On the bottom, click Automatic Updates (under "Manage security settings for").
9. Click "Turn off Automatic Updates".
10. Click **OK**.
11. Close the Security Center and Control Panel windows.
12. Double-click the Norton AntiVirus icon located in the system tray (to the left of the time).

    The Norton AntiVirus window displays
13. Click the **Options** button at the top of the window.

    The Norton AntiVirus Options window displays
14. Deselect the "Enable Auto-Protect…" checkbox.
15. Click **Script Blocking** from the menu on the top left.
16. Deselect the "Enable Script Blocking" checkbox.
17. Click **OK**.
18. Close all open windows.

Disabling Windows Messenger (Optional)

Note: Before attempting to disable Windows Messenger, close all open windows.

1. Double-click the Windows Messenger icon in the system tray, to the left of the time.

   The Windows Messenger window appears.

2. On the Windows Messenger menu bar, select **Tools**, and the select **Options** from the pop-up menu.

   The Options window appears.

3. Click the **Preferences** tab.
4. Deselect the "Run this program when Windows starts."checkbox, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the Windows Messenger window.
6. Click the Windows Messenger icon in the system tray, to the left of the time.
7. Select **Exit** from the pop-up menu.
8. Click **OK**.

Windows XP Professional

Follow the directions below to install Windows XP Professional on the ScanMaster server PC.

Note: Do not use this section if you are using the preloaded OEM version of Windows XP Professional on the Acer models V5600GT and V7600GT PCs, instead use the previous section titled "Windows XP Professional (Acer OEM Version)" on page 15.

Change the Boot Sequence

1. Boot the computer, enter the computer's CMOS Setup Utility and change the Bios settings to boot from the CD-ROM drive.
2. Insert the Microsoft Windows XP Professional CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive and reboot.

   The Windows XP Professional Setup screen displays and after a few minutes of loading files.

3. Press **Enter** to setup Windows XP Professional now.

   The Windows XP Professional Licensing Agreement screen displays.

4. Press **Page Down** and read the License.

5. Press **F8** to accept the licensing agreement.

   The Windows XP Professional Setup screen displays. If you have an existing partition, you will delete it using the instructions below. If you do not have a partition, skip to step #12.

6. Press **ESC** to install a fresh copy of Windows XP Professional.
7. Locate and press **D** to delete the desired partition.
8. Press **Enter** to continue.
9. Press **L** to delete the partition.
10. Repeat steps 7 through 9 for any additional partitions.
11. Locate the un-partitioned space to load Windows XP Professional and press **C** to create a partition in that space.
12. Accept the default drive size and press **Enter** to continue.
13. Select the new partition to install Windows XP Professional and press **Enter** to continue.
14. Ensure "Format the partition using the NTFS file system" is highlighted and press **Enter**.

    The formatting and loading will take several minutes. When formatting and loading is complete, the system will reboot automatically. Additional file loading will continue. This may take several minutes. When finished, the Regional Setting window displays.

15. Click **Next** to continue.

    The Personalize your Software window displays.

16. Type your **Name** and **Organization** in the fields provided and click **Next**.

    The Product Key Window displays.

17. Enter the product key from the back of the CD Case.

    The Computer Name and Administrator Password windows display.

18. Type **SERVER** (or the name provided by your IT department) in the computer name field.
19. Type in an administrator password and confirm that password.
20. Click **Next**.

    The Date and Time Settings window displays.

21. Set the correct date, time, and time zone and click **Next**.

    After additional file loading, the system reboots. The Display Settings adjustment window then displays.

22. Click **OK**.

    The Welcome to Microsoft Windows displays.

23. Click **Next**.

    The "Who will use this computer?" screen appears.

24. At least one user name must be entered. Enter **Local** in the "Your name" field and click **Next**.

    The "Thank You!" screen displays.

25. Click **Finish**.
26. Login as the Administrator.
27. Turn off the Welcome screen by clicking **Start → Control Panel→ User Accounts→ Change the way users log on or off**.
28. Unselect "Use the Welcome Screen" and click Apply Options.
29. Close the User Accounts and Control Panel window.

Note: If you need to install any hardware drivers follow the installation steps to install these drivers at this time. Consult your network administrator before assigning or changing any TCP/IP settings.

Note: Do not select any configuration that may make the server a Domain Controller.

Note: Install any Windows XP Professional Service Packs (**Start→All Programs→Windows Update** if connected to the Internet) that are available for your release level.

Configuring your Server

1. If not logged on, press CTRL + Alt + Delete to log on.
2. Type your Administrator name and Password in the fields provided and click **OK**.
3. Select **Start.**
4. Right-click on **My Computer** and select **Properties** from the pop-up menu.
5. Click the Computer Name Tab.
6. Click the **Change** button.
7. Confirm the "Workgroup" radio button is selected and enter the name of **STORE** for your workgroup, and click **OK**.

   The welcome to the STORE workgroup window displays.

8. Click **OK**.

   You are prompted to reboot the computer.

9. Click **OK.**
10. Click **OK.**
11. Click **Yes** to restart your computer.

Changing Display Settings on the Windows XP Professional server

1. Right-click on the Windows Desktop and select Properties from the pop-up menu.
2. Click the **Settings** tab.
3. Set the Screen Area to **800x600** pixels and click OK.

   A display properties informational box displays.
4. Click **OK** to apply the new settings.

   The Monitor Settings informational box displays asking if you wish to save these settings.
5. Click **Apply**.
6. Click the **Appearance** tab.
7. In the "Windows and Buttons" drop down box, select **Windows Classic Style**.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Right-click the **Start** button.
10. Choose **Properties** from the pop-up menu.
11. Select the "Classic Start Menu" radio-button.
12. Click **OK**.

Configuring the Firewall, Automatic Update and Virus Protection Options (XP Service Pack 2 and greater)

1. Click **Start→Control Panel→Security Center**.
2. In the Resources section (on the left), click "Change the way Security Center alerts me".
3. Uncheck all three Alert Setting options.
4. Click **OK**.
5. On the bottom, click Windows Firewall (under "Manage security settings for").
6. Click "Off".
7. Click **OK**.
8. On the bottom, click Automatic Updates (under "Manage security settings for").
9. Click "Turn off Automatic Updates".
10. Click **OK**.
11. Close the Security Center and Control Panel windows.

Disabling Windows Messenger

Note: Before attempting to disable Windows Messenger, close all open windows.

1. Double-click the Windows Messenger icon in the system tray, to the left of the time.

   The Windows Messenger window appears.

2. On the Windows Messenger menu bar, select **Tools**, and the select **Options** from the pop-up menu.

   The Options window appears.

3. Click the **Preferences** tab.
4. Deselect the "Run this program when Windows starts."checkbox, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the Windows Messenger window.
6. Click the Windows Messenger icon in the system tray, to the left of the time.
7. Select **Exit** from the pop-up menu.
8. Click **OK**.

Windows 2000 Professional

Note: If the Server's BIOS supports a bootable CD, installation can be run from the CD (if the BIOS is set to check the CD-ROM drive prior to looking at the Hard Drive for the operating system. Most servers manufactured after 1997 have this BIOS option.) If you boot from a CD-ROM drive, skip to step 6 of ***Installing Windows 2000 Professional*** below. Be sure to set your BIOS's boot sequences back to their original settings after the install.

Create Boot Disks

You will need to create boot disks if you server does not have the capability to boot from the server. Follow the directions below to create the boot disks.

1. Insert the Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
2. From a command (C:\) prompt, type **X:** (where X is the drive letter for your CD-ROM drive) and press **Enter**.
3. Type **CD BOOTDISK** and press **Enter** to change to the bootdisk folder.
4. Type **MAKEBOOT** and press **Enter** to launch the executable that will make your boot disks.
5. When prompted, specify the floppy drive to which you will copy the images.
6. Label a diskette Windows 2000 Professional Setup Disk #1 and insert the diskette into the floppy drive.
7. Click **Enter** to continue.
8. When prompted insert diskettes #2, #3, and #4. Remember to label each diskette.

Follow the directions below to install Windows 2000 Professional on the server.

Installing Windows 2000 Professional

1. Turn off the Server and insert Windows 2000 Professional Setup Disk #1 into the floppy drive.
2. Power the Server on.

   The Windows 2000 Professional Setup window displays.
3. When prompted, insert Windows 2000 Professional Setup Disk #2 and press **Enter**.
4. When prompted, insert Windows 2000 Professional Setup Disk #3 and press **Enter**.
5. When prompted, insert Windows 2000 Professional Setup Disk #4 and press **Enter**.

   The Windows 2000 Professional Setup screen displays and after a few minutes of loading files.
6. Press **Enter** to setup Windows 2000 Professional now.

   The Windows 2000 Professional Licensing Agreement screen displays.
7. Press **Page Down** and read the License.
8. Press **F8** to accept the licensing agreement.

   The Windows 2000 Professional Setup screen displays. If you have an existing partition, you will delete it using the instructions below. If you do not have a partition, skip to step #9.

Note: If setup detects and an existing installation and you wish to install a fresh copy of Windows 2000 Professional, press ESC.

9. Press **D** to delete the selected partition.
10. Press **Enter** to continue.
11. Press **L** to delete the partition.

    A Warning Message displays.
12. Press **C** to create a partition in the unpartitioned space.
13. Take the default maximum partition size and press **Enter** to continue.
14. Arrow-down to format the drive using **NTFS** and press Enter.

    The formatting and loading will take several minutes. When the formatting is complete, you will be prompted to reboot.
15. Remove any diskettes in the floppy drive and press **Enter**.

    The system reboots with a Windows 2000 Professional splash screen. When completed, the Welcome to Windows 2000 Professional window displays.
16. Click **Next** to install devices.

    This may take several minutes. When finished, the Regional Setting window displays.

17. Click **Next** to continue.

    The Personalize your Software window displays.

18. Type your **Name** and **Organization** in the fields provided and click **Next**.

    The Product Key Window displays.

19. Enter the product key from the back of the CD Case.

    The Computer Name and Administrator Password windows display.

20. Type **SERVER** in the computer name field.

21. Type an administrator password and confirm that password.

22. Click **Next**.

    The Date and Time Settings window displays.

23. Set the correct date, time, and time zone and click **Next**.

    After additional file loading, the Network Settings window displays.

24. Select **Typical Settings** and click **Next**.

    The workgroup and computer domain window displays.

25. Click the **Yes** radio button and enter a domain name of **Store**. Click **Next** when finished.

Note: If you are prompted for a user name and password, click **Cancel,** return to the workgroup and computer domain window, click the **No** radio button and continue with the installation.

26. When the program finishes the installation process, remove the CD-ROM from and click **Finish**.

Connecting to the Network

1. After reboot, the Network Identification Wizard is launched. Click Next to continue.

   The Users of this Computer window displays.

2. Confirm the **Windows always assumes the following user has logged on to this computer** radio button is pressed. Click the User Name field's pull down arrow and choose **Administrator.** Click **Next**.

   The completion screen displays.

3. Click **Finish**.

   The Log On Window displays.

Configuring your Workstation

1. Type your Administrator name and Password in the fields provided and click **OK**.

2. Upon reboot uncheck the "Show this screen at startup" checkbox and Exit the Getting Started screen.
3. Right-click on the Windows Desktop and select **Properties** from the pop-up menu.
4. Click the **Settings** tab.
5. Set the Screen Area to **800x600** pixels and click **OK**.

   A display properties informational box displays.
6. Click **OK** to apply the new settings.

   The Monitor Settings informational box displays asking if you wish to save these settings.
7. Click **OK**.

Windows Vista Business (Not supported with ScanMaster V2.7.x)

Servers can be purchased with Windows Vista Business pre-installed. If Windows Vista Business is pre-installed on your server, continue to the section *Configuring Your Server.*

Installing Windows Vista Business

1. Boot your server from the DVD drive with the Windows Vista Business DVD in the drive. When prompted press any key to boot from DVD.

   Windows is loading files… displays at the bottom of the screen.

2. Select **NEXT** to accept the defaults for language and other preferences.

   The "What to know before installing Windows and Repair your computer" option display.

3. Select **INSTALL NOW**.

   The Product key screen appears.

4. Type your Product Key for Activation and Select **NEXT.**
5. Page down and read licensing agreement, then click on box to accept.
6. Select **NEXT**.

   The "Which type of installation do you want?" question displays.

7. Select **Custom (Advanced).**

   The "Where do you want to install Windows?" question displays.

8. Select the appropriate Disk Partition.

Note: If needed, select FORMAT under Drive Options. Press OK.

9. Select **NEXT**.

   Windows will begin installation process and will restart computer several times.

10. When prompted type a User Name, Password, retype password and select a picture to represent that user and select **NEXT**.
11. Type in the Computer Name and select **NEXT**.

    *Select **ASK ME LATER** when "Help Protect Windows Automatically" screen displays.*

    The Date and Time Settings window displays.

12. Set the correct date, time, and time zone and click **NEXT**.
13. Select appropriate option for Computer Location.
14. Click **START**.

    The "Please wait while windows checks your computers performance" message displays.

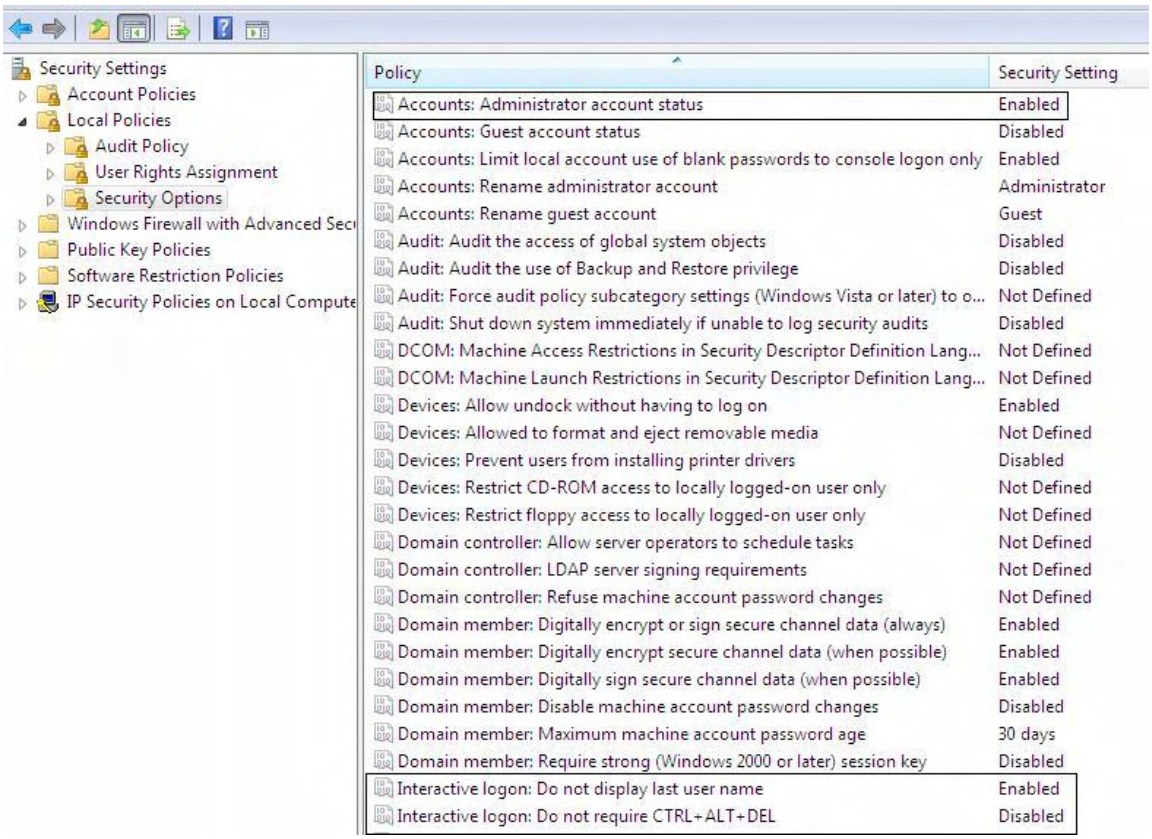
15. Enter Password to logon to Windows.
16. If Service Pack 1 is not included with Windows Vista Business load SP 1.
17. Insert DVD containing Vista SP1 and Click on Windows6.0-KB936330-X86 self extracting file.
18. Click on Flashing Microsoft Windows Tab that is minimized on Program bar.
19. Select **CONTINUE** to approve this request.
20. Click **Next.**
21. Click on box to accept license agreement.
22. Click **Next**.
23. Click **INSTALL**.

    Computer will reboot several times. When prompted log back in.
24. Click **Finish**.

Configuring your Server

1. Log in as the user created during install process.
2. Click Start, and type "**secpol.msc**" in the search area and hit **ENTER**.

   *(You may receive a prompt from UAC, click **CONTINUE** to proceed).*
3. In the left list, choose "Local Policies", then "Security Options."
4. Set "Accounts: Administrator account status" to **Enabled**.
5. Set "Interactive logon: Do not display last user name" to **Enabled**.
6. Set "Interactive logon: Do not require CTRL + ALT + DEL" to **Disabled**.



7. Check that "User Account Control: Admin Approval Mode for the Built-in Administrator account" is set to Disabled.

Note: Disabling UAC and using the built in Administrator account will disable IE7's "Protected Mode."

8. Double click the User Rights Assignment under Security Settings.
9. Double click "Log on as a service", click Add User or Group, type in "Administrator" and click the Check Names button.
10. Click **OK**.
11. Click **Apply**.
12. Click **OK** and close the screen.
13. Log off and log back in as the Administrator. When the Welcome Screen with the "Run at Startup" appears, uncheck the "Run at Startup" option at the lower left of the Welcome Screen and close the window. If the Welcome Screen does not have the checkbox, it will the next time you login.

Setting up the Administrator Password.

1. Click Start and select Control Panel.
2. Select "User Accounts."

3. Click "Change your Windows password."
4. Click "Create a password for your account."
5. Enter your password and confirm. Enter hint if so desired.
6. Click to Create.

Note: Do not forget this password or you may have to reinstall Vista!

You should be back at the "Make changes to your user account" screen. If desired, select "Create a password reset disk" and follow the screen prompts.

7. Turn off User Account Control (UAC) by clicking "Turn User Account Control on or off" selection from the "Make changes to your user account" screen.
8. At the next screen, uncheck "Use User Account Control (UAC)" to help protect your computer.
9. Click **OK** and select "Restart Now" in the message box that pops up.

Note: Vista may prompt for approval and interrupt normally automated ScanMaster functions if UAC is on.

10. Log back in as Administrator
11. Turn off Windows Firewall.
12. Click **Start** and select Control Panel.
13. Select "Security."
14. Click on "Turn Windows Firewall on or off" under the Windows Firewall selection.
15. Click "Off" and click **OK**.

Note: If desired click Security Center. In the left panel click "Change the way Security Center alerts me." Select one of the "Don't notify me" options. Close Window.

Setting the Workgroup Name.

Note: If the default name "Workgroup" is acceptable no change is required,

1. Click **START.**
2. Click "Computer".
3. Click "System Properties".
4. Under "Computer name, domain and workgroup settings", click "Change settings,".
5. Click **CHANGE**.
6. Set the desired Computer description and workgroup/domain name.
7. Click **OK**.

8. Welcome to the "Workgroup/domain displays, "
9. Click **OK**.
10. When prompted with "You must restart the computer to apply the change," click **OK**.
11. Select **CLOSE** to exit from System Properties window.
12. When prompted select **RESTART NOW**.
13. Log back in as Administrator

Setting up Network Options.

1. Click **START**.
2. Select "Network."
3. Click **Network and Sharing Center**.
4. Under **Sharing & Discovery,** ensure that **Network discovery** and **File sharing** are **ON**. Turn on **Printer sharing** if required.
5. While in the "Network and Sharing Center", select the "Manage network connections" under Tasks on the left hand portion of the window.
6. Right-click the Local Area Connection selection and choose **Properties** on the pop up box.
7. Click the "Configure" button under the "Connect using" section and then select the "Power Management" tab.
8. Uncheck the "Allow the computer to turn off this device to save power" box.
9. Click **OK**.
10. Return to the properties window. Highlight "Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) and click **Properties**. Select the desired IP option and enter your static IP address if required. Close the open Windows, ensuring that Network discovery and file sharing are turned on.

Power Management Settings

1. Click **START**.
2. Select **Control Panel** then "System and Maintenance."
3. Select "Power Options."
4. Under "Select a power plan", select "High Performance."
5. Close Window.

Windows 7 Professional (Small Store Server)

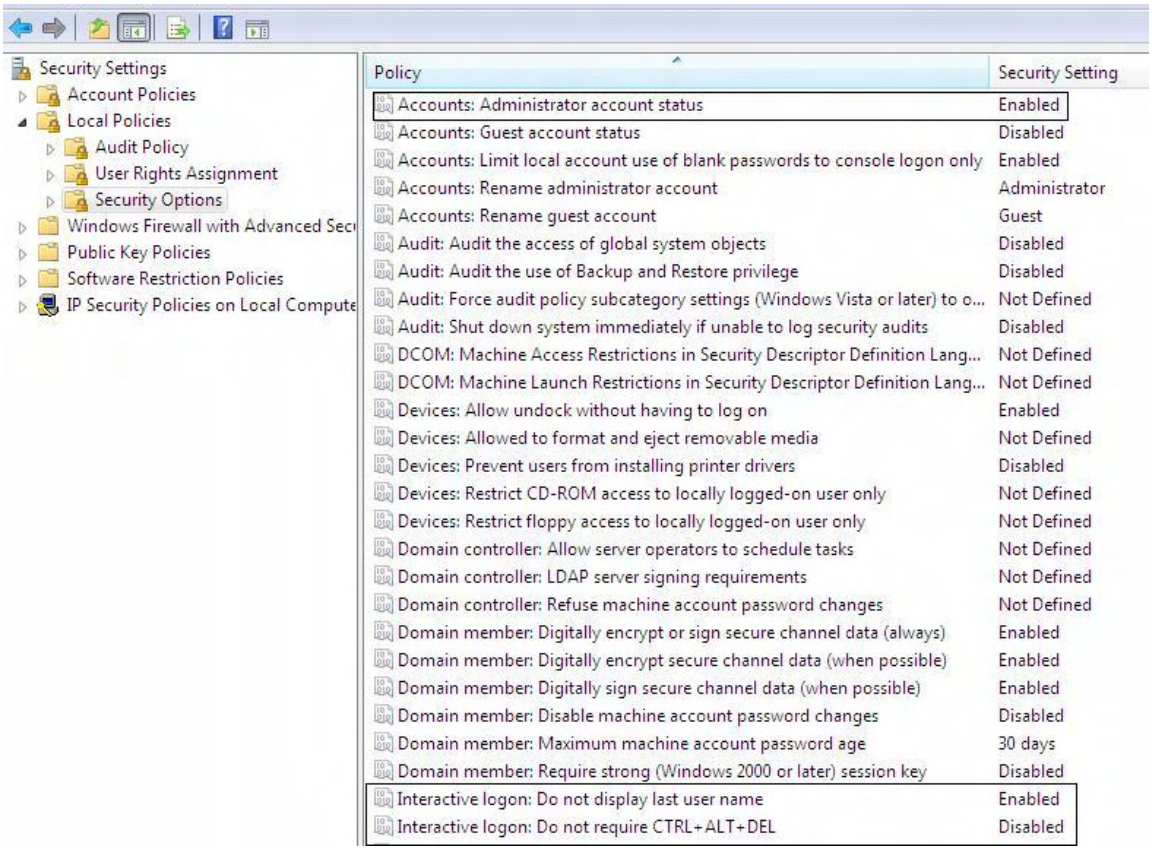
Prepare Windows 7 Professional for ScanMaster Install

1. Install Windows 7 and activate per Microsoft's instructions.

2. Log in as the user created during install process.

Note: StoreNext supports SolidCore which replaces the need for anti-virus, UAC and firewall protection. This document assumes using SolidCore. It is possible that ScanMaster will install and run with anti-virus, firewall, etc., however, due to the number of different security products and variations of OS and network setups, i.e., local, WAN, ScanMaster is only tested with the following OS settings. ScanMaster is installed and working in several locations that use Wide Area Networks and it is the responsibility of the installing dealership or store IT department to setup the network and permissions to meet both the Store IT and ScanMaster requirements.

3. Click Start, and type "**secpol.msc**" in the search area and hit Enter. (You may receive a prompt from UAC, approve/login and proceed).
4. In the left list, choose "**Local Policies**", then "**Security Options**".
5. Set "**Accounts: Administrator account status**" to **Enabled**.
6. Set "**Interactive logon: Do not display last user name**" to **Enabled**.
7. Set "**Interactive logon: Do not require CTRL + ALT + DEL**" to **Disabled**.



8. Check that "**User Account Control: Admin Approval Mode for the Built-in Administrator account**" is set to **Disabled.**
9. Double-click the User Rights Assignment under Security Settings and double click "**Log on as a service"**, click Add User or Group, type in "Administrator" and click the Check Names button. Click Ok, click Apply, click Ok and close the screen.
10. Log off and log back in as the Administrator (No password required yet).
11. Click Start and select Control Panel. Select "User Accounts".
12. Click "Change your Windows password."
13. Click "Create a password for your account".
14. Enter your password and confirm. Enter hint if so desired.
15. Click to Create. The "Make changes to your user account" screen displays.

Note: Do not forget this password or you may have to reinstall Windows 7!

16. If desired, select "Create a password reset disk" and follow the screen prompts.
17. To turn off User Account Control (UAC) while you are at the "Make changes to your user account" screen, click the "Change User Account Control setting selection. Move the slider to Never notify and click **OK**.

Note: You will need to turn off UAC if you want to run ScanMaster as other than the Administrator user.

18. Return to the main Control Panel.
19. Click on System and Security.
20. Click on Windows Firewall.
21. In the left pane click on "Turn Windows Firewall on or off" under the Windows Firewall selection.
22. Click Turn off Windows Firewall in both sections.
23. Click the **OK** button.
24. Click the Back arrow.
25. Under Windows Update, click Turn automatic updating on or off.
26. Click the drop down arrow and select "Never check for updates." Click **OK**.
27. Click Power Options.
28. Click the down arrow by the Show additional plans.
29. Click High Performance.
30. Click the Back arrow to return to the main Control Panel.
31. In the left pane click Network and Internet.
32. Click Network and Sharing Center.
33. In the left pane click Change adaptor settings.
34. Right click the Local Area connection and click Properties.
35. Click the Configure button, click the Power Management tab and uncheck the "Allow computer to turn off this device to save power."
36. Click OK.
37. Right click the Local Area connection and click Properties.
38. Highlight Internet Protocol Version 4 and click Properties.
39. Fill in the IP address information. Click **OK**.
40. Click Close.
41. Return to the Network and Sharing Center.
42. In the left pane, click Change advanced sharing settings. Ensure that the option Turn on network discovery and Turn on file and printer sharing are turned on. Scroll down and turn off Password protected sharing.
43. Click Save changes.
44. Return to the Control Panel.
45. Click Clock, Language and Region.
46. Under Date and Time set the time zone, date and time set the time zone, date and time.
47. Return to the Control Panel.

48. Click System and Security then click Action Center.
49. In the left pane, click Change Action Center settings.
50. Uncheck any items, i.e. Windows Update, Firewall, etc. that you don't want Windows to pop notification messages.
51. Click OK.
52. Return to Control Panel.
53. If the computer name or workgroup name needs changed, click System.
54. Under the Computer name, domain and workgroup settings, click Change setting.
55. If prompted for a reboot, accept and let the system reboot to update its settings.
56. Install Pervasive v10 Server and restart Server after Pervasive is installed. (Refer to Section "Installing Pervasive Server Engine on the Server." Only Pervasive v10 is supported for Windows 7).
57. Install ScanMaster.
58. After the ScanMaster installation, right click on the Start ScanMaster desktop icon.
59. Select Properties from the drop down list then under the Shortcut Tab click Advanced, click "Run as administrator," click Ok and then Ok to close.
60. At this point you should be able to run ScanMaster as either the Administrator or any of the other ScanMaster users created during the install.

Note: Before attempting to connect other POS or ScanMaster workstations to this PC, turn off the Firewall!

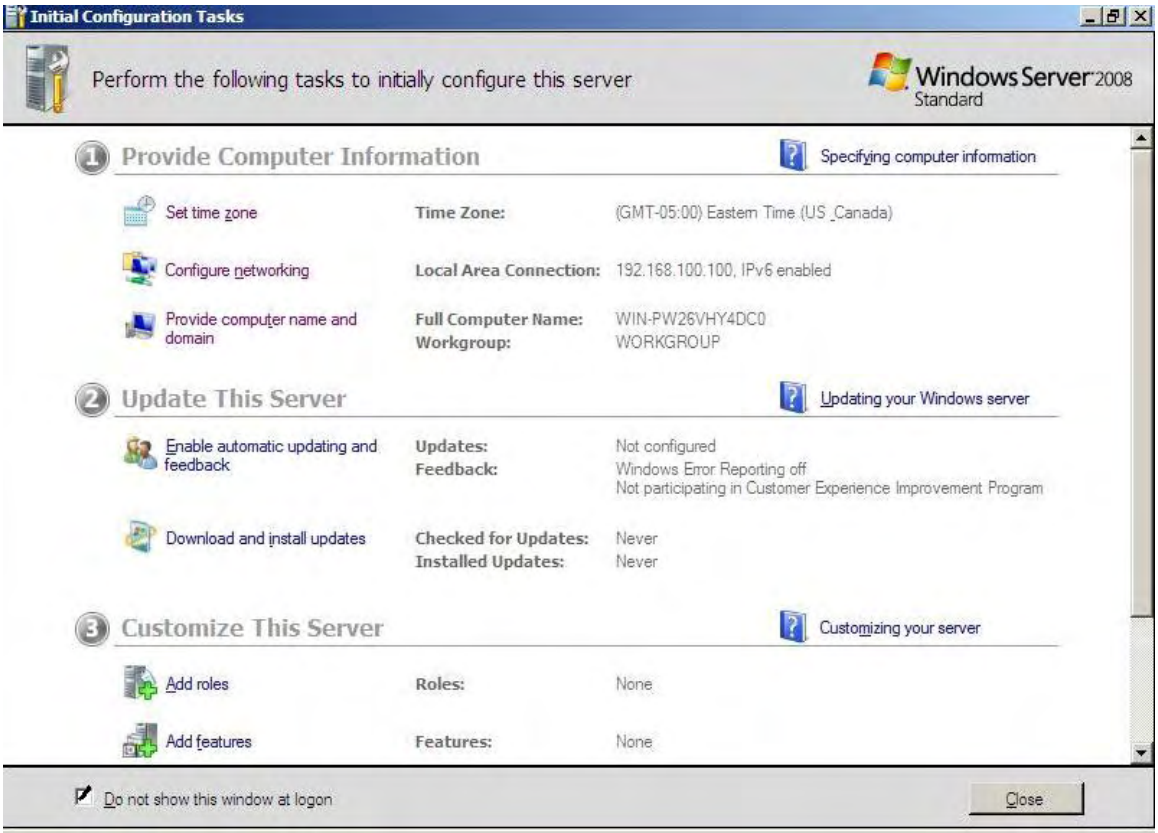
Windows Server 2008

Prepare Server 2008 for ScanMaster Install

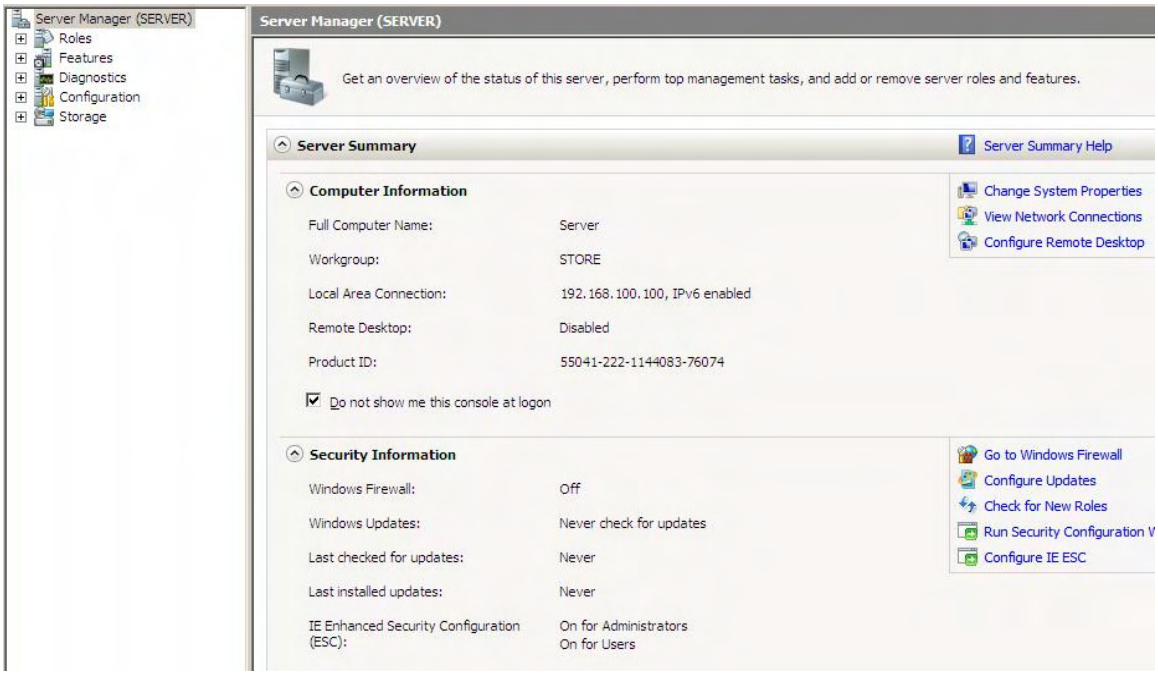
Install Server 2008 (Full Standard install) with SP1 and activate per Microsoft's instructions. If the install doesn't include SP1 then install Server 2008 SP1 as well.

Note: StoreNext supports SolidCore which replaces the need for anti-virus, UAC and firewall protection. This document assumes using SolidCore. It is possible that ScanMaster will install and run with anti-virus, firewall, etc., however, due to the number of different security products and variations of OS and network setups, i.e., local, WAN, ScanMaster is only tested with the following OS settings. ScanMaster is installed and working in several locations that use Wide Area Networks and it is the responsibility of the installing dealership or store IT department to setup the network and permissions to meet both the Store IT and ScanMaster requirements.

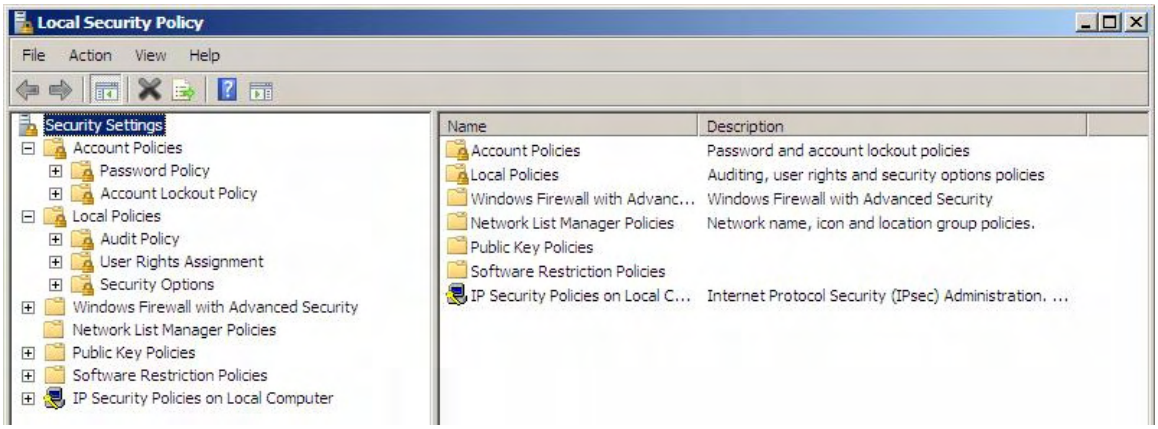
1. Log in as the administrator. If the Initial Configuration Tasks screen shows click the "Do not show this window at logon" and close the screen.

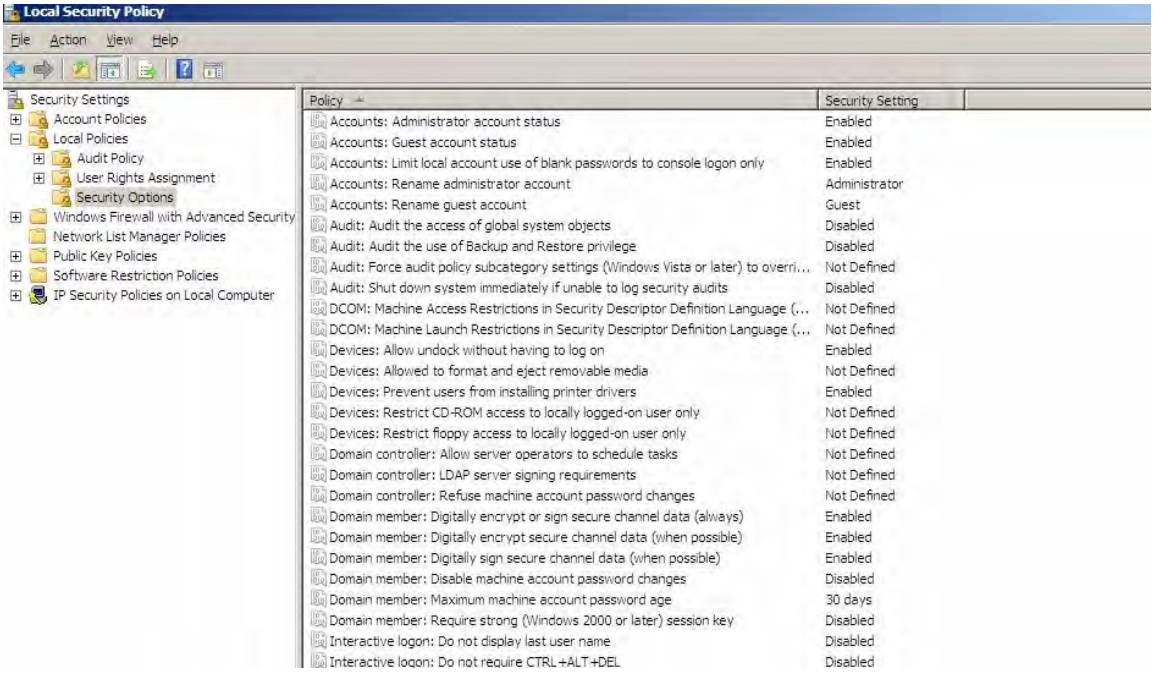


2. The Server Manager screen should come up. Click "Do not show me this console at logon" and close this window.



3. Click Start, and type "**secpol.msc**" in the search area and hit Enter. In the left list, click "**Local Policies**", then double click "**Security Options**" to open the right pane.
4. Set "**Accounts: Guest account status"** to **Disabled.**
5. Set "**Interactive logon: Do not display last user name**" to **Enabled**.
6. Set **"Interactive logon: Do not require CTRL + ALT + DEL"** to **Disabled**.





7. Check that "**User Account Control: Admin Approval Mode for the Built-in Administrator account**" is set to **Disabled.**
8. Double-click the User Rights Assignment under Security Settings and double click "**Log on as a service,"** click Add User or Group, type in "Administrator" and click the Check Names button. Click Ok, click Apply.
9. Next open up **"Account Policies"** and double click **"Password** Policy,**"** Double click Password must meet complexity requirements and set to Disable. Click Apply, then close.
10. At this point the Administrator's password can be changed to a less complex password if so desired. To do so, Click Start and select Control Panel. Select "User Accounts." Next Click "Change your Windows password." Next Click "Create a password for your account." Next enter your password and confirm. Enter hint if so desired. Click to Create.

Note: Do not forget this password or you may have to reinstall!

11. Click Start and bring up the Control Panel.
12. **Select Date and Time –** set the correct Time Zone, date and time. Click OK when done.
13. Select Network and Sharing Center – Select options by clicking on the down arrow controls.

14. **Network discovery –** Turn on. A Network discovery message box will appear. Click the appropriate option (Private or Public). Normally the selection would be Private. The Network discovery status should change to "Custom" and File sharing status should change to "On". If necessary, use the Change settings in this section to change the Workgroup name, otherwise the default name is Workgroup.
15. **File sharing –** Turn on and Apply if not already on.
16. **Printer sharing –** Turn on and Apply if required.
17. **Password protected sharing –** Turn off if status is On.
18. Under Tasks on the left side of the screen – Click Manage network connection. In the Network Connection screen, right click the Local Area Connection and click Properties.
19. Click the Configure button on the properties screen. Click the Power Management tab. If on, Uncheck the "Allow the computer to turn off this device to save power."
20. Click OK.
21. Reselect properties.
22. Highlight the Internet Protocol Version 4 and click Properties.
23. Set up the IP address section. Click OK when done.
24. Close back to the Control Panel.
25. Double click Power Option – select High Performance.
26. Next select User Accounts (lower left of the screen).
27. Select Turn User Account Control on or off. Uncheck Use User Account Control (UAC).
28. Click OK.
29. Click Restart Now.
30. Logon as Administrator and bring up Control Panel.
31. Double click Windows Firewall.
32. Select Change Settings and click the Off selection.
33. Click Apply.
34. Click OK.
35. Windows Update – should be off by default. Refer to StoreNext's website concerning SolidCore and how it affects the need to run anti-virus, firewall and Window's updates.
36. Install Pervasive v10 Server and restart Server after Pervasive is installed. (Refer to Section "Installing Pervasive Server Engine on the Server." Only Pervasive v10 is supported for Server 2008.
37. Install ScanMaster.

38. After the ScanMaster installation, right click on the Start ScanMaster desktop icon.
39. Select Properties from the drop down list then under the Shortcut Tab click Advanced, click Run as administrator, click Ok and then Ok to close. At this point you should be able to run ScanMaster as either the Administrator or any of the other ScanMaster users created during the install.

Note: Before attempting to connect other POS or ScanMaster workstations to this PC, turn off the Firewall!

Pervasive Installation

Shutting Down Server Processes – Upgrades only

Note: The following steps must be followed when performing an upgrade, to ensure proper installation of the Pervasive Server and Workstation engines.

1. Shut down all applications on the system, including any windows programs and all ScanMaster applications.

   Note: If the EJ Processor is not running on the server, shutdown the EJ Processor on the PC where it is running as described in steps 2 through 4. If no EJ Processor is currently installed or running, skip to step 5.

2. On the Task Bar of the machine running the EJ processor, double-click the EJ Processor task icon (to the left of the time).

   The EJ Processor Window Displays.

3. Click ShutDown EJ Processor.
4. Click **Yes** to the prompt, "Are you sure you wish to shutdown the EJ Processor?".
5. From the Server, press **Ctrl+Alt+Del,** then click **Task Manager**.

   The Windows Task Manager screen displays.

6. Click the **Processes** tab to display a list of Windows processes.
7. Search for and shut down the following processes:

- NTVDM
- W32MKDE (if running)

8. Close the Task Manager
9. Open the Control Panel.
10. Double-click on the Administrative Tools icon.
11. Double-click on the Services icon.
12. Shutdown the ScanMaster SS Security Service.
13. Close the Services screen.
14. Close the Control Panel.

Note: It is highly recommended to uninstall the current Pervasive install prior to doing the Pervasive reinstall/upgrade. Use the Add/Remove Programs Control Panel application to remove the current Pervasive installation. Once this is done, run Regedit and remove the Pervasive Software entry under HKLM\Software\. It is also recommended to delete the PVSW folder on the C: drive.

Installing Pervasive Server Engine on the Server

Note: If you are upgrading a 24-hour store, you must first upgrade all PoS Workstations to ScanMaster version 2.07.00 prior to installing Pervasive Server Engine on the server. Skip to page 52.

Note: If Pervasive Server Engine version 8/9 is installed already (upgrading from ScanMaster version 2.xx.xx), uninstall version 8/9 before installing version 10. This can be done by selecting Pervasive SQL Engine in Add/Remove Programs in the Control Panel.

Note: If you have installed Internet Information Services (IIS) on the server, it must be temporarily disabled before installing the Pervasive Server Engine.

Note: If the server has Antivirus script blocking enabled, you must disable this prior to installing Pervasive, and re-enable it after installation is complete.

Perform the Pervasive Server Engine Installation on the ***SERVER ONLY***.

Note: If this is a VISTA Install only Pervasive v9.5 or v10.x is supported. v9.5 requires all PCs (Server, Workstation and POS) be patched; therefore v10.x is recommended with Vista.

If this is a Windows 7 Professional or Server 2008 Installation ONLY Pervasive v10 is supported.

Before continuing, make sure that you are logged onto the Server as Administrator.

1. Insert the CD labeled Pervasive Server Engine into the Server CD-ROM drive.

Note: If the Pervasive Installation CD auto runs, for v10.x select (32 bit) Server installation and skip to step 7.

2. From the Windows Task Bar, click **Start→Run**.

   The Run dialog box displays.

3. Click **Browse**.
4. Look in the **CD-ROM** drive.
5. Double-click **SETUP.EXE** to launch the installation procedure.

Note: For v10.x, double-click on SetupServer_x86 under the Server32 folder.

6. Click **OK** to begin setup.

   The Pervasive Welcome window displays.

7. Click **Next** to continue.

   The Software License Agreement displays.

8. Accept the agreement by clicking "I accept…." and then click **Next**.

   The Enter License window displays.

9. Enter the license number from the Pervasive Server Engine CD and click **Next.**

Note: Capitalization does not matter.

The Setup Type window displays.

10. Select **Complete** and click **Next.**

    The Ready to Install Window displays.

11. Review the information and click **Install.**

    If other applications are running, the Conflicting Programs Report Window displays. If not, skip to step 14.

12. Review the information and click **Next.**

    A Question window displays asking if you want to continue testing for running programs.

13. Click **No** to continue the installation.

    After Setup has completed copying files and starting services, the Setup Complete window displays.

    It will Prompt that you need a new version of Java Runtime Engine

14. Click **Yes** to continue.

    The HTML help window displays with links to the Pervasive web site. While this window displays in the background, the Transactional Engine Test window displays.

    For v10.x- After HTML help window displays. The JAVA™ 6 Update 5 will start to install. Click OK after prompted that the installation was successful. When Message appears, select YES to Restart system. Since Pervasive v10.x does not automatically run the System Analyzer this should be done to verify connection. Launch Pervasive System Analyzer from Programs menu. The Welcome to System Analyzer Wizard displays. Click Next. The System Analyzer Options displays. Click Test Active Installation and click Next. The Target Network Communication displays. Type Target Machine name of Server and click Next. Upon Successful Network communication message, click Next. The Test Transactional Engine displays. Click Next. Verify test was successful and click Next. Test Relational Engine displays click Next. Verify Test was successful and click Next and Finish. If these tests were not successful this MUST be resolved before installing ScanMaster otherwise Pervasive v10.x is now installed and operational. Skip to step 20.

15. Click **Next** to perform the Transactional test.

    The results display.

16. Click **Next**.

    The Relational Engine Test window displays.

17. Click **Next** to continue.

    The test results display.

18. Click **Next**.

    An installation summary appears.

The Pervasive SQL9 SP2 Server for Windows screen will display.

19. Click **Finish**.
20. Remove the Pervasive Server Engine CD.
21. Click the **X** in the upper right hand corner to close out the HTML Help Window.
22. If Pervasive is being reinstalled or upgraded after ScanMaster is already installed, it will be necessary to manually run C**:\Grocery\V8Srv.Reg** (if installing V8), **C:\Grocery\V9Server.Reg** (if installing V9) or **C:\Grocery\V10Server.Reg** (if installing V10). To do this, explore to <Def Drive>:\Grocery and double click on V8Srv.reg, V9Server.reg or V10Server.reg.
23. Reboot the PC.

Note: If Server / Back Office is running Vista Business with Pervasive 9.5 follow instructions under "Running Vista Business with Pervasive v9.5" patch instructions.

Pervasive v9.5 Patch Instructions when running Vista Business

1. After Pervasive is installed, stop both Pervasive services or the Workgroup engine and insert the ScanMaster Installation CD.
2. Copy the oledb_ftf.9.52.zip file to C:\PVSW\Bin folder.
3. Extract the files from the zip file to the Bin folder and follow the instructions in the readme.txt. (Register listed files using Regsvr32)
4. Restart the Pervasive services or Workgroup engine.

Note: If Vista is running on any of the ScanMaster server or Back Office PCs, this MUST be done on all ScanMaster PCs including the POS terminals.

5. If a PC is using v9.5 Workgroup and is a Back Office workstation, the following fix must be run.
6. On the root of the ScanMaster install CD, double click the psqlsvcsetup.zip file.
7. Double click on psqlsvcsetup.exe
8. Click **NEXT** at the Welcome Screen.
9. At the Select Destination Location screen click **NEXT** (this assumes that Pervasive is installed in C:\PVSW, change this if that is not the correct location).
10. At the Select Service Account screen, select "This account" and enter .\Administrator in the Account Name field. Enter the Administrator password and confirm.
11. Click **NEXT.**
12. Click **INSTALL.**

13. Click **FINISH**.

    This will cause the Pervasive Workgroup engine to load as a service instead of a tray application which is required to resolve a startup issue on Vista.

ScanMaster 2.07.00

Full Installation of ScanMaster 2.07.00 on the Server

Note: For upgrading see **ScanMaster 2.07.00 Upgrade** section.

To install ScanMaster 2.07.00 on the server, you must first ensure that you are logged on to the server as the Administrator. To Install ScanMaster on the Back Office Workstations, go to the section entitled "Installing ScanMaster Software on the Back Office Workstations."

1. Make sure the HASP security key is plugged into the server. If any message boxes pop up asking to install a driver, click cancel.
2. Insert the CD labeled ScanMaster Version 2.07.00 into the Server CD-ROM drive.

Note: If any Window displays asking "What do you want Windows to do?" click **Cancel**.

3. From the Task Bar, click **Start→Run**.

   The Run dialog box displays.
4. Click **Browse**.
5. Look in the **CD-ROM** drive.
6. Double-click the **Scan2base** folder to display the contents.
7. Double-click **SETUP.EXE** and click **OK** to launch the ScanMaster installation procedure.

   An Information screen appears.

   *Read screen and Click **OK.***

   The ScanMaster Welcome window displays.

   *If requirements on the Information page have **NOT** been met select **Cancel,** then select **YES.***
8. Click **Next** to begin the installation.

   The ScanMaster Installation Requirements window appears.
9. Click **Next**.

   You are prompted to "Enter the Currently Logged On User Name".
10. Make sure you are logged in as "Administrator "and with "Administrator" in the text box, click **Next**.

    The Choose Installation Type window displays.
11. Select **Server - Full Installation** then click **Next**.

    If Internet Explorer is already installed, the Enter Computer Name window displays.

NOTE: *If you do not have Internet Explorer version 5.5 or higher installed, you will receive a message with this information. You must install Internet Explorer version 5.5 or higher to continue with the ScanMaster 2.07.00 installation. Internet Explorer 5.5 is located on the ScanMaster 2.05.02 and prior CDs in the IE55 folder and is called ie5setup.exe. If Pervasive v8.x/v9.x/v10.x is not installed, you will receive a message that Pervasive v8.x/v9.x/v10.x must be installed prior to the ScanMaster 2.07.00 install. If the version requirements of either Pervasive or Internet Explorer are not met, the user will be notified and the install will terminate.*

12. Validate the computer name is correct. Click **Next**.

    The Select Installation window displays with the "Typical" option selected.

13. You may choose **Typical** if you have no drives configured as the "F:" drive. If your system does not meet these conditions, skip to step 15.

    ScanMaster will create a shared directory called SCAN1DOS and install shared files to this directory.

14. Click **Next** to continue and move to Step 19 for Typical Installations (or if you have chosen a custom installation see below).

    The Confirm Selections screen displays.

15. Choose **Custom** if this computer has more than one fixed disk or multiple partitions.

    ScanMaster will allow you choose the drives on which you would like install program files and network files.

16. Click **Next** to continue.

    The Select Installation Location screen displays.

17. Select (click) the drive designation where you would like to install the ScanMaster program files. Click **Next** to continue.

    The Select Network Drive screen displays.

18. Select (click) the drive designation where you would like to install the shared ScanMaster files. Click **Next** to continue.

Note: ScanMaster will create a network share on the drive/partition you select.

The Confirm Selections screen displays.

19. Click **Next** to continue.

    A message box appears for the HASP Device Install Utility with a "Please Wait" followed by a message that "The operation was completed successfully."

20. Click **OK**.

    A DOS box will appear briefly and then close.

    A warning message appears describing the consequences of performing a restart during the MS Scripting Engine and MDAC installation.

21. Click **OK.**

Note: On Windows 2003 Installations the Microsoft Data Access Components 2.8 Setup begins. Skip to Step 24.

On XP, Vista, Windows 2008 Server and Windows 7 Professional Installations the ScanMaster Server Database Creation Utility displays. Skip to Step 27.

*A message displays, asking if you are sure you want to install Windows Script 5.6.23. Click **Yes**.*

The Windows Script 5.6 License Agreement appears.

22. Click **Yes** to accept.

    The Windows Script 5.6 files are copied. A message displays stating that Windows Script 5.6 is now installed.

23. Click **OK.**

    ***NOTE:** If you are prompted whether you wish to restart your computer, press **NO**. **DO NOT RESTART THE COMPUTER** at this point.*

    The Microsoft Data Access Components 2.8 Setup begins, and the End User License Agreement displays.

24. Click the checkbox to accept the terms of the license agreement and click **Next.**

    The Installing the Software window displays.

25. Click **Finish.**

    The MDAC components are installed.

    ***Note:** It may take a few moments for the files to begin copying. On NT 4.0 installations, you may receive an error registering the wshom.ocx file. Click **OK** to continue. ScanMaster's use of MDAC is unaffected.*

    After the files are copied, the setup completion window displays.

    If a Restarting the system screen appears, select "I will restart the system myself."

26. Click **Close.**

    The ScanMaster Server Database Creation Utility displays.

27. Enter the user's password (if any) and click CreateDB button.

    In the Database Creation Status section a green message will appear:

    ScanMaster DBName created successfully.

    ScanMaster Database created successfully.

28. Click **Exit**.

    The install now creates the ScanMaster Users.

    The ScanMaster Installation Customization window displays.

29. Enter your Customer Information, ID and specify the number of PoS Workstations (by using the arrows). When finished, click Save Information.

    A dialog box displays asking if you are sure that you want to save this information.

30. Click **Yes.**

    A message box displays asking IF YOU WANT TO "INSTALL REGISTER INSTALL TO THE SERVER'S SHARED DRIVE? Y or N"

    Select YES or NO. If NO, skip to 34.

    The register options screen displays.

31. Click (select) the radio button for the type of PoS workstations for your store (Fujitsu or NCR). When finished click **Next**.

    This completes the ScanMaster version 2.07.00 Server Installation.

    The ScanMaster Windows Register Installation begins, displaying the Welcome screen.

32. Click **Next** to begin the installation of the register files to the server.

33. A "Question" dialog may appear stating the "LAN Drive not detected." If the drive exists, click **YES** to continue. If the drive does not exist, click NO and correct the problem or contact your support representative.

    The ScanMaster Setup Completion screen appears.

34. Select "Yes, I want to restart my computer now" and click **Finish.**

Upgrading ScanMaster 2.07.00 on the Server

Note: The following steps should be taken only when performing an upgrade from a previous version of ScanMaster. For a new installation, refer to the previous section called **ScanMaster 2.07.00 Installation.**

Note: Pervasive 8.6 (or greater) must be installed on the server before upgrading ScanMaster. Vista only supports Pervasive v9.5 or v10.x. Windows 7 and 2008 Server only supports Pervasive v10. (Note: Vista not supported on 2.7.x)

Ensure that you are logged on to the server as the Administrator.

1. Make sure the HASP security key is plugged into the server. If any message boxes pop up asking to install a driver, click cancel.
2. Insert the CD labeled ScanMaster Version 2.07.00 into the Server CD-ROM drive.
3. From the Task Bar, click **Start→Run**.

   The Run dialog box displays.

4. Click **Browse**.
5. Look in the **CD-ROM** drive.
6. Double-click the **Scan2base** folder to display the contents.
7. Double-click **SETUP.EXE** and click **OK** to launch the ScanMaster installation procedure.

   An Information screen appears.

   *Read screen for requirements and Click **OK.***

The ScanMaster Welcome window displays

*If requirements on the Information page have **NOT** been met select **Cancel,** then select **YES.***

8. Click **Next** to begin the installation.

   The Install Requirements Screen displays.

9. Confirm the installation requirements have been met and click **Next** continue.

   The Enter Text dialog box appears.

10. Confirm the currently logged on user is the Administrator, then click **Next**.

    The Choose Installation Type window displays.

11. Select **Server - Upgrade** then click **Next**.

    A message box appears that warns the user that upgrades require the PoS Workstations to be upgraded first and the BackOffice Workstations last.

12. Click **OK**

    Select Currently installed version of ScanMaster window displays.

13. Confirm version of ScanMaster upgrading from, and then click **Next**.

    The Confirm Selections window displays.

14. Click **Next** to continue.

    Note: If Btrieve files remain open you will be prompted to close these before continuing. Close those applications or stop those services and select Continue.

    A "SETUPEX" dialog box may display stating "Uninstall complete, you need to restart before attempting to re-install". Ignore the text of this message, as it is being generated by the removal of the old software security system. There will be no need for a reinstall because the software is now being secured by HASP modules.

15. If the SETUPEX dialog appears, Click **OK.**

    A message box appears for the HASP Device Install Utility with a "Please Wait" followed by a message that the operation was completed successfully.

16. Click **OK**.

17. A DOS box will appear briefly and then close. If a dialog displays, click **OK.**

    A warning message appears describing the consequences of performing a restart during the MS Scripting Engine and MDAC installation.

18. Click **OK.**

Note: On Windows 2003 Installations, the MDAC End User License screen will display. Skip to Step 23.

On XP & Vista Installations, the ScanMaster Installation Customization window displays. Skip to Step 30.

A warning message displays.

19. Click **YES** to install Windows Script 5.6.
20. Click **YES** for the License Agreement for Windows Script 5.6.
21. Click **OK** to finish the installation.

    Note: This next selection is extremely important as the ScanMaster 2.07.00 Upgrade will not continue if the system is restarted now.

22. Click **NO** to not reboot at this time if prompted.

    The MDAC End User License screen will then display.

23. Click the checkbox to accept the terms of the license agreement and click **Next.**
24. If the MDAC Detecting In Use Files window displays, click **Next.**
25. Click Finish.
26. Click **Close**.

    The MDAC Installing the Software window displays.
    The MDAC components are installed.

    Note: It may take a few moments for the files to begin copying. When finished, the system restart message may display.

27. If prompted, select "I will restart the system myself", and Click **Finish.**

    *If upgrading from ScanMaster 2.01.xx or higher, the Create Database Screen will **NOT** display. Skip to step 30.*

28. Enter the user's password (if any) and click **CreateDB** button**.**

    In the Database Creation Status section a green message will appear:

    ScanMaster DBName created successfully.
    ScanMaster Database created successfully.

29. Click **Exit**.

    The ScanMaster Installation Customization window displays.

30. Enter your Customer Information, ID and specify the number of PoS Workstations (by using the arrows). When finished, click **Save Information.**

    A dialog box displays asking if you are sure that you want to save this information.

31. Click **Yes.**
32. If the register install has already been installed to the server, a window asking if you would like to reinstall the software appears. Click **Yes** to install the register install to the server if the software needs to be installed or reinstalled, otherwise click **No** and skip to step 36.

    A window asking to select between Fujitsu and NCR register install appears.

33. Click (select) the radio button for the type of PoS workstations for your store (Fujitsu or NCR). When finished click **Next.**

    The "ScanMaster v2.07.00 Register Installation to Server" window appears.

34. Click **Next.**

35. A "Question" dialog may appear stating the "LAN Drive not detected." If the drive exists, click **YES** to continue. If the drive does not exist, click NO and correct the problem or contact your support representative.

    Components are copied to the server and you are prompted to restart your computer.

36. Click OK when prompted that Computer will reboot to run Part 2 of upgrade.

    The Server restarts.

37. Log into the server as the Administrator again.

    If upgrading from v2.07.00 the upgrade is now complete.

    If upgraded from a version prior to v2.07.00 the Welcome window for ScanMaster Server/Back office Upgrade Part 2 displays.

38. Click **Next.**

    The Install Requirements Screen displays.

39. Confirm the installation requirements have been met and click **Next** continue.

40. Confirm installation type, and click **Next to** continue.

    The ScanMaster File Conversion Utility window displays with the message:

    "It is required to close down all Server, Back Office, and Online PoS Workstation applications including the EJ Processor during this conversion! Restart the EJ after conversion completed."

    *Click **OK** and if upgrading from ScanMaster v2.01.00 or later, a message will appear asking if you want to CONVERT EJ FILES? Y/N. Depending on file size, this could take several hours. Skip to step 45.*

41. Click **OK**.

    The Conversion Utility converts the necessary files. The checkboxes next to these files get checked automatically as the conversion progresses. The screen may flash, and other screens may appear during the conversion process.

    A message box appears "ScanMaster program names have changed from Smw.exe to Sm2*.exe. Please review the SM2EOD.SCR file for custom .BAT files and manually fix program names located within these .BAT files."*

    The process of reviewing the batch files should be done by the ScanMaster installation team, or the end user's I.T. department. All of the entries within the SM2EOD.SCR file ending with .BAT are the names of batch files found in C:\GROCERY of the machine that does the End of Day. These batch files need to be reviewed and possibly updated to use the new ScanMaster application names.

42. Click **OK**.

    The application message shows at top of the screen "Conversion completed. Click Exit."

43. Click **Exit**.

The register conversion warning message displays. Confirm all server and back office applications are shut down, including the EJ Processor.

44. Click **OK**.

    A message will appear asking if you want to CONVERT EJ FILES? Y/N.

    Depending on file size, this could take several hours!!!

45. Select **YES** or **NO**.

    *Selecting **YES** will update the tables and files (DO NOT ABORT ONCE STARTED)*

    *Selecting **NO** will bypass this conversion until the next time someone accesses an EJ related function. The tables/files will be updated at that time.*

    The conversion utility Part 1 screen displays briefly, processes, and then exits automatically.

    The Install Shield Wizard Complete window displays.

46. The computer will now reboot to restart required services. Click **OK**.
47. When system reboots, login as the Administrator.
48. If the old icon "Start NCR ScanMaster" does not appear on your desktop, the upgrade is complete. If it still appears on your desktop, right-click the icon and select "Delete" from the pop-up menu.
49. Confirm the deletion and click **Yes**.
50. Right-click on the **Start** button and select **Open All Users** from the pop-up menu.
51. Double-click on the **Programs** file folder.
52. Right-click on **NCR ScanMaster for Windows** folder and select "Delete" from the pop-up menu.
53. Confirm the deletion and click **Yes.**
54. Close all open windows.

Installing ScanMaster 2.07.00 PoS Workstation Software on the Server

Note: When performing an upgrade, it is extremely important if the installation is at a live 24 hour store, to follow the order of the steps listed. Install the PoS workstation Software on the Server first. Next, upgrade all of the PoS workstations, one at a time. Then, upgrade the server. Finally, upgrade any back office workstations.

If performing a full install, this step has already been completed during the install of the server, and does not need to be repeated.

1. With the ScanMaster 2.07.00 CD in the CD-ROM Drive, from the task bar, select **Start → Run**.
2. Click **Browse**.

3. Look in the CD-ROM drive.
4. If installing Fujitsu PoS Workstations, double-click the **RegServInstall** folder, otherwise double-click the **RegServInstallN** folder. This will display the contents of the folder.
5. Double-click **SETUP.EXE** and click **OK** to launch the ScanMaster workstation install procedure.
6. A "Question" dialog may appear stating the "LAN Drive not detected." If the drive exists, click **YES** to continue. If the drive does not exist, click NO and correct the problem or contact your support representative.

   The Welcome screen appears
7. Click **Next**.

   The ScanMaster register software installs into F:\Winreg\Install directory and returns you to the Windows Desktop.

Post Installation

Norton Antivirus (Windows XP Acer OEM Version)

If your server has Norton Antivirus installed, you will need to re-enable the Script Blocker.

1. Double-click the Norton Antivirus icon located in the system tray (to the left of the time).

   The Norton Antivirus window displays
2. Click the **Script Blocking** hyperlink in the middle of the window.
3. Click the **Enable** button on the right of the window.
4. Close all open windows.

Windows XP Professional as Server – Sharing adjustments

1. Select **Programs →Accessories→Windows Explorer**.

   The Explorer Window displays.
2. Click My Computer.
3. Click "Local Disk C:" (or the drive on which ScanMaster was installed).
4. Right-click on the folder name SCAN1DOS.
5. Choose "Sharing and Security…" from the pop-up menu.
6. Click on the hyperlink "If you understand the security risks…"

   The Enable File Sharing window displays.
7. Select the **Just enable file sharing** radio button.
8. Click **OK**.

9. Ensure that both "Share this folder on the network" checkbox and "Allow network users to change my files" checkbox are enabled.
10. Click **OK**.
11. Close all open windows.

Back Office Workstation Setup

Note: This section describes the setup of a ScanMaster Back Office Workstation. Instructions for installing the operating system, all necessary prerequisite components of ScanMaster, and installing or upgrading ScanMaster 2.07.00.

Prerequisites

Before starting the install/upgrade, ensure you have:

- Operating System Installation CDs with "Product Key" from Microsoft if system is not preloaded.
- Pervasive v8.x/v9.x/v10.x Workstation Engine CD
- ScanMaster 2.07.00 Installation CD
- At least 5GB available hard drive space on the Back Office Workstation, after the Operating system has been installed.
- If upgrading, a complete data backup of the system.
- If upgrading a 24-hour site, upgrade all PoS workstations prior to upgrading the Server and any Back Office Workstations.

Operating System Installation for the Back Office Workstation

This section details the steps necessary to install the operating system on the ScanMaster Back Office Workstation. Supported operating systems are:

- Windows XP Professional
- Windows 2000 Professional
- Vista Business (Note: Vista is not supported on 2.7.x)
- Windows 7 Professional

Windows XP Professional (Acer OEM Version)

This section describes configuring the OEM version of Windows XP Professional preloaded on the Acer models V5600GT, and V7600GT PCs.

Note: Do not use this section if you are installing a new copy of Windows XP Professional on the PC. Instead use the section after this titled "Windows XP Professional" on page 60.

The first time the Acer is powered on, the "Welcome to Microsoft Windows" screen displays.

1. Click **Next**.

   The Select Your System Settings screen displays. The default selections are for United States, English (United States) Language, and US for the keyboard.

2. Click **Next**.

   The End User License Agreement screen displays.

3. Select the "Yes, I accept…" radio-button, and click **Next**.

   The "What's your computer's name?" screen displays.

4. Type **BACKOFFICExx** (where xx is the PC number) in the computer name field.

5. Click **Next.**

   The"What's your Administrator password?" screen displays.

6. Type an administrator password and confirm that password.

   Note: The password cannot be blank and must be at least 6-characters in length if using a Windows 2003 Server. (It may be a combination of letters and numbers)

7. Click **Next.**

   The "Is this computer in a domain?" screen appears.

8. Select "No, don't make this computer part of the domain" radio-button, and then click **Next.**

The system checks for Internet connectivity, and then displays the "Will this computer connect to the Internet…" screen.

9. Select the appropriate radio-button response, and click **Next**.

   The "Ready to register with Microsoft?" screen appears.

10. Select "Yes…" radio-button response, and click **Next**.

    The "Collecting Registration Information" screen appears.

11. Enter appropriate information and then click **Next**.

    The "Who will use this computer?" screen appears.

12. At least one user name must be entered. Enter **Local** in the "Your name" field and click **Next**.

    The "Thank You!" screen displays.

13. Click **Finish**.
14. Login as the Administrator.
15. Turn off the Welcome screen by clicking **Start → Control Panel→ User Accounts→ Change the way users log on or off**.
16. Unselect "Use the Welcome Screen" and click Apply Options.
17. Close the User Accounts and Control Panel window.

Note: Install any Windows XP Professional Service Packs (**Start → All Programs → Windows Update** if connected to the Internet) that are available for your release level.

Configuring your Back Office Workstation

1. If not logged on, press CTRL + Alt + Delete to log on.
2. Type your Administrator name and Password in the fields provided and click **OK**.
3. Select **Start.**
4. Right-click on **My Computer** and select **Properties** from the pop-up menu.
5. Click the Computer Name Tab.
6. Click the **Change** button.
7. Confirm the "Workgroup" radio button is selected and enter the name of **STORE** for you workgroup, and click **OK**.

   The welcome to the STORE workgroup window displays.

8. Click **OK**.

   You are prompted to reboot the computer.

9. Click **OK.**
10. Click **OK.**
11. Click **Yes** to restart your computer.

Changing Display Settings on the Windows XP Professional Back Office Workstation

1. Right-click on the Windows Desktop and select Properties from the pop-up menu.
2. Click the **Settings** tab.
3. Set the Screen Area to **800x600** pixels and click OK.

   A display properties informational box displays.
4. Click **OK** to apply the new settings.

   The Monitor Settings informational box displays asking if you wish to save these settings.
5. Click **Apply**.
6. Click the **Appearance** tab.
7. In the "Windows and Buttons" drop down box, select **Windows Classic Style**.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Right-click the **Start** button.
10. Choose **Properties** from the pop-up menu.
11. Select the "Classic Start Menu" radio-button.
12. Click **APPLY**.
13. Click the **Desktop** tab.
14. Click the **Customize Desktop** button.
15. Deselect "Run Desktop Cleanup Wizard every 60 days." checkbox
16. Select "My Computer" and "My Network Places" checkboxes.
17. Click **OK**.

Configuring the Firewall, Automatic Update and Virus Protection Options (XP Service Pack 2 and greater)

Note: Automatic Updates are not recommended because they require rebooting the computer (and will continually prompt for a reboot until it has been performed). It is recommended to manually install security updates only from the Windows Update Web Site at a store-convenient time when the computer can be rebooted.

1. Click **Start→Control Panel→Security Center**.
2. In the Resources section (on the left), click "Change the way Security Center alerts me".
3. Uncheck all three Alert Setting options.
4. Click **OK**.
5. On the bottom, click Windows Firewall (under "Manage security settings for").
6. Click "Off".

7. Click **OK**.
8. On the bottom, click Automatic Updates (under "Manage security settings for").
9. Click "Turn off Automatic Updates".
10. Click **OK**.
11. Close the Security Center and Control Panel windows.
12. Double-click the Norton Antivirus icon located in the system tray (to the left of the time).

    The Norton Antivirus window displays
13. Click the **Options** button at the top of the window.

    The Norton Antivirus Options window displays
14. Deselect the "Enable Auto-Protect…" checkbox.
15. Click **Script Blocking** from the menu on the top left.
16. Deselect the "Enable Script Blocking" checkbox.
17. Click **OK**.
18. Close all open windows.

Disabling Windows Messenger (Optional)

Note: Before attempting to disable Windows Messenger, close all open windows.

1. Double-click the Windows Messenger icon in the system tray, to the left of the time.

   The Windows Messenger window appears.
2. On the Windows Messenger menu bar, select **Tools**, and the select **Options** from the pop-up menu.

   The Options window appears.
3. Click the **Preferences** tab.
4. Deselect the "Run this program when Windows starts" checkbox, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the Windows Messenger window.
6. Click the Windows Messenger icon in the system tray, to the left of the time.
7. Select **Exit** from the pop-up menu.
8. Click **OK**.

Windows XP Professional

Follow the directions below to install Windows XP Professional on a back office PC.

Note: Do not use this section if you are using the preloaded OEM version of Windows XP Professional on the Acer models v5600GT and V7600GT PCs; instead use the previous section titled "Windows XP Professional (Acer OEM Version)" on page 56.

Change the Boot Sequence

1. Boot the computer, enter the computer's CMOS Setup Utility and change the Bios settings to boot from the CD-ROM drive.
2. Insert the Microsoft Windows XP Professional CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive and reboot.

   The Windows XP Professional Setup screen displays and after a few minutes of loading files.
3. Press **Enter** to setup Windows XP Professional now.

   The Windows XP Professional Licensing Agreement screen displays.
4. Press **Page Down** and read the License.
5. Press **F8** to accept the licensing agreement.

   The Windows XP Professional Setup screen displays. If you have an existing partition, you will delete it using the instructions below. If you do not have a partition, skip to step #12.
6. Press **ESC** to install a fresh copy of Windows XP Professional.
7. Locate and press **D** to delete the desired partition.
8. Press **Enter** to continue.
9. Press **L** to delete the partition.
10. Repeat steps 7 through 9 for any additional partitions.
11. Locate the unpartitioned space to load Windows XP Professional and press **C** to create a partition in that space.
12. Accept the default drive size and press **Enter** to continue.
13. Select the new partition to install Windows XP Professional and press **Enter** to continue.
14. Ensure "Format the partition using the NTFS file system" is highlighted and press **Enter**.

    The formatting and loading will take several minutes. When formatting and loading is complete, the system will reboot automatically. Additional file loading will continue. This may take several minutes. When finished, the Regional Setting window displays.
15. Click **Next** to continue.

The Personalize your Software window displays.

16. Type your **Name** and **Organization** in the fields provided and click **Next**.

    The Product Key Window displays.

17. Enter the product key from the back of the CD Case.

    The Computer Name and Administrator Password windows display.

18. Type **BACKOFFICExx** (where xx is the PC number) in the computer name field.
19. Type in an administrator password and confirm that password.
20. Click **Next**.

    The Date and Time Settings window displays.

21. Set the correct date, time, and time zone and click **Next**.

    After additional file loading, the system reboots. The Display Settings adjustment window then displays.

22. Click **OK**.

    The Welcome to Microsoft Windows displays.

23. Click **Next**.

    The "Who will use this computer?" screen appears.

24. At least one user name must be entered. Enter **Local** in the "Your name" field and click **Next**.

    The "Thank You!" screen displays.

25. Click **Finish**.
26. Login as the Administrator.
27. Turn off the Welcome screen by clicking **Start → Control Panel→ User Accounts→ Change the way users log on or off**.
28. Unselect "Use the Welcome Screen" and click Apply Options.
29. Close the User Accounts and Control Panel window.

Note: If you need to install any hardware drivers follow the installation steps to install these drivers at this time. Consult your network administrator before assigning or changing any TCP/IP settings.

Note: Do not select any configuration that may make the workstation a Domain Controller.

Note: Install any Windows XP Professional Service Packs (**Start→All Programs→Windows Update** if connected to the Internet) that are available for your release level.

Configuring your Workstation

1. If not logged on, press CTRL + Alt + Delete to log on.
2. Type your Administrator name and Password in the fields provided and click **OK**.
3. Select **Start.**
4. Right-click on **My Computer** and select **Properties** from the pop-up menu.
5. Click the Computer Name Tab.
6. Click the **Change** button.
7. Confirm the "Workgroup" radio button is selected and enter the name of **STORE** for your workgroup, and click **OK**.

   The welcome to the STORE workgroup window displays.
8. Click **OK**.

   You are prompted to reboot the computer.
9. Click **OK.**
10. Click **OK.**
11. Click **Yes** to restart your computer.

Changing Display Settings on the Windows XP Professional Workstation

1. Right-click on the Windows Desktop and select Properties from the pop-up menu.
2. Click the **Settings** tab.
3. Set the Screen Area to **800x600** pixels and click OK.

   A display properties informational box displays.
4. Click **OK** to apply the new settings.

   The Monitor Settings informational box displays asking if you wish to save these settings.
5. Click **OK**.

Configuring the Firewall, Automatic Update and Virus Protection Options (Windows XP Professional Service Pack 2 and greater)

Note: Automatic Updates are not recommended because they require rebooting the computer (and will continually prompt for a reboot until it has been performed). It is recommended to manually install security updates only from the Windows Update Web Site at a store-convenient time when the computer can be rebooted.

1. Click **Start→Control Panel→Security Center**.
2. In the Resources section (on the left), click "Change the way Security Center alerts me".
3. Uncheck all three Alert Setting options.

4. Click **OK**.
5. On the bottom, click Windows Firewall (under "Manage security settings for").
6. Click "Off".
7. Click **OK**.
8. On the bottom, click Automatic Updates (under "Manage security settings for").
9. Click "Turn off Automatic Updates".
10. Click **OK**.
11. Close the Security Center and Control Panel windows.

Windows 2000 Professional

Follow the directions below to install Windows 2000 Professional on a back office PC.

Change the Boot Sequence

1. Boot the computer, enter the computer's CMOS Setup Utility and change the Bios settings to boot from the CD-ROM drive.
2. Insert the Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive and reboot.

   The Windows 2000 Professional Setup screen displays and after a few minutes of loading files.
3. Press **Enter** to setup Windows 2000 Professional now.

   The Windows 2000 Professional Licensing Agreement screen displays.
4. Press **Page Down** and read the License.
5. Press **F8** to accept the licensing agreement.

   The Windows 2000 Professional Setup screen displays. If you have an existing partition, you will delete it using the instructions below. If you do not have a partition, skip to step #10.
6. Press **ESC** to not repair the previous installation.
7. Highlight the partition to delete and press **D** to delete the selected partition.
8. Press **Enter** to continue.
9. Press **L** to delete the partition.
10. Highlight the unpartitioned space and press **C** to create a partition in that space.
11. Take the default maximum partition size and press **Enter** to continue.
12. Highlight the new partition and press **Enter** to Install.
13. Select **NTFS** and press **Enter**.

The formatting and loading will take several minutes. When the loading is complete, you will be prompted to reboot.

14. Remove any diskette in the floppy drive and press **Enter**.

    The system reboots with a Windows 2000 Professional splash screen. When completed, the Welcome to Windows 2000 Professional window displays.

15. Click **Next** to install devices.

    This may take several minutes. When finished, the Regional Setting window displays.

16. Click **Next** to continue.

    The Personalize your Software window displays.

17. Type your **Name** and **Organization** in the fields provided and click **Next**.

    The Product Key Window displays.

18. Enter the product key from the back of the CD Case.

    The Computer Name and Administrator Password windows display.

19. Type **BACKOFFICExx** (where xx is the PC number) in the computer name field.
20. Type an administrator password and confirm that password.
21. Click **Next**.

    The Date and Time Settings window displays.

22. Set the correct date, time, and time zone and click **Next**.

    After additional file loading, the "Completing the Windows 2000 Professional Setup Wizard" displays.

23. Click **Finish**.

    The system reboots. After reboot, the Network Identification Wizard displays.

24. Click **Next.**

    The Users of This Computer screen displays.

25. Select the "Users must enter a user name and password to use this computer" radio button. Click **Next.**
26. Click **Finish.**
27. Login as the Administrator.

Note: If you need to install any hardware drivers follow the installation steps to install these drivers at this time. Consult your network administrator before assigning or changing any TCP/IP settings.

Note: Install any service packs that may be available for your Windows 2000 Professional release level.

Configuring your Workstation

1. If not logged on, press CTRL + Alt + Delete to log on.

2. Type your Administrator name and Password in the fields provided and click **OK**.
3. Right-click on **My Computer** and select Properties from the pop-up menu.
4. Click the Network Identification Tab.
5. Click the **Properties** button.
6. Confirm the "Workgroup" radio button is selected and enter the name of **STORE** for your workgroup, and click **OK**.

   The welcome to the STORE workgroup window displays.
7. Click **OK**.

   You are prompted to reboot the computer.
8. Click **OK.**
9. Click **OK.**
10. Click **Yes** to restart your computer.

Configuring your Display

1. Right-click on the Windows Desktop and select **Properties** from the pop-up menu.
2. Click the **Settings** tab.
3. Set the Screen Area to **800x600** pixels and click OK.

   A display properties informational box displays.
4. Click **OK** to apply the new settings.

   The Monitor Settings informational box displays asking if you wish to save these settings.
5. Click **OK**.

Configuring TCP/IP Protocol on Windows 2000 Professional (Optional)

Note: If using static IP addresses for your workstations, please use the following steps:

1. On the Windows desktop, right-click on the My Network Places icon and select Properties from the pop-up menu.
2. Right-click on Local Area Connection and select Properties.
3. Highlight Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) and click Properties.
4. Click the Use the following IP Address radio button.
5. Enter an IP Address and Subnet Mask.

   Note: Consult your network administrator to obtain an IP Address and subnet mask. Leave the Default Gateway setting blank.

6. Click OK.
7. Click OK on the Local Area Connection Properties window.
8. Close the Local Area Connections Status window.
9. Close the Network and Dial-up Connections window.

Windows Vista Business (Note: Vista is not supported on 2.7.x)

Workstations can be purchased with Windows Vista Business pre-installed. If Windows Vista Business is pre-installed on your workstation, continue to the section *Configuring Your Workstation.*

Installing Windows Vista Business

1. Boot your workstation from the DVD drive with the Windows Vista Business DVD in the drive. When prompted press any key to boot from DVD.

   Windows is loading files… displays at the bottom of the screen.

2. Select **NEXT** to accept the defaults for language and other preferences.

   The "What to know before installing Windows and Repair your computer" option displays.

3. Select **INSTALL NOW**.

   The Product key screen appears.

4. Type your Product Key for Activation and select **NEXT**.
5. Page down and read licensing agreement, then click on box to accept.
6. Select **NEXT**.

   The "Which type of installation do you want?" question displays.

7. Select **Custom (Advanced).**

   The "Where do you want to install Windows?" question displays.

8. Select the appropriate Disk Partition.

Note: If needed, select FORMAT under Drive Options. Press OK.

9. Select **NEXT.**
10. *Windows will begin installation process and will restart computer several times.*
11. When prompted type a User Name, Password, retype Password and select a picture to represent that user and select **NEXT**.
12. Type in the Computer Name and select **NEXT**.

    *Select **ASK ME LATER** when "Help Protect Windows Automatically" screen displays.*

    The Date and Time Settings window displays.

13. Set the correct date, time, and time zone and click **NEXT**.
14. Select appropriate option for Computer Location.
15. Click **START**.

The "Please wait while Windows checks your computers performance" message displays.

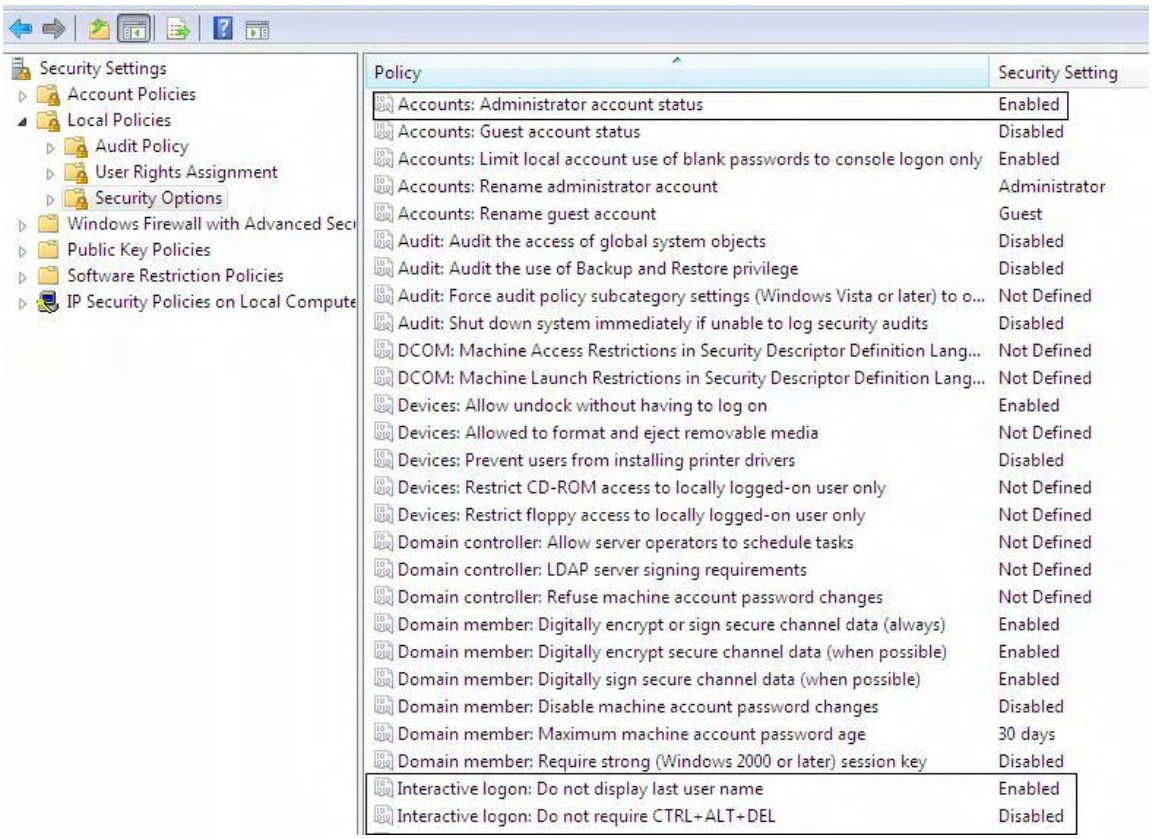
16. Enter the Password to logon to Windows
17. If Service Pack 1 is not included with Windows Vista Business load SP 1.
18. Insert DVD containing Vista SP1 and Click on Windows6.0-KB936330-X86 self extracting file.
19. Click on Flashing Microsoft Windows Tab that is minimized on Program bar.
20. Select **CONTINUE** to approve this request.
21. Click **Next**.
22. Click on box to accept license agreement.
23. Click **Next**.
24. Click **INSTALL**.

    Computer will reboot several times. When prompted log back in.
25. Click **Finish**.

Configuring your Workstation

1. Log in as the user created during install process.
2. Click Start, and type "**secpol.msc**" in the search area and hit **ENTER**.

   *(You may receive a prompt from UAC, click **CONTINUE** to proceed).*
3. In the left list, choose "Local Policies", then "Security Options".
4. Set "Accounts: Administrator account status" to **Enabled**.
5. Set "Interactive logon: Do not display last user name" to **Enabled**.
6. Set "Interactive logon: Do not require CTRL + ALT + DEL" to **Disabled**.



7. Check that "User Account Control: Admin Approval Mode for the Built-in Administrator account" is set to Disabled.

Note: Disabling UAC and using the built in Administrator account will disable IE7's "Protected Mode".

8. Double click the User Rights Assignment under Security Settings.
9. Double click "Log on as a service", click Add User or Group, type in "Administrator" and click the Check Names button.
10. Click **OK**.
11. Click **Apply**.
12. Click **OK** and close the screen.
13. Log off and log back in as the Administrator. When the Welcome Screen with the "Run at Startup" appears, uncheck the "Run at Startup" option at the lower left of the Welcome Screen and close the window. If the Welcome Screen does not have the checkbox, it will the next time you login.

Setting up the Administrator Password

1. Click Start and select Control Panel.
2. Select"User Accounts".

3. Click "Change your Windows password".
4. Click "Create a password for your account".
5. Enter your password and confirm. Enter hint if so desired.
6. Click to Create.

Note: Do not forget this password or you may have to reinstall Vista!

You should be back at the "Make changes to your user account" screen. If desired, select "Create a password reset disk" and follow the screen prompts.

7. Turn off User Account Control (UAC) by clicking "Turn User Account Control on or off" selection from the "Make changes to your user account" screen.
8. At the next screen, uncheck "Use User Account Control (UAC)" to help protect your computer.
9. Click **OK** and select "Restart Now" in the message box that pops up.

Note: Vista may prompt for approval and interrupt normally automated ScanMaster functions if UAC is on.

10. Log back in as Administrator
11. Turn off Windows Firewall.
12. Click **Start** and select Control Panel.
13. Select "Security".
14. Click on "Turn Windows Firewall on or off" under the Windows Firewall selection.
15. Click "Off" and click **OK**.

Note: If desired click Security Center. In the left panel click "Change the way Security Center alerts me". Select one of the "Don't notify me" options. Close Window.

Setting the Workgroup Name

Note: If the default name "Workgroup" is acceptable no change is required,

1. Click **START.**
2. Click "Computer".
3. Click "System Properties".
4. Under "Computer name, domain and workgroup settings", click "Change settings".
5. Click **CHANGE**.
6. Set the desired Computer description and workgroup/domain name.
7. Click **OK**.

8. Welcome to the "Workgroup/domain displays, "
9. Click **OK**.
10. When prompted with "You must restart the computer to apply the change," click **OK**.
11. Select **CLOSE** to exit from System Properties window.
12. When prompted select **RESTART NOW**.
13. Log back in as Administrator

Setting up Network Options

1. Click **START**.
2. Select "Network".
3. Click **Network and Sharing Center**.
4. Under **Sharing & Discovery,** ensure that **Network discovery** and **File sharing** are **ON**. Turn on **Printer sharing** if required.
5. While in the "Network and Sharing Center", select the "Manage network connections" under Tasks on the left hand portion of the window.
6. Right-click the Local Area Connection selection and choose **Properties** on the pop up box.
7. Click the "Configure" button under the "Connect using" section and then select the "Power Management" tab.
8. Uncheck the "Allow the computer to turn off this device to save power" box.
9. Click **OK**.
10. Return to the properties window. Highlight "Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) and click **Properties**. Select the desired IP option and enter your static IP address if required. Close the open Windows, ensuring that Network discovery and file sharing are turned on.

Power Management Settings

1. Click **START**.
2. Select **Control Panel** then "System and Maintenance".
3. Select "Power Options".
4. Under "Select a power plan", select "High Performance".
5. Close Window.

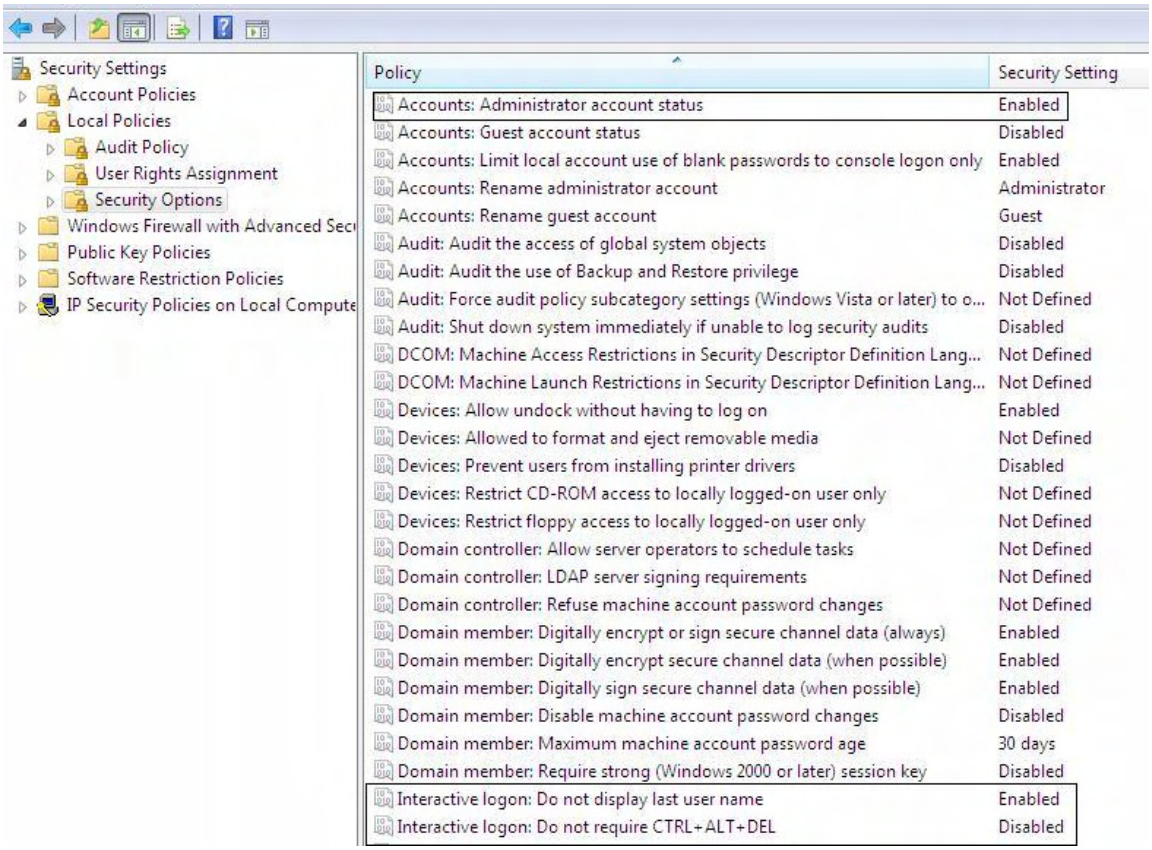
Windows 7 Professional

Prepare Windows 7 Professional for ScanMaster Install

1. Install Windows 7 and activate per Microsoft's instructions.
2. Log in as the user created during install process.

Note: Note: StoreNext supports SolidCore which replaces the need for anti-virus, UAC and firewall protection. This document assumes using SolidCore. It is possible that ScanMaster will install and run with anti-virus, firewall, etc., however, due to the number of different security products and variations of OS and network setups, i.e., local, WAN, ScanMaster is only tested with the following OS settings. ScanMaster is installed and working in several locations that use Wide Area Networks and it is the responsibility of the installing dealership or store IT department to setup the network and permissions to meet both the Store IT and ScanMaster requirements.

3. Click Start, and type "**secpol.msc**" in the search area and hit Enter. (You may receive a prompt from UAC, approve/login and proceed).
4. In the left list, choose "**Local Policies**", then "**Security Options**".
5. Set "**Accounts: Administrator account status**" to **Enabled**.
6. Set "**Interactive logon: Do not display last user name**" to **Enabled**.
7. Set "**Interactive logon: Do not require CTRL + ALT + DEL**" to **Disabled**.



8. Check that "**User Account Control: Admin Approval Mode for the Built-in Administrator account**" is set to **Disabled.**
9. Double click the User Rights Assignment under Security Settings and double click "**Log on as a service"**, click Add User or Group, type in "Administrator" and click the Check Names button. Click Ok, click Apply, click Ok and close the screen.
10. Log off and log back in as the Administrator (No password required yet).
11. Click Start and select Control Panel. Select "User Accounts".
12. Click "Change your Windows password".
13. Click "Create a password for your account".
14. Enter your password and confirm. Enter hint if so desired.
15. Click to Create. The "Make changes to your user account" screen displays

Note: Do not forget this password or you may have to reinstall Windows 7!

16. If desired, select "Create a password reset disk" and follow the screen prompts.
17. To turn off User Account Control(UAC) while you are at the "Make changes to your user account" screen, click the "Change User Account Control setting selection. Move the slider to Never notify and click OK.

Note: Note: You will need to turn off UAC if you want to run ScanMaster as other than the Administrator user.

18. Return to the main Control Panel.
19. Click on System and Security.
20. Click on Windows Firewall.
21. In the left pane click on "Turn Windows Firewall on or off" under the Windows Firewall selection.
22. Click Turn off Windows Firewall in both sections. Click the "Ok" button. Click the Back arrow.
23. Click Windows Update. Click Turn automatic updating on or off.
24. Click the drop down arrow and select Never check for updates. Click **OK**.
25. Click Power Options.
26. Click the down arrow by the Show additional plans.
27. Click High Performance.
28. Click the Back arrow to return to the main Control Panel.
29. Click Network and Internet.
30. Click Network and Sharing Center.
31. In the left pane click Change adaptor settings.
32. Right click the Local Area connection and click Properties.
33. Click the Configure button, click the Power Management tab and uncheck the "Allow computer to turn off this device to save power".
34. Click OK.
35. Right click the Local Area connection and click Properties.
36. Highlight Internet Protocol Version 4 and click Properties.
37. Fill in the IP address information. Click **OK**.
38. Click Close. Return to the Network and Sharing Center. In the left pane, click Change advanced sharing settings. Ensure that the option Turn on network discovery and Turn on file and printer sharing are turned on. Scroll down and turn off Password protected sharing.
39. Click Save changes.
40. Return to the Control Panel.
41. Click Clock, Language and Region.
42. Under Date and Time set the time zone, date and time set the time zone, date and time.
43. Return to the Control Panel.
44. Click System & Security. Click Action Center.
45. In the left pane click Change Action Center settings.

46. Uncheck any items, i.e. Windows Update, Firewall, etc. that you don't want Windows to pop notification messages.
47. Click OK.
48. Return to Control Panel.
49. If the computer name or workgroup name needs changed, click System.
50. Under the Computer name, domain and workgroup settings, click Change setting.
51. If prompted for a reboot, accept and let the system reboot to update its settings.
52. If this is a Small Store Server, install Pervasive v10 Server, else install Pervasive v10 Workgroup. Only Pervasive v10 is supported for Windows 7.
53. Install ScanMaster.
54. After the ScanMaster installation, right click on the Start ScanMaster desktop icon.
55. Select Properties from the drop down list then under the Shortcut Tab click Advanced, click Run as administrator, click Ok and then Ok to close.
56. At this point you should be able to run ScanMaster as either the Administrator or any of the other ScanMaster users created during the install.

Note: Before attempting to connect other POS or ScanMaster workstations to this PC, turn off the Firewall!

Pervasive Installation

Shutting Down Server Processes – Upgrades only

Note: The following steps must be followed when performing an upgrade, to ensure proper installation of the Pervasive Server and Workstation engines.

1. Shut down all applications on the system, including any windows programs and all ScanMaster applications.

   Note: If the EJ Processor is not running on the server, shutdown the EJ Processor on the PC where it is running as described in steps 2 through 4. If no EJ Processor is currently installed or running, skip to step 5.

2. On the Task Bar of the machine running the EJ processor, double-click the EJ Processor task icon (to the left of the time).

   The EJ Processor Window Displays.

3. Click ShutDown EJ Processor.
4. Click **Yes** to the prompt "Are you sure you wish to shutdown the EJ Processor?".
5. From the Server, press **Ctrl+Alt+Del,** then click **Task Manager**.

   The Windows Task Manager screen displays.

6. Click the **Processes** tab to display a list of Windows processes.
7. Search for and shut down the following processes:

- NTVDM
- W32MKDE (if running)

8. Close the Task Manager
9. Open the Control Panel.
10. Double-click on the Administrative Tools icon.
11. Double-click on the Services icon.
12. Shutdown the ScanMaster SS Security Service.
13. Close the Services screen.
14. Close the Control Panel.

Note: It is highly recommended to uninstall the current Pervasive install prior to doing the Pervasive reinstall/upgrade. Use the Add/Remove Programs Control Panel application to remove the current Pervasive installation. Once this is done, run Regedit and remove the Pervasive Software entry under HKLM\Software\. It is also recommended to delete the PVSW folder on the C: drive.

Installing Pervasive Workstation Engine

Note: Be sure to install Pervasive on the Server prior to installing Pervasive on the Back Office Workstation.

Note: If you have installed Internet Information Services (IIS) on the workstation, it must be temporarily disabled before installing the Pervasive Server Engine.

Note: If this is a Vista Business Installation only Pervasive v9.5 or 10.x is supported.

Note: If this is a Windows 7 Professional Installation only Pervasive 10.x is supported.

This installation assumes you have a CD-ROM Drive on the back office workstation. If you do not, you can run the installation over the network using the server's CD ROM Drive.

1. At the back office workstation, insert the CD labeled V8/V9/V10 Workgroup Engine into the CD-ROM drive.

Note: If the Autorun program starts, for v10.x select Workgroup Edition (32 bit) and skip to step 10.

2. Press the Start key on the keyboard.
3. Press **<R>** for Run.
4. Press **<ALT><B>** for Browse.
5. Press **<ALT><I>** for Look In.
6. Press the Arrow Down key and highlight the CD-ROM drive on the server and press **Enter**.
7. Press the Tab key until the first folder on the CD is highlighted.
8. Press the Arrow Down key, highlight **Setup** and press **Enter**.

Note: For v10.x, double-click on SetupWorkgroup_x86 in the workgroup folder.

9. Press **Enter** for **OK** to run Setup installation wizard.

   The Welcome screen appears.

10. Press **Enter** for **Next**.

    The Software License Agreement Displays.

11. Read the agreement and click "I accept…." Or press **<Alt><A>**then press **Enter** for Next.

Note: You may also the up and down arrow keys.

12. If prompted select "Run as application" and click **Next**.

    The Setup Type Screen Displays.

13. Accept **Complete** and press **Enter** for **Next**.

    The Verification Window displays.

14. Review the information and press **Enter** for **Install.**

    After Setup has completed copying files and starting services, the Setup Complete window displays.

    It will Prompt that you need a new version of Java Runtime Engine.

15. Click **YES** to Continue**.**

    The Transactional Engine Test screen appears (within a few seconds).

    For v10.x- After HTML help window displays. The JAVA™ 6 Update 5 will start to install. Click OK after prompted that the installation was successful. If a Message appears to Restart, select YES to Restart system. Since Pervasive v10.x does not automatically run the System Analyzer this should be done to verify connection. Launch Pervasive System Analyzer from Programs menu. The Welcome to System Analyzer Wizard displays. Click Next. The System Analyzer Options displays. Click Test Active Installation and click Next. Target Network Communication displays. Type Target Machine name of Server and click Next. Upon Successful Network communication message click Next. Test Transactional Engine displays. Click Next. Verify test was successful and click Next. Test Relational Engine displays click Next. Verify Test was successful and click Next and Finish. If these tests were not successful this MUST be resolved before installing ScanMaster otherwise Pervasive v10.x is now installed and operational. Skip to step 21.

16. Press **Enter** for **Next**.

    The Test Results will appear.

17. Press **Enter** for **Next**.

    The Relational Engine Test Screen appears.

18. Press **Enter** for **Next**.

    The Test Results will appear.

19. Press **Enter** for **Next**.

    The Pervasive SQL9 SP2 Workgroup for Windows screen will display.

20. Press **Enter** for **Finish**.

    Remove the Pervasive CD.

21. Click the **X** in the upper right hand corner to close out the HTML Help Window.

22. If Pervasive is being reinstalled or upgraded after ScanMaster is already installed, it will be necessary to manually run C**:\Grocery\V8Wrkstn.Reg** (if installing V8), **C:\Grocery\V9Wrkstn.Reg** (if installing V9) or **C:\Grocery\V10Wrkstn.Reg** (if installing V10). To do this, explore to <Def Drive>:\Grocery and double click on V8Wrkstn.reg, V9Wrkstn.reg or V10Wrkstn.reg. This is true for both Back Office Workstations and POS Workstations.

23. Reboot the PC.

Note: If Server / Back Office is running Vista Business with Pervasive 9.5 follow instructions under "Running Vista Business with Pervasive v9.5" patch instructions.

Pervasive v9.5 Patch Instructions when running Vista Business (Not supported)

1. After Pervasive is installed, stop both Pervasive services or the Workgroup engine and insert the ScanMaster Installation CD.
2. Copy the oledb_ftf.9.52.zip file to C:\PVSW\Bin folder.
3. Extract the files from the zip file to the Bin folder and follow the instructions in the readme.txt. (Register listed files using Regsvr32)
4. Restart the Pervasive services or Workgroup engine.

Note: If Vista is running on any of the ScanMaster server or Back Office PCs, this MUST be done on all ScanMaster PCs including the POS terminals.

5. If a PC is using v9.5 Workgroup and is a Back Office workstation, the following fix must be run.
6. On the root of the ScanMaster install CD, double click the psqlsvcsetup.zip file.
7. Double click on psqlsvcsetup.exe
8. Click **NEXT** at the Welcome Screen.
9. At the Select Destination Location screen click **NEXT** (this assumes that Pervasive is installed in C:\PVSW, change this if that is not the correct location).
10. At the Select Service Account screen, select "This account" and enter .\Administrator in the Account Name field. Enter the Administrator password and confirm.
11. Click **NEXT.**
12. Click **INSTALL.**
13. Click **FINISH**.

    This will cause the Pervasive Workgroup engine to load as a service instead of a tray application which is required to resolve a startup issue on Vista.

ScanMaster 2.07.00

Full Installation of ScanMaster 2.07.00 on the Back Office Workstation

To install ScanMaster 2.07.00 on the back office workstation, you must first ensure that you are logged on as the Administrator.

1. Insert the CD labeled **ScanMaster Version 2.07.00** into the CD-ROM drive or share the CD-ROM drive on the server and map the shared CD-ROM drive on the server and insert the **ScanMaster** Installation CD into the server CD-ROM drive.

Note: If any Window displays asking "What do you want Windows to do?", click **Cancel**.

2. From the Task Bar, click **Start→Run**.

   The Run dialog box displays.

3. Click **Browse**.
4. Look in the **CD-ROM** drive.
5. Double-click the **Scan2base** folder to display the contents.
6. Double-click **SETUP.EXE** and click **OK** to launch the ScanMaster installation procedure.

   An Information screen appears.

   *Read screen for requirements and Click **OK.***

   The ScanMaster Welcome window displays

   *If requirements on the Information page have **NOT** been met select **Cancel,** then select **YES.***

7. Click **Next** to begin the installation.

   The ScanMaster Installation Requirements window appears.

8. Click **Next**.

   You are prompted to "Enter the Currently Logged On User Name".

9. Make sure you are logged in as "Administrator " and with "Administrator" in the text box , click **Next**.

   The Choose Installation Type window displays.

10. Select **Back Office - Full Installation** then click **Next**.

    If Internet Explorer is already installed, the Enter Computer Name window displays.

NOTE: *If you do not have Internet Explorer version 5.5 or higher installed, you will receive a message with this information. You must install Internet Explorer version 5.5 or higher to continue with the ScanMaster 2.07.00 installation. Internet Explorer 5.5 is located on ScanMaster 2.05.02 and prior CD's in the IE55 folder and is called ie5setup.exe. If Pervasive v8/v9/v10 Workgroup Engine is not installed, you will receive a message that Pervasive must be installed prior to the ScanMaster 2.07.00 install. If the version requirements of either Pervasive or Internet Explorer are not met, the user will be notified and the install will terminate.*

11. Validate the computer name and server name is correct. Click **Next**.

    The Select Installation Location window displays with C: selected.

12. Select (click) the drive designation where you would like to install the ScanMaster program files. Click **Next** to continue.

    The Select Shared Drive screen displays.

13. Click the field selection arrow and choose the drive you would like to map to the shared ScanMaster files on the server. Click **Next** to continue.

    The Confirm Selections screen displays.

14. Click **Next** to continue.

    ScanMaster is loaded as the progress bar appears.

    A warning message appears describing the consequences of performing a restart during the MS Scripting Engine and MDAC installation.

15. Click **OK.**

Note: If this is a Windows XP Professional, Vista Business or Windows 7 Professional installation, the ScanMaster Server Database Creation Utility displays. Skip to step 23.

A message displays, asking if you are sure you want to install Windows Script 5.6.

16. Click **Yes.**

    The Windows Script 5.6 License Agreement appears.

17. Click **Yes** to accept.

    The Windows Script 5.6 files are copied. A message displays stating that Windows Script 5.6 is now installed.

18. Click **OK.**

    NOTE: *If you are prompted whether you wish to restart your computer, press* ***NO****.* ***DO NOT RESTART THE COMPUTER*** *at this point*

    The Microsoft Data Access Components 2.8 Setup begins, and the End User License Agreement displays.

19. Click the checkbox to accept the terms of the license agreement.

    The MDAC Detecting In Use Files window displays.

20. Click **Next** to continue.

The Installing the Software window displays.

21. Click **Finish.**

    The MDAC components are installed.

    Note: *It may take a few moments for the files to begin copying.*

    After the files are copied, the setup completions window displays.

22. Click **Close.**

    The ScanMaster Server Database Creation Utility displays.

23. Enter the user's password if any and click **CreateDB** button.

    In the Database Creation Status section a green message will appear:

    ScanMaster DBName created successfully.

    ScanMaster Database created successfully.

24. Click **Exit**.

    The install now creates the ScanMaster Users.

    The InstallShield Wizard Complete window displays.

25. Select "Yes, I want to restart my computer now" and click **Finish.**

Upgrading ScanMaster 2.07.00 on the Back Office Workstation

Ensure that you are logged on to the back office workstation as the Administrator and that you have performed the upgrade to Pervasive v8.x/v9.x /v10.x Workstation Engine (see page 77).

1. Insert the CD labeled ScanMaster Version 2.07.00 into the Server CD-ROM drive.
2. From the Task Bar, click **Start→Run**.

   The Run dialog box displays.

3. Click **Browse**.
4. Look in the **CD-ROM** drive.
5. Double-click the **Scan2base** folder to display the contents.
6. Double-click **SETUP.EXE** and click **OK** to launch the ScanMaster installation procedure.

   An Information screen appears.

   *Read screen for requirements and Click **OK.***

   The ScanMaster Welcome window displays

   *If requirements on the Information page have **NOT** been met select **Cancel,** then select **YES.***

7. Click **Next** to begin the installation.

The Install Requirements Screen displays.

8. Confirm the installation requirements have been met and click **Next** continue.

   The Enter Text dialog box appears.

9. Confirm the currently logged on user is the Administrator, then click **Next**.

   The Choose Installation Type window displays.

10. Select **Back Office - Upgrade** then click **Next**.

    Select the Currently installed version of ScanMaster window displays.

11. Confirm version of ScanMaster upgrading from, and then click **Next**.

    The Confirm Selections window displays.

12. Click **Next** to continue.

    Note: If Btrieve files remain open you will be prompted to close these before continuing. Close those applications or stop those services and select Continue.

    ScanMaster is loaded as the progress bar appears

    A warning message appears describing the consequences of performing a restart during the MS Scripting Engine and MDAC installation.

13. Click **OK.**

    If the operating system is Windows XP Professional or Vista Business, the ScanMaster Server Database Creation Utility will display. Skip to step 22.

14. Click **YES** to install Windows Script 5.6.

15. Click **YES** for the License Agreement for Windows Script 5.6.

16. Click **OK** to finish the installation.

    Note: This next selection is extremely important as the ScanMaster 2.07.00 Upgrade will not continue if the system is restarted now. The MDAC End User License screen will then display.

17. Click **NO** to not reboot at this time if prompted.

18. Click the checkbox to accept the terms of the license agreement and click **Next.**

19. If the MDAC Detecting In Use Files window displays, click **Next**.

    *The MDAC Detecting In Use Files window displays. If the file w3dbsmgr displays in the in use files box, **do not shut it down**.*

    The MDAC Installing the Software window displays.

20. Click **Finish.**

    The MDAC components are installed.

    Note: It may take a few moments for the files to begin copying.

    *After the files are copied, the Setup Complete window displays, Click **CLOSE.***

21. If prompted, click OK that Computer will reboot to run Part 2 of upgrade.

If upgrading from ScanMaster 1.02.xx, 1.03.xx, 1.04.xx or 2.00.xx, the ScanMaster Server Database Creation Utility will display. If not, skip to step 24.

22. Enter the user's password if any and click **CreateDB** button.

    In the Database Creation Status section a green message will appear:

    ScanMaster DBName created successfully.

    ScanMaster Database created successfully.

23. Click **Exit**.

24. Click OK when prompted that Computer will reboot to run Part 2 of upgrade.

    The Workstation restarts.

25. Log onto the Workstation as the Administrator again.

    If upgrading from v2.07.00 then the upgrade is complete, otherwise the Welcome window for ScanMaster 2.07.00 Upgrade Part Two displays.

26. Click **Next**.

    The Install Requirements Screen displays.

27. Confirm the installation requirements have been met and click **Next** continue.

    The "Choose Installation Type" screen appears.

28. Confirm installation type, and click **Next** to continue.

    If upgrading from v2.01.00 or greater, the register conversion warning message displays. Confirm all server and back office applications are shut down, including EJ Processor. Skip to step 31.

    The ScanMaster 2.07.00 File Conversion Utility window displays with the message:

    > *"It is required to close down all local ScanMaster applications on this workstation before continuing."*

29. Click **OK**.

    The Conversion Utility converts the necessary files. The checkboxes next to these files get checked automatically as the conversion progresses.

    The application message shows at top of the screen "Conversion completed. Click Exit."

30. Click **Exit**.

    The register conversion warning message displays. Confirm all server and back office applications are shut down, including EJ Processor.

31. Click **OK.**

    The conversion utility Part 2 screen displays briefly, processes, and then exits automatically.

    The computer will now reboot to restart required services. Click OK.

32. If the old icon "Start NCR ScanMaster" does not appear on your desktop, the upgrade is complete. If it still appears on your desktop, right-click the icon and select "Delete" from the pop-up menu.
33. Confirm the deletion and click **Yes**.
34. Right-click on the **Start** button and select **Open All Users** from the pop-up menu.
35. Double-click on the **Programs** file folder.
36. Right-click on **NCR ScanMaster for Windows** folder and select "Delete" from the pop-up menu.
37. Confirm the deletion and click **Yes.**
38. Close all open windows.

Post Installation

Norton Antivirus (Windows XP Acer OEM Version)

If your server has Norton Antivirus installed, you will need to re-enable the Script Blocker.

1. Double-click the Norton Antivirus icon located in the system tray (to the left of the time).

   The Norton Antivirus window displays
2. Click the **Script Blocking** hyperlink in the middle of the window.
3. Click the **Enable** button on the right of the window.
4. Close all open windows.

PoS Workstation Setup

This section describes the setup of a ScanMaster PoS Workstation. Instructions for installing the operating system, all necessary prerequisite components of ScanMaster and the workstation, and installing or upgrading ScanMaster 2.07.00.

Prerequisites

- Operating System Installation CDs if system is not preloaded.
- Pervasive v8.x/v9.x /v10.x Workstation Engine CD
- ScanMaster 2.07.00 Installation CD
- Network access to the ScanMaster server with the ability to access the Server's CD-ROM drive, if PoS Workstation is not equipped with a CD-ROM drive, and the ability to access the Server's SCAN1DOS share.
- If upgrading a 24 hour site, upgrade all PoS workstations prior to upgrading the Server and any Back Office Workstations.
- POSReady 2009 is the only certified OS for the TeamPoS 36XX.

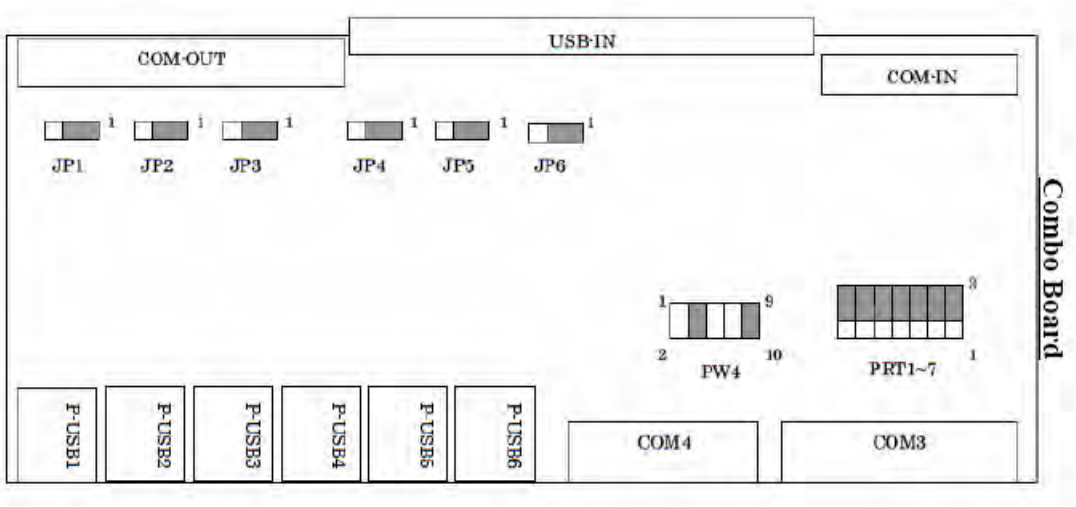
Fujitsu TeamPOS 3000XL / 3000XL2 PoS Workstation Combo Board Printer Jumper Settings

3000XL

Your TeamPoS 3000XL /3000 XL2 may contain the Combo Board to provide COM3, COM4 and six +12V USB connections pictured above.

3000XL2

Note: When using the Combo card with the XL2, one powered USB port is disabled (the port closest to the DB9 connector).



The 7 connector jumper block (PRT1-7) defines the printer interface being used for COM3. For Epson, Citizen, and TPG (Axiohm) printers the jumpers should be set to 2-3, 5-6, 8-9, 11-12, 14-15, 17-18, and 20-21.

Fujitsu TeamPOS M PoS Workstation Switch Settings

Before you perform any installation on the TeamPOS M PoS Workstation you must first set a bank of eight switch settings properly to enable the required ports.

1. Remove the left side panel by sliding it forward.
2. Locate the two sets of eight dip switches under the top cover of the workstation.
3. Set the switch setting as follows on the bank to the left (nearest to the rear of the machine):

   Note: Switch position of "On" is down, and "Off" is up.

   - Switch 1 = ON
   - Switch 2 = OFF
   - Switch 3 = OFF
   - Switch 4 = OFF
   - Switch 5 = ON
   - Switch 6 = ON
   - Switch 7 = ON
   - Switch 8 = ON

Note: After setting the switches on the retail I/O board, you must load C:\DRIVERS\PNT230.REG to install the COM ports properly within the registry. Do this by browsing to the directory, and double clicking on PNT230.REG, and clicking **YES** to the "Are you sure…" prompt, and **OK** to "…information entered…" prompt.

TeamPoS 36XX Configurations

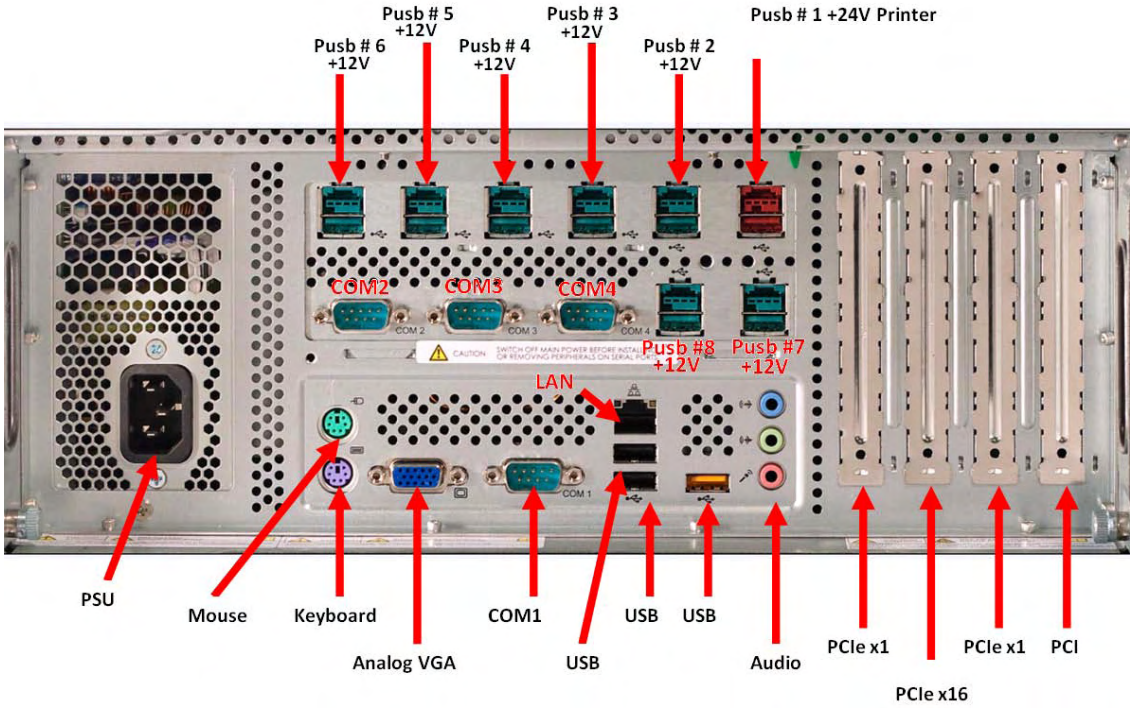
The TeamPoS 36XX comes preloaded with Windows Embedded POSReady 2009. This is the only O/S supported on this terminal.

- TeamPoS 36XX with no additional boards

- TeamPos 36XX with USB only

- TeamPoS 36XX with legacy board only

- TeamPoS 36XX with USB and legacy board



- The TeamPoS 36XX supports a 9 pin connector (COM1) on the motherboard. With the addition of the legacy board, there is support for three more 9 pin connections (COM2, COM3 and COM4).
- The TeamPoS 36XX does not support the legacy 92R, M, U RS232 connection or the 2 x 20 Pole displays that would be connected by RS232.
- The TeamPoS 36XX does not have the 24V 15 pin connector for printer power / signals. An adapter cable and a power brick or 24V powered USB cable is needed.
- The TeamPoS 36XX is preloaded with the POSReady image version: Image IMG-POSReady_36XXQ35 Rev. 1.00 and will be the only operating system that will be supported.

TeamPoS 36XX Display Configurations

DVI Monitor 1 and VGA Monitor 2

Using two monitors, one DVI and one VGA on the TP36XX

Note: The ATI Radeon 7000 card part # 11001990 from Fujitsu must be used for this configuration.

Note: The below is extracted from the TeamPoS36xx_ATI-Video_Card.pdf document located on the TP36XX in the C:\TeamPoS36xx_Software_Support\ATI Video Card Driver\OK--Specialv836 folder.

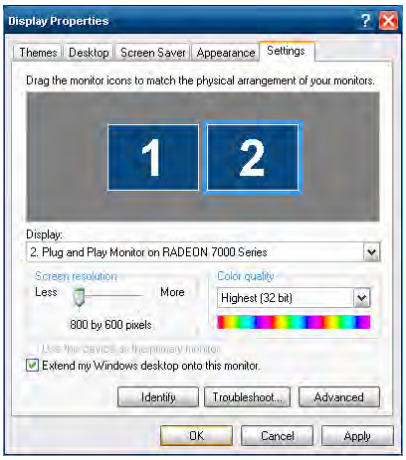
BIOS Setup

1. Install the ATI Video Adapter in the available *Team***PoS36xx** PCI slot.
2. Connect display (s) to the ATI Adapter connectors. The ATI Adapter supplies VGA and DVI connectors. (Do not use the VGA Port on Mainboard.)
3. Start the system and enter BIOS Setup pressing the ***DEL*** key when prompted during power-up POST sequence.
4. On the ***Advanced Chipset Features*** screen, set the ***PEG/Onchip VGA*** Control setting to ***PEG Port***.
5. Save BIOS settings and exit BIOS setup.

Driver Setup

Note: A special driver version is required to support the D22/25 LCDs.

1. Install the special driver by running setup.exe found in folder: C:\TeamPoS36xx_Software_Support\ATI Video Card Driver\OK--Specialv836\Driver.
2. The system will start in Clone-Mode. Display 1 is the DVI connected monitor and display 2 is the VGA connected monitor. To change the mode to Extended, use the Windows Display/Settings applet to enable display 2 for extended Windows desktop.


Display Properties
Themes
Desktop
Screen Saver
Appearance
Settings
Drag the monitor icons to match the physical arrangement of your monitors.
1
2
Display:
2. Plug and Play Monitor on RADEON 7000 Series
Screen resolution
Less
More
800 by 600 pixels
Color quality
Highest (32 bit)
Use this device as the primary monitor.
Extend my Windows desktop onto this monitor.
Identify
Troubleshoot...
Advanced
OK
Cancel
Apply

VGA Monitor 1 and VGA Monitor 2

Using two monitors, Both VGA on the TP36XX

Note: The ATI Radeon 7000 card part # 11001990 from Fujitsu must be used for this configuration.

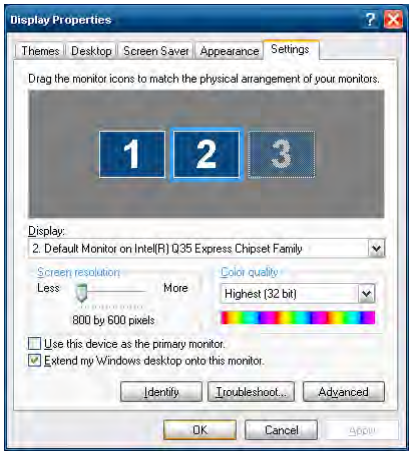
Note: The below is extracted from the TeamPoS36xx_ATI-Video_Card.pdf document located on the TP36XX in the C:\TeamPoS36xx_Software_Support\ATI Video Card Driver\OK--Specialv836 folder.

BIOS Setup

1. Install the ATI Video Adapter in the available *Team***PoS36xx** PCI slot.
2. Connect display (s). One must be connected to the *Team***PoS36xx** on-board VGA connection, and the second VGA to the ATI display VGA adapter. (Plug D25 into card and VGA into Mainboard)
3. Start the system and enter BIOS Setup pressing the ***DEL*** key when prompted during power-up POST sequence.
4. On the ***Advanced Chipset Features*** screen, set the ***PEG/Onchip VGA*** Control setting to ***Auto***.
5. Save BIOS settings and exit BIOS setup.

Driver Setup

1. The system will start with just the VGA display connected to the ATI video adapter showing and the other VGA on the motherboard will be disabled at this point. Use the Windows Display/Settings applet to enable display 2 for extended Windows desktop. Display 3 is not used.



VGA Monitor

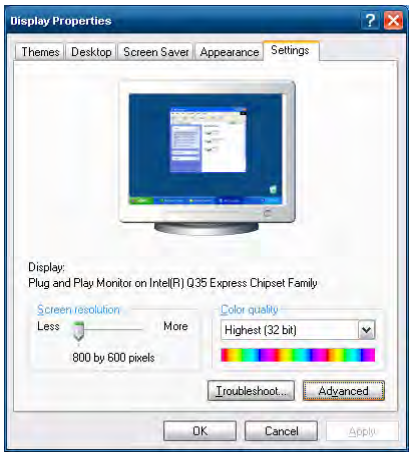
Using a single VGA monitor on the TP36XX

BIOS Setup

1. Connect the display to the VGA connection on the motherboard.
2. Start the system and enter BIOS Setup pressing the ***DEL*** key when prompted during power-up POST sequence.
3. On the ***Advanced Chipset Features*** screen, set the ***PEG/Onchip VGA*** Control setting to ***Auto***.
4. Save BIOS settings and exit BIOS setup.

Driver Setup

1. Use the Windows Display/Settings applet to setup your display.

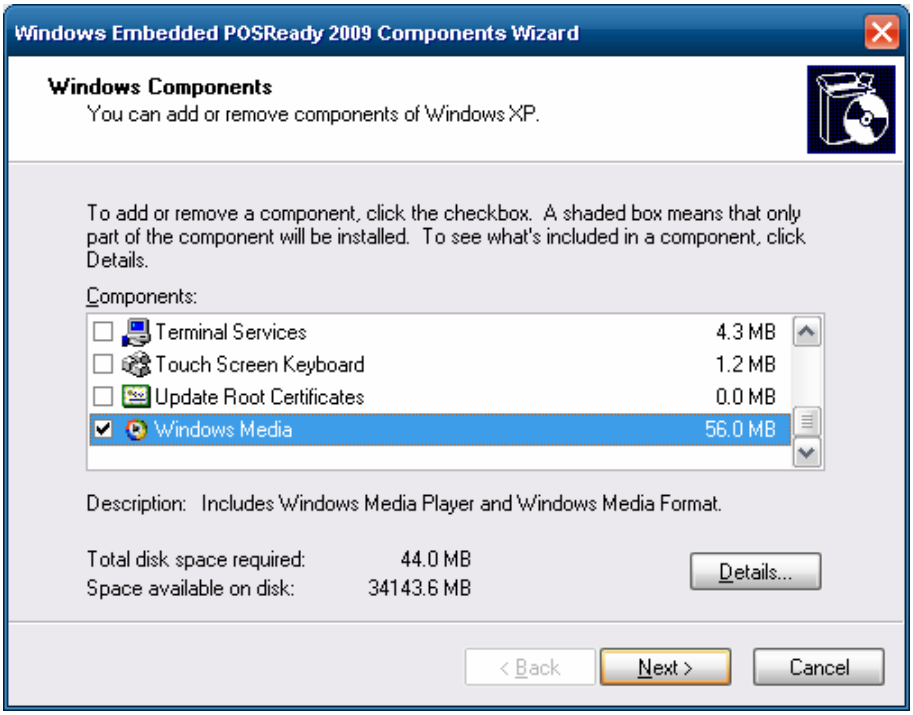


TeamPoS 36XX Windows Media Component Installation

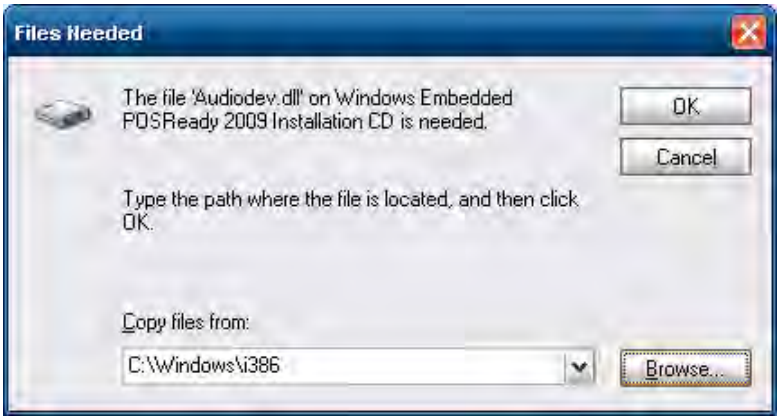
Note: You must install this in order for movie images to display on the CID with ScanMaster.

1. Open the control panel and click on Add or Remove Programs
2. Click the Add/Remove Windows Components ICON

3. Click the Windows media check box at the bottom of the list



4. Click **Next.**
5. At the files needed screen, browse to the C:\Windows\i386 folder.



6. Click **OK.**
7. Windows Media Player 11 is installed.

Operating System Installation for the PoS Workstation

The Windows XPe operating system is preloaded on the Fujitsu TeamPOS 2000 models M and S. The Microsoft WePOS operating system is preloaded on the Fujitsu TeamPOS 3000XL, TeamPOS 3000XL2 and TeamPOS 3000XE models. The Windows Embedded POSReady 2009 is preloaded on the TeamPoS 36XX and is the only certified O/S.

Note: It is highly recommended that an image of this installation be saved prior to installing any software or making any changes to the workstation.

Microsoft WePOS PoS and Windows XPe (Embedded) PoS Workstation Configuration

This manual assumes that the installation of Microsoft WePOS or Windows XPe (Embedded) has already been performed on the PoS workstation. If installing a TP36XX this manual assumes the installation of the Windows Embedded POSReady 2009 has already been performed on the PoS workstation. Whether the workstation was loaded using a Ghost image **or** whether your workstation was preloaded with Microsoft WePOS / Windows XPe (Embedded), you must perform the following steps prior to beginning the Pervasive and ScanMaster installation:

Note: Turn off the windows firewall on the TP3000XL, TP3000XL2, TP3000XE and TP36XX so it will not interfere with the installation

Note: Change to "Classic Start menu" by right clicking on "Start" then selecting "Properties".

1. Configure TCP/IP Network Protocol
2. Join the Store Workgroup
3. Map a network drive to the server CD-ROM drive.
4. Installing the XPe Patch on the workstation (see page 99)
5. Installing the OPOS Drivers (see page 103).

Configuring TCP/IP Network Protocol

1. Log into the workstation as the Administrator (with no password).
2. On the PoS Workstation, press the Start key on the keyboard.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Network Connections**.

   The Network Connections screen appears.
5. Right-click on **Local Area Connection**.
6. Select **Properties**.

   This Local Area Connections Properties Window appears.

7. Highlight **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** and click the **Properties** button.
8. If the server is configured up for DHCP, confirm that the **Obtain an IP Address automatically** radio button is depressed.

   OR

   If the server is configured for Static IP Addressing, enter this Workstations IP Address, Subnet Mask and Default Gateway.

Note: Consult your network administrator to obtain an IP Address and subnet mask.

9. When finished select **OK**.

   You are returned to the Local Area Connection Properties screen.

10. Select **OK**.
11. Close all open windows.

Joining the Store Workgroup

1. On the PoS Workstation, press the Start key on the keyboard.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Control Panel**.

   The Control Panel window appears.

4. Double-click **System.**
5. Select the **Computer Name** tab.
6. Click **Change**.
7. Select the **Workgroup** radio button.
8. In the **Workgroup** field, enter **Store** (or the workgroup your network administrator has setup for your site)**.**
9. Click **OK**.

   After a few seconds, the welcome to the workgroup message displays.

10. Click **OK.**

    A window that states you must restart this computer for the changes to take affect appears.

11. Click **OK**.

    *The System Properties window displays. Select **OK.***

    A window appears asking if you wish to restart now.

12. Click **Yes** to restart the PoS Workstation.

    The system reboots.

Map the Network Drive

Note: These steps assume that you have shared your server's CD-ROM Drive with a Share Name of "**CD_ROM**".

1. Login as Administrator.

Note: Create a shortcut to the Windows Explorer on the TP3000XL/TP3000XL2/TP3000XE Microsoft WePOS image in the Accessories folder.

   a. Right click on "Start"
   b. Click on "Open All Users"
   c. Double click "Programs"
   d. Double click "Accessories"
   e. Right click in the white background of the "Accessories" folder and create a new shortcut
   f. Type **C:\WINDOWS\explorer.exe** in the window then click "Next"
   g. Change the name of the shortcut to **Windows Explorer** and click "Finish"
   h. Right click on the Windows Explorer just created
   i. Click on "Properties"
   j. Click on "Change Icon"
   k. Select the folder with magnifying glass Icon and then click "OK"
   l. Click "OK" to close the screen

2. Press the Start key on the keyboard.
3. Select **Programs →Accessories→Windows Explorer**.

   The Explorer Window displays.

4. Select **Tools** from the Menu bar.
5. Select **Map Network Drive** from the drop-down menu.

   The Map Network Drive Window displays.

6. Select **G:** in the Drive field.
7. In the Folder field, type **\\SERVER\CD_ROM**. (If the server name is setup other than "Server", replace it here).
8. Ensure that "Reconnect at Logon" checkbox is selected.
9. Select **Finish** when done.

   You are connected to the CD-ROM drive on the server.

Note: If prompted, enter the server Administrator user name and password.

10. Close the window.

Note: If no CD is in the drive, you may receive a message that the device is not ready. Press **Enter** to clear the message.

Disabling Windows Messenger (Does not apply to the TP3000XL/ TP3000XL2/TP3000XE/TP36XX Microsoft WePOS image)

Note: Before attempting to disable Windows Messenger, close all open windows.

1. Double-click the Windows Messenger icon in the system tray, to the left of the time.

   The Windows Messenger window appears.

2. On the Windows Messenger menu bar, select **Tools**, and the select **Options** from the pop-up menu.

   The Options window appears.

3. Click the **Preferences** tab.
4. Deselect the "Run this program when Windows starts." checkbox, then click **OK**.
5. Close the Windows Messenger window.
6. Click the Windows Messenger icon in the system tray, to the left of the time.
7. Select **Exit** from the pop-up menu.
8. Click **OK**.

Installing Windows XPe Patch on the PoS Workstation (Does not apply to the TP3000XL/ TP3000XL2/TP3000XE Microsoft WePOS image and TP36XX)

1. Insert the CD labeled ScanMaster Version 2.07.00 into the Server CD-ROM drive.
2. From the Task Bar, click **Start→Run**.

   The Run dialog box displays.

3. Click **Browse**.
4. Look in the **CD-ROM** drive.
5. Double-click the **XPePatch** folder to display the contents.
6. Double-click **SETUP.EXE** and click **OK** to launch the XPe patch installation procedure.

   The InstallShield Welcome window displays.

7. Click **Next.**

   The Start Copying Files window displays.

8. Click **Next.**

   The files are now installed.

Pervasive Installation

Installing Pervasive Workstation Engine

Note: For PoS Workstations running Embedded XP you must first run the patch located on the ScanMaster Installation CD before the Pervasive Workstation Engine. See page 99.

This installation assumes you have a CD-ROM Drive in the PoS Workstation. If you do not, you can run the installation over the network using the server's CD ROM Drive.

1. At the back office workstation, insert the CD labeled v8.6/v9.5 /v10.x Workgroup Engine into the CD-ROM drive.

Note: If the Autorun program starts, for v10.x select Workgroup Edition (32 bit) and skip to step 10.

2. Press the Start key on the keyboard.
3. Press **<R>** for Run.
4. Press **<ALT><B>** for Browse.
5. Press **<ALT><I>** for Look In.
6. Press the Arrow Down key and highlight the CD-ROM drive on the server and press **Enter**.
7. Press the Tab key until the first folder on the CD is highlighted.
8. Press the Arrow Down key, highlight **Setup** and press **Enter**.

Note: For v10.x, double-click on SetupWorkgroupx486 in the workgroup folder.

9. Press **Enter** for **OK** to run Setup installation wizard.

   The Welcome screen appears.

10. Press **Enter** for **Next**.

    The Software License Agreement Displays.

11. Read the agreement and click "I accept…." Or press **<Alt><A>**then press **Enter** for Next.

Note: You may also the up and down arrow keys.

12. If prompted select "Run as application" and click **Next**.

    The Setup Type Screen Displays.

13. Accept **Complete** and press **Enter** for **Next**.

    The Verification Window displays.

14. Review the information and press **Enter** for **Install.**

After Setup has completed copying files and starting services, the Setup Complete window displays.

15. Press **Enter** for **Finish.**

    The HTML help window displays with links to the Pervasive web site. After closing this window, the Transactional Engine Test screen appears (within a few seconds).

    For v10.x- After HTML help window displays. The JAVA™ 6 Update 5 will start to install. Click OK after prompted that the installation was successful. If a Message appears to Restart, select YES to Restart system. Since Pervasive v10.x does not automatically run the System Analyzer this should be done to verify connection. Launch Pervasive System Analyzer from Programs menu. The Welcome to System Analyzer Wizard displays. Click Next. The System Analyzer Options displays. Click Test Active Installation and click Next. Target Network Communication displays. Type Target Machine name of Server and click Next. Upon Successful Network communication message click Next. Test Transactional Engine displays. Click Next. Verify test was successful and click Next. Test Relational Engine displays click Next. Verify Test was successful and click Next and Finish. If these tests were not successful this MUST be resolved before installing ScanMaster otherwise Pervasive v10.x is now installed and operational. Skip to step 21.

16. Press **Enter** for **Next**.

    The Test Results will appear.

17. Press **Enter** for **Next**.

    The Relational Engine Test Screen appears.

18. Press **Enter** for **Next**.

    The Test Results will appear.

19. Press **Enter** for **Next**.

    The Pervasive SQL9 SP2 Workgroup for Windows screen will display.

20. Press **Enter** for **Finish**.

    Remove the Pervasive CD.

21. Click the **X** in the upper right hand corner to close out the HTML Help Window.

22. If Pervasive is being reinstalled or upgraded after ScanMaster is already installed, it will be necessary to manually run C**:\Grocery\V8Wrkstn.Reg** (if installing V8), **C:\Grocery\V9Wrkstn.Reg** (if installing V9) or **C:\Grocery\V10Wrkstn.Reg** (if installing V10). To do this, explore to <Def Drive>:\Grocery and double click on V8Wrkstn.reg, V9Wrkstn.reg or V10Wrkstn.reg. This is true for both Back Office Workstations and POS Workstations.

23. Reboot the PC.

Note: If the POS is connected to a Vista Server and/or Vista Back Office and is running Pervasive v9.5 you MUST follow the instructions under "**PERVASIVE v9.5 PATCH INSTRUCTIONS WHEN RUNNING VISTA BUSINESS.**"

Pervasive v9.5 Patch Instructions when running Vista Business (Note: Vista not supported)

1. After Pervasive is installed, stop both Pervasive services or the Workgroup engine and insert the ScanMaster Installation CD.
2. Copy the oledb_ftf.9.52.zip file to C:\PVSW\Bin folder.
3. Extract the files from the zip file to the Bin folder and follow the instructions in the readme.txt. (Register listed files using Regsvr32)
4. Restart the Pervasive services or Workgroup engine.

Note: If Vista is running on any of the ScanMaster server or Back Office PCs, this MUST be done on all ScanMaster PCs including the POS terminals.

5. If a PC is using v9.5 Workgroup and is a Back Office workstation, the following fix must be run.
6. On the root of the ScanMaster install CD, double click the psqlsvcsetup.zip file.
7. Double click on psqlsvcsetup.exe
8. Click **NEXT** at the Welcome Screen.
9. At the Select Destination Location screen click **NEXT** (this assumes that Pervasive is installed in C:\PVSW, change this if that is not the correct location).
10. At the Select Service Account screen, select "This account" and enter .\Administrator in the Account Name field. Enter the Administrator password and confirm.
11. Click **NEXT.**
12. Click **INSTALL.**
13. Click **FINISH**.

    This will cause the Pervasive Workgroup engine to load as a service instead of a tray application which is required to resolve a startup issue on Vista.

OPOS Installation

Installation Preparation

Note: You should have already followed the steps outlined on page 96 to connect your workstation to the network.

Note: Before beginning the OPOS installation below, you may copy the \DRIVERS folder from the ScanMaster 2.07.00 Install CD to the hard drive of your workstation. Otherwise for Steps 2 and 3 below, browse to the previously installed TeamPoS3XXX folder (where XXX denotes your hardware model) omitting the leading \DRIVERS folder. (You should have previously mapped a drive to the server's CD-ROM drive – typically G:).

OPOS Common Control (RCS)

1. Login to the workstation as the Administrator.
2. Using Windows Explorer, browse to the DRIVERS\TeamPoS3XXX_Software_Support\Drivers\OPOS\Common Controls folder on the workstation.
3. Using Windows Explorer double-click on OposCCOs-1_12_000 file located in the DRIVERS\TeamPoS3XXX_Software_Support\Drivers\OPOS\Common Controls folder.

   The Welcome window displays.
4. Click Next.

   The Readme File window displays
5. Click NEXT.

   The Choose Destination Location window displays.
6. Accept Default Folder and Click NEXT.

   The Backup Replaced OPOS CCO Files window displays.
7. Verify that Yes is selected. Accept Default Backup Folder and Click NEXT.

   The Select OPOS CCO Components window displays.
8. Verify that Both "Common Control Objects" and "OPOS Include Files" are selected. Click NEXT.

   The Start Installation window displays.
9. Click NEXT.

   The Installation Complete window displays.
10. Click FINISH.

FTXS OPOS (Fujitsu)

1. Login to the workstation as the Administrator.
2. Using Windows Explorer, browse to the DRIVERS\TeamPoS3XXX_Software_Support\Drivers\OPOS\FTXSOPOS folder on the workstation.
3. Using Windows Explorer double-click on FTXSOPOS_1_10_6 file located in the DRIVERS\TeamPoS3XXX_Software_Support\Drivers\OPOS\FTXSOPOS folder.

   The Welcome window displays.
4. Click Next.

   The License Agreement window displays
5. Accept the agreement and click NEXT.

   The Setup Type window displays
6. Select the Platform Type that you are installing to.

- Choices: TeamPoS 3000XL, XT,XL2
- TeamPoS 36XX, TeamPoS 3000XE, TeamPoS 2000 for Models M and S units.

7. Select appropriate Option.
8. Click NEXT.

   The Select Components window displays.
9. Select (click) the following PoS devices to install, regardless of actual hardware configuration:
   - LineDisplay1_VF60(USB)
   - D22_25 MSR, Lock
   - ***CashDrawer (TeamPoS 2000) ***(TeamPoS 3000) *Depending on Platform Type (will not show this option when installing TP36XX)*
   - Keylock 133PQ
   - LineDisplay1_VF40_VF50 (Serial)
   - MSR 133PQ
   - POSKeyboard_133PQ
   - Scanner_SS1200
   - ScannerScale_Symphony_9950
   - ToneIndicator 133PQ

Note: If using a 92M Keyboard, select "POSKeyboard_92R_92M_92U (Serial). If using a 92U Keyboard, select "POSKeyboard_92U (USB).

10. Click Next.

    If TeamPos 3000 or 36XX, Skip to step 12.

    The Select I/O Board Type & Base Address window displays.

11. Select "No I/O Board or no port setup required".
12. Click NEXT.

    The Select OPOS Device Registry Settings Option window displays.

13. Select "Customize Each Device Port Settings".
14. Click NEXT.

    The Current Settings window displays. Verify Settings.

15. Click NEXT.

    The Installation window displays.

16. Click INSTALL.

    The Devices Logical Name window displays.

17. Click NEXT. (D22_D25_MSR).
18. Click NEXT. (D22_D25_KLK).
19. Click NEXT. (VF60-1).
20. Click NEXT. (FjMCPCD1) TeamPoS 2000, (TP3K_CD1) TeamPoS 3000.

    Would you like to change secondary cash drawer settings question displays. (No message when installing a 36XX)

21. Click NO.
22. Click NEXT. (fjkbdso)
23. Click NEXT. (fjklkso)
24. Click NEXT. (fjmsrso)
25. Click NEXT. (FJPosKBTone)
26. Click NEXT. (SlimScan1200)
27. Click NEXT. (Fujitsu7521E_S)
28. Click NEXT. (Fujitsu7521E_S_Scale)
29. Click NEXT. (fjvfdso)
30. If 92M Click NEXT. (ICL92RKeyboard)
31. If 92M Click NEXT. (ICL92Operator)
32. If 92M Click NEXT. (ICL92RKeylock)
33. If 92M Click NEXT. (ICL92RTone)

34. If 92M Click NEXT. (ICL92RMSR)

    The InstallShield Wizard Complete window displays.

35. Click FINISH.

Epson OPOS (For Installations w/ Epson Printers)

Note: Before beginning the OPOS installation below, you may copy the \DRIVERS folder from the ScanMaster 2.07.00 Install CD to the hard drive of your workstation. Otherwise for Step 2 below, browse to the previously installed folder on your workstation: \TEAMPOS3XXX_SOFTWARE_SUPPORT\PRINTERS\DT50III\OPOS\OPOSADK\V264E\DISK1. (You should have previously mapped a drive to server's CD-ROM drive – typically G:).

Note: If you are upgrading an existing Epson OPOS, Uninstall Epson OPOS ADK from Add/Remove Programs in Windows Control Panel before continuing.

1. Login to the workstation as the Administrator.
2. Using Windows Explorer, browse to the \DRIVERS\EpsonOPOS\OPOSADK\V264E\DISK1 folder.
3. Double-click **SETUP.EXE** to launch the installation procedure.

   The Welcome Screen displays.

4. Click **Next**.

   The Licensing Screen displays.

5. Select the first radio button "I accept" and click **Next**.

   A confirmation screen displays.

6. Click **Yes.**

   The Select Registry File screen displays.

7. Select the first radio button "No registry file" and click **Next.**

   Setup Type Screen Displays

8. Choose user and click **Next**.

   The Start Copying Files screen displays.

9. Click **Next.**

   After file loading the Setup complete screen displays.

10. Port selection screen displays- select serial or USB
11. Click **Finish**.
12. Close the readme windows.

    The OPOS Device Screen appears.

13. Right-click **POSPrinter** and select "Add new device"**.**

    The Add New Device Screen appears.

14. Select the device name (**TM-H6000II or TM-H6000III**) of your Epson printer and enter the name of "**DefaultPrinter**" (no spaces) in the Add New LDN field at the bottom of the screen.

    Note: *If using a USB Printer, select* ***TM-H6000IIU or TM-H6000IIIU*** *in the Select detailed Model field at the top right of the screen. The used port should display USB.*

15. Click **Next.**

Note: If a SetupPOS window displays stating "This setting may cause a port conflict if the device is not set up properly." Click OK.

The Communication Settings Screen appears.

Note: If USB port is being used, click on Auto Settings and accept detected port.

16. Configure your printer's port setting and click **Finish**.

    When finished the OPOS Device Screen appears.

17. Right-click **MICR** and select "Add new device"**.**

    The Add New Device Screen appears.

18. Select the device name (**TM-H6000II or TM-H6000III**) for your Epson MICR and enter the name of "**DefaultMICR**" (no spaces) in the Add New LDN field at the bottom of the screen.

Note: If using a USB Printer, select TM-H6000IIU or TM-H6000IIIU in the Select detailed Model field at the top right of the screen. The used port should display USB.

19. Click **Next.**

Note: If a SetupPOS window displays stating "This setting may cause a port conflict if the device is not set up properly." Click OK.

The Communication Settings Screen appears.

Note: If USB port is being used, Click on Auto Settings and accept detected port.

20. Configure your MICR port setting and click **Finish**.

    When finished the OPOS Device Screen appears.

21. Right-click **CashDrawer** and select "Add new device".

    The Add New Device Screen appears.

22. Select the device name (**Multi_A**) for your Cash Drawer and enter the name of "**DefaultDrawer**" in the Add New LDN field at the bottom of the screen.

Note: If using a USB Printer, Select **Multi_AU** in the Select detailed Model field at the top right of the screen. The used port should display USB.

23. Click **Next.**

The Communication Settings Screen appears.

Note: If USB port is being used, Click on Auto Settings and accept detected port.

24. Configure your Cash Drawer's port setting to the same as your printer in step 16 and click **Finish.**
25. Click **OK** to the warning message.

    When finished the OPOS Device Screen appears.
26. Close the Epson OPOS Window.

TPG OPOS (For Installations w/ TPG A760, A776, A794 Printers)

Note: Before beginning the OPOS installation below, you must copy the \DRIVERS folder from the ScanMaster 2.07.00 Install CD to the hard drive of your workstation. (You should have previously mapped a drive to server's CD-ROM drive – typically G:).

1. Logon to workstation as Administrator.
2. Open Windows Explorer and browse to the \DRIVERS\TPG OPOS and 776 USB Driver folder.
3. Double-click **Install.bat**.

   The Printer Model Menu displays.
4. Press the letter corresponding to the Printer Model being installed.

   Window displays asking if you are sure you wish to update the registry.
5. Click **Yes**.

   Window displays stating information has been successfully entered into the registry.
6. Click **OK**.

   Window displays stating DLLRegisterServer in tpg.dll succeeded.
7. Click **OK.**

   Window displays stating opospos printer.ocx succeeded.
8. Click **OK.**

   Window displays stating oposcashdrawer.ocx succeeded.
9. Click **OK.**

   Window displays stating oposmicr.ocx succeeded.
10. Click **OK.**

    The TPG OPOS Printer is installed.

Note: The configuration portion of the TPG Printer is handled by the ScanMaster PoS Workstation installation.

TPG USB Printer Driver Installation

Note: In addition to OPOS Installation, the TPG USB Printer must have the Windows driver installed.

1. Power the Register **off**.
2. Plug in the TPG USB Printer into the red 24v USB port on the register and Start up.

   Windows will discover the new device and attempt to install. The Hardware Update Wizard screen displays. "Can Windows connect to Windows Update" question appears.
3. Select "No. Not this time" and Click **NEXT**.

   "What do you want the wizard to do?" question appears.
4. Select "Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)" and Click **NEXT.**

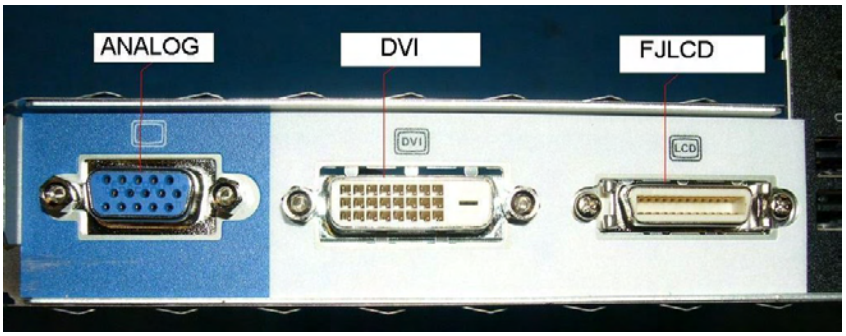
   The search and installation option screen displays.
5. Select (check) "Include this location in the search" and Click **Browse.**
6. Path to C:\Drivers\TPG OPOS and 776 USB Driver and Click **NEXT.**

   A Hardware Installation warning displays.
7. Click **Continue Anyway.**

   Windows will install the Printer.
8. Click **Finish.**

Configuring Digital Video on TeamPoS M unit

The TeamPoS 2000 M unit has three video ports on the back of the unit:



Only two of these three ports can be used at one time:

- Analog (Standard VGA) and DVI
- Analog (Standard VGA) and FJLCD

The DVI port can be used with the Fujitsu D15 monitor with a DVI cable. The FJLCD port can be used with the Fujitsu D12 monitor. The D15 monitor can also be used with the standard VGA (Analog) port with a VGA cable instead of DVI.

Units are preconfigured for either DVI or FJLCD. This section will describe the process to switch between one set of ports to the other.

Switching TeamPoS 2000 M from DVI to FJLCD

1. Right-click on the Windows Desktop and select Properties from the pop-up menu.

   The Display Properties window displays.

2. Click **Settings** tab.
3. Select "1. Default Monitor…" from the Display drop-down.
4. Click **Advanced** button.
5. Click **Adapter** tab.
6. Click **Properties** button.
7. Click **Driver** tab.
8. Click **Update Driver…** button.
9. Select "Install from a list or specific location…" radio-button and click **Next.**
10. Select "Don't search. I will choose the driver to install" radio-button and click **Next**..
11. Click **Have Disk…** button.
12. Click **Browse** button.
13. Browse to the "C:\DRIVERS\Win XP\VIDEO\LCD + Analog" directory, and click **Open**.
14. Click **OK**.
15. Click **Next**.

    A Hardware Installation window will display stating that the driver you are installing has not passed Windows Logo testing to verify its compatibility with Windows XP.

16. Click **Continue Anyway** button.

    The driver will install as the progress bar appears. When installation is complete the Completing the Hardware Update Wizard window appears.

17. Click **Finish**.
18. Click **Close**.

    A System Settings Change message appears asking if you wish to restart your computer now.

    Note: It is very important that the system is NOT restarted at this point. The driver must be installed for the second display before restarting the system.

19. Click **No**.
20. Click **OK**.

    The Display Properties window displays, with the Settings Tab active.
21. Select "2. Plug and Play Monitor…" from the Display drop-down.
22. Click **Advanced** button.
23. Click **Adapter** tab.
24. Click **Properties** button.
25. Click **Driver** tab.
26. Click **Update Driver…** button.
27. Select "Install from a list or specific location…" radio-button and click **Next.**
28. Select "Don't search. I will choose the driver to install" radio-button and click **Next**..
29. Click **Have Disk…** button.
30. Click **Browse** button.
31. Browse to the "C:\DRIVERS\Win XP\VIDEO\LCD + Analog" directory, and click **Open**.
32. Click **OK**.
33. Click **Next**.

    A Hardware Installation window will display stating that the driver you are installing has not passed Windows Logo testing to verify its compatibility with Windows XP.
34. Click **Continue Anyway** button.

    The driver will install as the progress bar appears. When installation is complete the Completing the Hardware Update Wizard window appears.
35. Click **Finish**.
36. Click **Close**.

    A System Settings Change message appears asking if you wish to restart your computer now.
37. Click **Yes**.

    System reboots, and the monitor attached to the FJLCD port will become active. You can now disconnect the monitor connected to the DVI port when the TeamPoS unit is powered down.

Switching TeamPoS 2000 M from FJLCD to DVI

1. Right-click on the Windows Desktop and select Properties from the pop-up menu.

   The Display Properties window displays.

2. Click **Settings** tab.
3. Select "1. Default Monitor…" from the Display drop-down.
4. Click **Advanced** button.
5. Click **Adapter** tab.
6. Click **Properties** button.
7. Click **Driver** tab.
8. Click **Update Driver…** button.
9. Select "Install from a list or specific location…" radio-button and click **Next.**
10. Select "Don't search. I will choose the driver to install" radio-button and click **Next**..
11. Click **Have Disk…** button.
12. Click **Browse** button.
13. Browse to the "C:\DRIVERS\Win XP\VIDEO\DVI + Analog" directory, and click **Open**.
14. Click **OK**.
15. Click **Next**.

    A Hardware Installation window will display stating that the driver you are installing has not passed Windows Logo testing to verify its compatibility with Windows XP.

16. Click **Continue Anyway** button.

    The driver will install as the progress bar appears. When installation is complete the Completing the Hardware Update Wizard window appears.

17. Click **Finish**.
18. Click **Close**.

    A System Settings Change message appears asking if you wish to restart your computer now.

    Note: It is very important that the system is NOT restarted at this point. The driver must be installed for the second display before restarting the system.

19. Click **No**.
20. Click **OK**.

    The Display Properties window displays, with the Settings Tab active.

21. Select "2. Plug and Play Monitor…" from the Display drop-down.

22. Click **Advanced** button.
23. Click **Adapter** tab.
24. Click **Properties** button.
25. Click **Driver** tab.
26. Click **Update Driver…** button.
27. Select "Install from a list or specific location…" radio-button and click **Next.**
28. Select "Don't search. I will choose the driver to install" radio-button and click **Next**..
29. Click **Have Disk…** button.
30. Click **Browse** button.
31. Browse to the "C:\DRIVERS\Win XP\VIDEO\DVI + Analog" directory, and click **Open**.
32. Click **OK**.
33. Click **Next**.

    A Hardware Installation window will display stating that the driver you are installing has not passed Windows Logo testing to verify its compatibility with Windows XP.

34. Click **Continue Anyway** button.

    The driver will install as the progress bar appears. When installation is complete the Completing the Hardware Update Wizard window appears.

35. Click **Finish**.
36. Click **Close**.

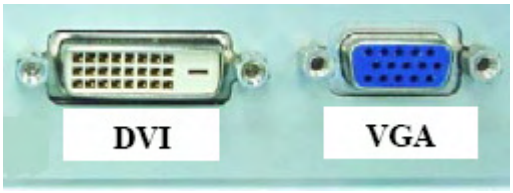
    A System Settings Change message appears asking if you wish to restart your computer now.

37. Click **Yes**.

    System reboots, and the monitor attached to the DVI port will become active. You can now disconnect the monitor connected to the FJLCD port when the TeamPoS unit is powered down.

Configuring Digital Video on the TeamPoS 3000XL / XL2 PoS

The TeamPoS 3000XL / 3000XL2 has two video ports on the back of the unit:



Setting up the TeamPoS 3000XL / 3000XL2 with dual monitors

1. Click on "Start / Settings / Control Panel"
2. Double-click on Intel Extreme Graphics 2 M. (For 3000XL2, click on Intel GMM driver for mobile).
3. Click on the left tab (Display Devices).
4. Under the section "Multiple display", click "Extended Desktop". (For 3000XL2, it is called “Operating Mode”).
5. Primary Device – select dropdown "Digital Display".
6. Secondary Device – select dropdown "Monitor".
7. Click on the left tab (Display Settings).
8. Click on the top tab (Digital Display).
9. Select Screen Resolution 800 x 600.
10. Click on the top tab (Monitor).
11. Select Screen Resolution 800 x 600.
12. Click "OK"
13. Click "OK" to confirm the desktop change.

Note: NOTE: The following step must be done to write the monitor configuration to the registry.

1. Click on "Start / Programs / Display_Select" and click on Display_Select.

The Display Selector displays.

2. Under the section "Extended Mode (Independent Screen)", click "Primary: Digital Monitor / Secondary: Analog Monitor".
3. Click "Register".

TeamPOS 3000XE Second Video Card Setup

Use the following steps to install and configure a second RADEON 7000 Series Video Card Installation on a TeamPOS 3000XE POS.

1. Do a normal Windows shutdown and unplug the power cable on the TeamPoS 3000 XE.
2. Install the RADEON 7000 Series PCI video card into the center PCI slot.
3. Plug your DVI monitor on the DVI connector on the video PCI card.
4. Plug your VGA monitor on the VGA connecter on the TeamPOS 3000XE.
5. Turn on the computer and enter the CMOS by hitting the [Delete] key on the keyboard.
6. Check the following CMOS Setting under Advanced BIOS Features:

- Init Display First [Onboard/AGP]

7. Save & Exit Setup.

Note: You will see the diagnostics on the VGA monitor connected to the TeamPOS 3000XE.

8. The driver for the RADEON 7000 Series has already been installed in the WePOS XE image R1.02 and above on the TeamPOS 3000XE.

Note: IF THE TP3000XE CONTAINS THE ORIGINAL SHIPPING IMAGE 1.1a, YOU WILL HAVE TO DO THE FOLLOWING STEPS TO INSTALL THE NEW ATI RADEON 7000 DRIVER CORRECTLY.

- The Radeon 7000 card should be shipping with the video driver. The driver is also available from the Fujitsu FTP site through the www.storenext.com web page.

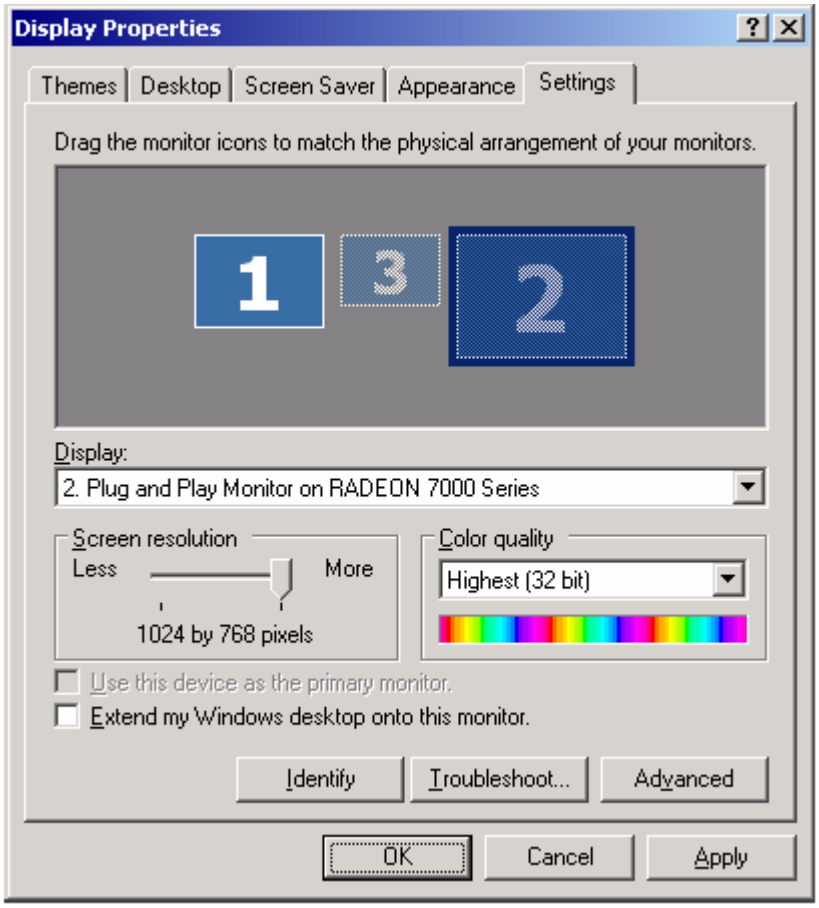
Note: DO NOT USE THE SETUP.EXE PROGRAM ON THE DRIVER CD. IT WILL NOT OVERWRITE THE SYSTEM32 FILES. USE THE FOLLOWING STEPS TO UPDATE THE DRIVER.

- Go to Start -> Settings -> Control Panel -> System.
- Click on the Hardware Tab.
- Click on Device Manager.
- Open the display adapters and double click on RADEON 7000 / RADEON VE Family (Microsoft Corporation).
- Click on the Driver Tab.
- Click on Update Driver. (The Welcome to the Hardware Update Wizard screen appears.)
- Put the bullet on "No, not this time" and click **Next**.

- Put the bullet on "Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)" and click **Next**.
- Browse to the CD folder or downloaded file ATI-Driver containing the folder 2KXP_INF and click **OK**.
- Click **Next** to install the updated driver.
- Click **Finish**.
- Click **Yes** to restart computer now.

9. Right-click on the desktop and select **Properties**.
10. Select the Settings Tab and the following screen is displayed showing Monitors 1, 3, and 2.

- Monitor 1 is the VGA on the motherboard.
- Monitor 3 is not used (the connector is missing on the add-in card).
- Monitor 2 is the DVI connector on the add-in card.

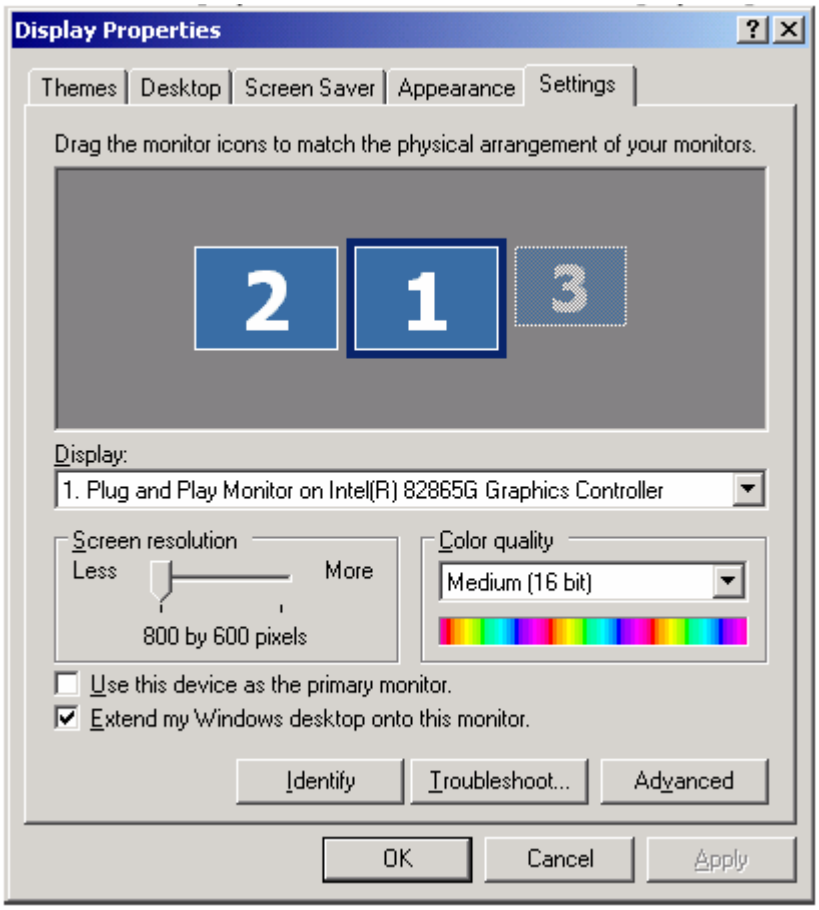


11. Click on Monitor 2 (DVI).
12. Set screen resolution to 800 by 600 pixels.
13. Set color quality to Medium (16 bit).
14. Click "Extend my Windows desktop onto this monitor".

15. Click **Apply**.
16. Click "Use this device as the primary monitor".
17. Click **Apply**.
18. Click on Monitor 1 (VGA).
19. Uncheck "Extend my Windows desktop onto this monitor".
20. Click **Apply.**

Note: This will force the desktop to monitor 2 (DVI).

21. Check "Extend my Windows desktop onto this monitor".
22. Click **Apply.** The displays should now show on the Display Properties as 2, 1, and 3.



23. Display, installation and setup are complete at this point.

Touch Screen Driver Installation

This section describes the steps to configure "Touch" on the Fujitsu D25, D15, D12, and A12 Flat panel displays.

Fujitsu D25 Touch Screen Drivers

The D25 monitor is a 15" flat panel display that can connect to a TeamPoS 2000 M unit or TeamPoS 3000XL / 3000XL2 / TP36XX with either a DVI or VGA cable, and to the TeamPoS 2000 S or TeamPoS 3000 XE unit with a VGA cable.

NOTE: The display configuration must be complete before installing the ELO touch drivers.

Installing the ELO Touch Driver

1. Login to the workstation as Administrator
2. Power for the D25 monitor is from the 12V powered USB which also provides the touch capability.
3. Open Windows Explorer and browse to the **C:\Drivers\TeamPoS 3000_Software_Support\Drivers\LCD Display Touch\TeamPoS 3000 D25\Driver** folder.
4. Double click "EloSetup.exe".
5. Click "Install USB Touchscreen Drivers" then click "Next".
6. The License Agreement displays. Click "Yes".
7. The Elo Touchscreen install finishes and is checked to "Calibrate Elo Touchscreen monitors". Click "Finish".
8. The Elo touchscreen is intelligent and calibrates either one monitor or two monitors if you have the display configuration setup for two monitors.
9. Turn off the touch on the customer Monitor when using two touch monitors by doing the following.
    a. Click the Elo Icon in the desktop system tray.
    b. Click the tab "Properties 1 or 2" and click "Identify Monitor" to find out which monitor is the customer.
    c. Click on "Advanced" in the Properties tab for the customer Elo touch .
    d. Click the box under "Options" to "Disable touch" and click "OK".
    e. Click "OK" to exit the Elo Properties screen.

Fujitsu D15 Touch Screen Drivers

The D15 monitor is a 15" flat panel display that can connect to a TeamPoS 2000 M unit with either a DVI or VGA cable, and to the TeamPoS 2000 S unit with a VGA cable.

Note: Before beginning the driver installation below, you must first copy the \DRIVERS folder from the ScanMaster 2.07.00 Install CD to the hard drive of your workstation. (You should have previously mapped a drive to server's CD-ROM drive – typically G:).

Setting up the Fujitsu D15 monitor requires the following processes to be done:

- Install the driver
- Install the driver utility and calibrate the touch
- Setup the driver for use with ScanMaster

Install the 3M TouchWare driver

1. Login to the workstation as the Administrator.
2. If the D15 USB connection was not plugged in, before Windows was started on the PoS Workstation, then plug the USB cable from the D15 monitor into the USB port on the back of the PoS Workstation.

   If the Found New Hardware Wizard window displays, skip to step 5.
3. From the Windows XP task bar, click on **Start → Settings → Control Panel → Administrative Tools → Computer Management**. Select **Device Manager** from the Tree.
4. Right click on the "3M USB TouchScreen – EX II" from the list of devices under "Other Devices" on the right, and select "**Update Driver…**" from the pop-up menu.

   The Hardware Update Wizard screen appears, and prompts to connect to Windows Update.
5. Select "No, not this time" and click **Next** to continue.
6. Select the "Install from a list or specific location…" checkbox and click **Next** to continue.
7. Uncheck the "Search removable media…" checkbox.
8. Check the "Include this location in the search…" checkbox, and click **Browse**.

   The Browse for Folder window displays.
9. Browse to the C:\DRIVERS\D15\DISK1 folder and click **OK**.
10. Click **Next**.
11. The "Completing the Hardware Update Wizard" window displays. Click **Finish**.
12. Close all open windows.

Install 3M TouchWare Driver Utility on a Single monitor system.

Note: Only use this section if you have only a cashier display on the PoS Workstation. If the workstation has a Cashier and Customer display then skip to the next section.

1. Login to the workstation as the Administrator.
2. Using Windows Explorer, browse to the DRIVERS\D15\DISK1 folder on the workstation:
3. Double-click **SETUP.EXE**.

   The TouchWare 5.64 SR5a setup screen displays
4. Click **Next**.
5. Select "I Accept – TouchWare installation will continue" radio-button, and click **Next**.
6. Select "USB" radio-button, and click **Next**.
7. Select "Express Install…" radio-button and click **Next**.

   After the utility is installed, the Setup Complete window displays
8. Uncheck the "Yes, I want to view the readme file" checkbox, and click **Finish**.

   If the PoS Workstation only has one monitor for Cashier display skip to step 10

   A TouchWare monitor message appears stating that the "Touch Screen mapping for your system is incorrect. "
9. Click **OK**.

   The Touch Screen Calibration Needed window displays.
10. Ensure the "Do not remind me…" check box is not selected, and click **Calibrate**.
11. Calibrate the touch screen by touching and holding the indicated spots on the display, until it displays "Touch Enable" at each location.
12. Drag your finger over the display and ensure the cursor follows. If correct click **Done**, otherwise click **Calibrate**, and repeat the previous step.

Install 3M TouchWare Driver Utility on a Dual monitor system

Note: Only use this section if you have both a cashier and customer display on the PoS Workstation. If the workstation has only a Cashier display then skip to the previous section.

1. Login to the workstation as the Administrator.
2. Using Windows Explorer, browse to the DRIVERS\D15\DISK1 folder on the workstation:
3. Double-click **SETUP.EXE**.

   The TouchWare 5.64 SR5a setup screen displays

4. Click **Next**.
5. Select "I Accept – TouchWare installation will continue" radio-button, and click **Next**.
6. Select "USB" radio-button, and click **Next**.
7. Select "Express Install…" radio-button and click **Next**.

   After the utility is installed, the Setup Complete window displays
8. Uncheck the "Yes, I want to view the readme file" checkbox, and click **Finish**.

   A TouchWare monitor message appears stating that the "Touch Screen mapping for your system is not correct. "
9. Click **OK**.
10. Close all open windows.
11. Double-click the TouchWare icon on the desktop.

    A Monitor Setup message appears stating that the "Touch Screen mapping for your system is not correct."
12. Click **OK**.

    A Monitor Setup message appears stating that the "During the mapping process…"

Note: Important!! Steps 14 and 15 are timed, so read the instructions first and respond appropriately. If you do not respond appropriately before the system times out, configuration will not be correct.

13. Read all the instructions on the message and Click **OK**.
14. A large numeral "1" will appear on one of the screens.
    - If the "1" appears on the D15 monitor touch the screen. The message "Touch screen mapped successfully to monitor 1" will display.
    - If the monitor that is displaying the "1" is NOT the D15 monitor wait until the message "No touch screen mapped" message appears, and click OK.
15. A large numeral "2 will appear on one of the screens.
    - If the "2 appears on the D15 monitor touch the screen. The message "Touch screen mapped successfully to monitor 2 will display.
    - If the monitor that is displaying the "2 is NOT the D15 monitor wait until the message "No touch screen mapped" message appears, and click OK.
16. Click **Close**.

    The Touch Screen Calibration Needed window displays.
17. Ensure the "Do not remind me…" check box is not selected, and click **Calibrate**.
18. Calibrate the touch screen by touching and holding the indicated spots on the display, until it displays "Touch Enable" at each location.
19. Drag your finger over the display and ensure the cursor follows. If correct click **Done**, otherwise click **Calibrate**, and repeat the previous step.

Fujitsu D12/A12 Touch Screen Drivers

The D12 monitor is a 12" flat panel display that connects to a TeamPoS 2000 M unit in the FJLCD port on the back of the unit. The A12 monitor is a 12" flat panel display that can connect to both the TeamPoS 2000 M and S units in the standard VGA port on the back of the unit.

Note: Before beginning the driver installation below, you must first copy the \DRIVERS folder from the ScanMaster 2.07.00 Install CD to the hard drive of your workstation. (You should have previously mapped a drive to server's CD-ROM drive – typically G:).

1. Login to the workstation as the Administrator.
2. Using Windows Explorer, browse to the DRIVERS\TOUCHDRIVER folder on the workstation:
3. Double-click **SETUP.EXE**.

   The Fujitsu Touch Panel Setup Screen displays.
4. Select "1. Non Plug and Play Device", and click **OK**.

   When finished the "Install is now complete.." screen displays.
5. Click **OK**.

   The Touch Panel Settings screen displays and the COM1 will be selected.
6. Click **OK.**
7. Click **Yes** to restart the workstation.

Dual Screen Installations

Note: The following section is for dual display installs only.

1. After reboot, logon as Administrator
2. Do the following if the Windows desktop (Icons, and task bar) is on the monitor used for the **Customer** display.
3. Right click on an unused space on the desktop and select Properties from the pop-up menu.

   The display properties window appears.
4. Select display number 1, from the Display drop down combo-box.
5. Check the "Use this device as the primary monitor" checkbox.
6. Click Apply.
7. Select display number 2, from the Display drop down combo-box.
8. Uncheck the "Extend my Windows desktop onto this monitor."

9. Click Apply.

   The windows desktop moves to the cashier display monitor.

10. Check the "Extend my Windows desktop onto this monitor."
11. Click OK.

Calibrating the Fujitsu D12 or A12 Touch Screen

1. From the Windows Taskbar, click **Start→Settings→Control Panel**.
2. (Optional) Click **Switch to Classic View**.
3. Double-click **Touch Panel**.
4. Click the **Calibration Tab**.
5. Select "**20 Point Calibration (5 x 4 Matrix)**" in the "Accuracy Required" section.
6. Click **Apply**.
7. Click **Calibrate Now**.
8. With a pointed instrument click the red x location on the screen. The x location will move around the screen, repeat at each location (20 times).
9. Click **Update**.
10. Click **Audible Feedback Setup** tab.
11. Enable the **Sounds Enabled** checkbox.
12. Select the **Sound When Pressed** radio button.
13. In the "Tone Setting" box, set the frequency to 800Hz.
14. Click **OK**.
15. Close all open windows.

Fujitsu D22_D25 TeamKey 32-Key Mapping Utility

Note: <u>The following steps are only required if the workstation is running a Fujitsu Touch with D22_D25 TeamKey (32-key) keyboard.</u>

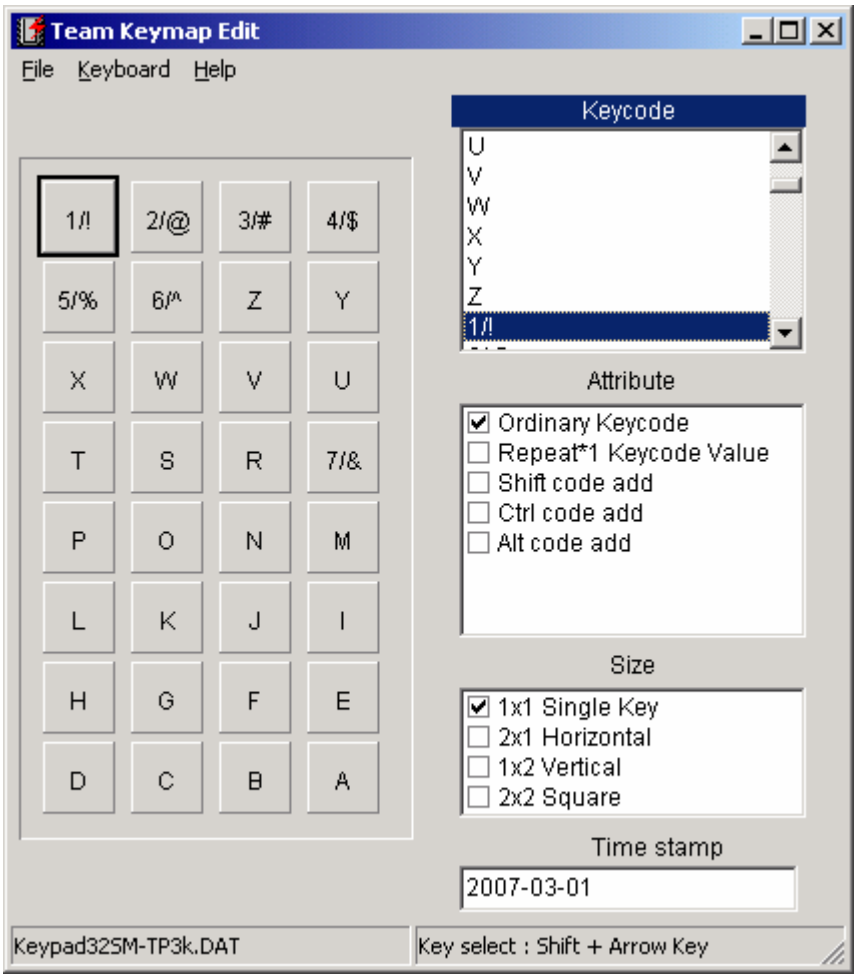
1. Login to the workstation as the Administrator.
2. Using Windows Explorer, browse to the **C:\Drivers\TeamPoS 3000_Software_Support\Drivers\Keyboards\D22 and D25 Keypad_MSR\KB ReMapper**.
3. Double-click **KeyEdit.exe.**

   The "Team Keymap Edit" displays.

4. From the toolbar, select **File** followed by **Open**.

5. The file "Keypad32SM-TP3k.DAT" should show in the window. If not, browse (using "Look in:" at the top) to the **C:\Drivers\TeamPoS 3000_Software_Support\Drivers\Keyboards\D22 and D25 Keypad_MSR\KB ReMapper** folder of the PoS Workstation and click the **KEYPAD32SM-TP3k.DAT** file.
6. Click **Open**.

   The keymap screen displays.



7. From the toolbar, click **Keyboard** followed by **Keymap Change**.
8. Keymap change is started. Is it OK? displays. Click **YES**.
9. Keymap change ended normally. Displays. Click **OK**
10. Close the open window.
11. Contents of editing are lost. Is it OK? displays. Click **YES**
12. Close all open windows.

Fujitsu TeamKey 32-Key Mapping Utility

Note: The following steps are only required if the workstation is running a Fujitsu Touch with TeamKey (32-key) keyboard.

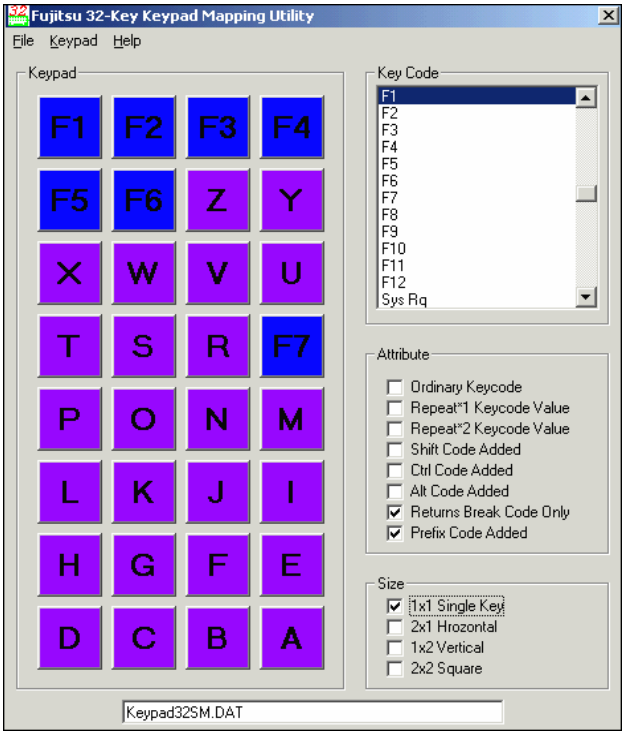
1. Login to the workstation as the Administrator.
2. Using Windows Explorer, browse to the DRIVERS\32KEYMAP folder on the workstation.
3. Double-click **SETUP.EXE.**

   The mapping utility setup screen displays.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click the large install button.
6. Click **Continue**.

   Note: If any file version conflict messages appear, click **YES** to keep the file.
7. Click **OK** when finished installing.
8. From the Task Bar, click **Start→Programs→Fujitsu 32-key Keypad Mapping Utility→ Fujitsu 32-key Keypad Mapping Utility.**

   The Fujitsu 32-Key Keypad Mapping Utility screen appears.
9. From the toolbar, select **File** followed by **Open**.
10. Browse to the **C:\DRIVERS\32KEYMAP** folder of the C:\ of the PoS Workstation and click the **KEYPAD32SM.DAT** file.
11. Click **Open**.

    The colored key mapping screen displays.



12. From the toolbar, click **Keypad** followed by **Flash Keymap to Memory**.
13. An "Are you ready…" window displays, click **YES**.
14. A "Flashing Keypad memory completed" window displays, click **OK**.
15. When finished, close the Fujitsu 32-Key Keypad Mapping Utility window.
16. A "Scratch current work area without saving modifications" window displays, click **Yes**.
17. Close all open windows.

Disabling Windows Messenger

Note: Before attempting to disable Windows Messenger, close all open windows.

1. Double-click the Windows Messenger icon in the system tray, to the left of the time.

   The Windows Messenger window appears.

2. On the Windows Messenger menu bar, select **Tools**, and the select **Options** from the pop-up menu.

   The Options window appears.

3. Click the **Preferences** tab.
4. Deselect the "Run this program when Windows starts" checkbox, and then click **OK**.
5. Close the Windows Messenger window.
6. Click the Windows Messenger icon in the system tray, to the left of the time.

7. Select **Exit** from the pop-up menu.
8. Click **OK**.

ScanMaster 2.07.00

Full Installation ScanMaster 2.07.00 on the PoS Workstation

NOTE: If the POS is connected to a Vista Server and/or Vista Backoffice and is running Pervasive v9.5 you MUST follow the instructions under "**PERVASIVE v9.5 PATCH INSTRUCTIONS WHEN RUNNING VISTA BUSINESS.**"

Follow this procedure for all ScanMaster PoS Workstations. This section assumes that the prerequisite software has been installed and the ScanMaster server's shared drive has been mapped as drive F: on the PoS Workstation.

1. At the PoS Workstation, press the Start key on the keyboard.
2. Press **<R>** for Run.
3. Type the following path: **F:\WinReg\Install\Setup.exe**.
4. Press **Enter** for **OK** to run the setup executable.

   Note: If the appropriate version of .NET and MSI is not currently installed system will prompt that it is installing these components. Follow screen instructions and accept defaults.

   The Installation Wizard Welcome window displays.
5. Press **Enter** for **Next** to continue.

   The Setup Type window displays.
6. Select **New Installation** and press **Enter** for **Next** to continue.

   The Register Number window displays.
7. Enter the register number and Press **Enter** for **Next**.
8. If installing to an NCR terminal, the question "Does this POS have a DVI DynaKey Attached?" appears. Select appropriate response and press **Enter** for **Next** to continue.

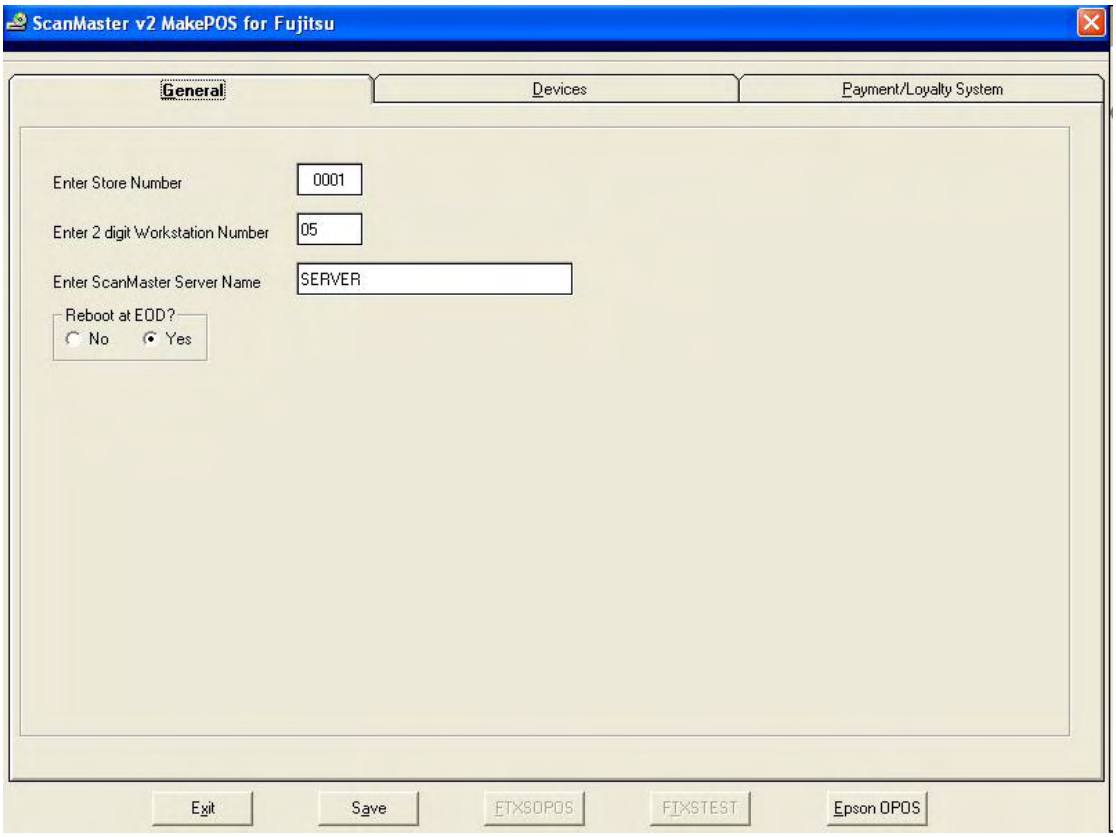
   The Start Copying Files window displays.
9. Review the information to ensure that it matches your configuration and Press **Enter** for **Next.**

   After the files are copied, the ScanMaster MakePOS window appears with a warning about COM Port settings.

Note: Make sure you do not use the same COM Port below for different devices. In addition, some of the field availability is dependent on other settings on the screen.

10. Press **Enter** for **OK** to clear the message.

    Note: After each of the following steps (11 through 44), move to the next field and step by using the Tab or Enter keys. Move to the next "tab" by clicking on the appropriate tab with a mouse, or selecting the tab by holding down the ALT key and the appropriate hotkey for the tab.

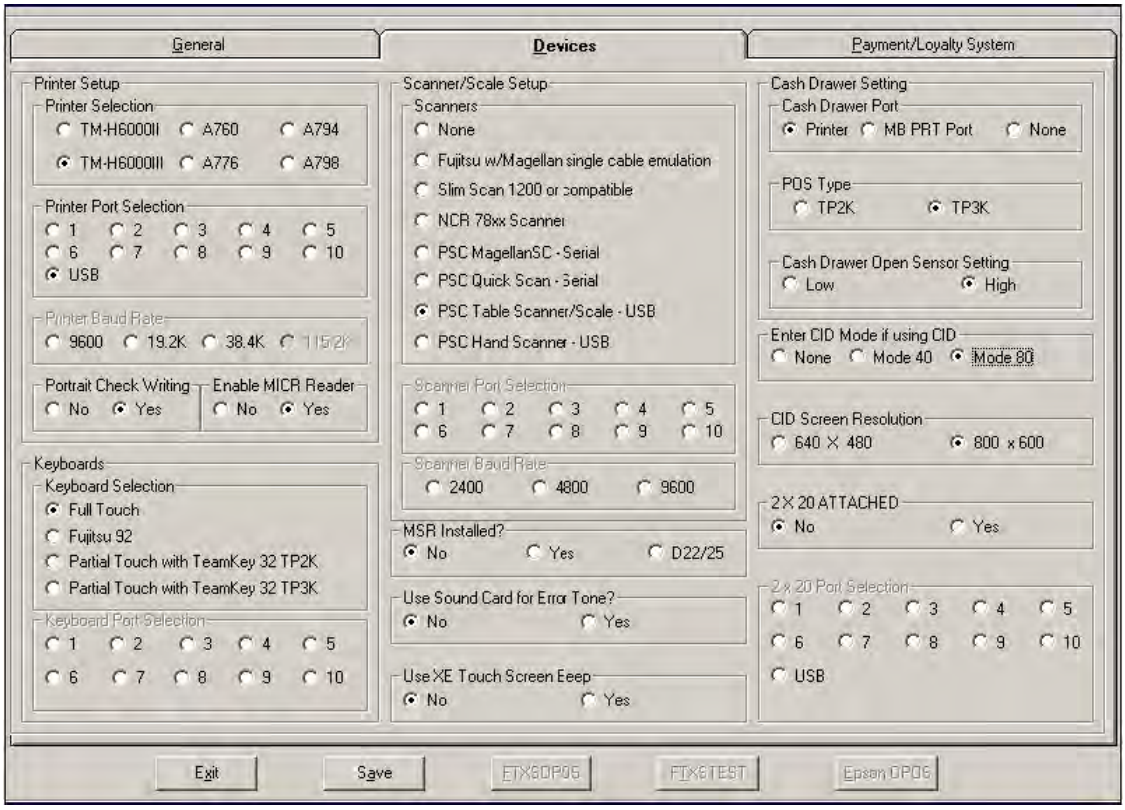


11. Enter the Store Number.
12. Enter the 2-digit Workstation Number.
13. Enter the ScanMaster Server Name or accept the default.

Note: Select a specific Radio-button option without a mouse by using the up/down or left/right arrow keys. Once a selection is made, use the TAB button to move to the next step, or set of options.

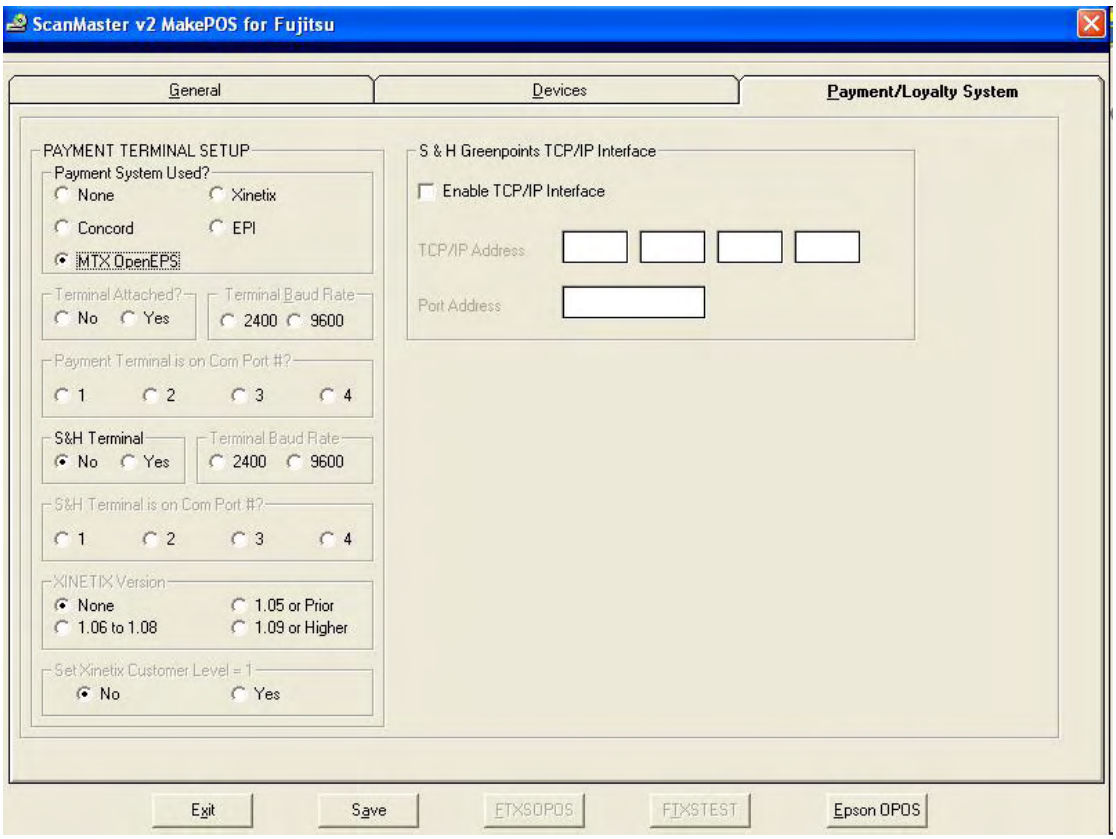
If installing to NCR hardware refer to Appendix D for steps.

14. Select whether to reboot the workstation after end-of-day processing. Change the selection by using the arrow keys, or selecting with the mouse.
15. Change to the "Devices" tab by holding down the ALT key and tapping the "D" key, or selecting with the mouse.



16. Select the workstation's printer type.
17. Select the printer's COM Port.
18. Select the printer's Baud Rate.
19. Select whether Portrait Check Writing is being used.
20. Select whether to enable MICR (Magnetic Ink Character Recognition) on the printer.
21. Select the workstation's keyboard type.
22. If 92M or Partial touch with TeamKey is selected, then select if the Keyboard MSR is installed.
23. If 92M keyboard is selected, then select the keyboard's COM Port.
24. Select the type of Scanner/Scale being used.
25. If a scanner/scale other than "None" is selected then select the Scanner/Scale's COM Port.
26. If a scanner/scale other than "None" is selected then select the Scanner/Scale's Baud Rate.
27. Select the cash drawer open sensor setting for normally low or high. (OPOS printers typically use **LOW** setting.
28. Select whether the workstation's sound card will be used for error tones.
29. Select the Customer Information Display (CID) mode being used (Mode 40 = 40 Columns, Mode 80 = 80 Columns).

30. Select the CID Screen Resolution.
31. Select whether a 2x20 Customer Display is attached.
32. If 2x20 is attached, select the COM Port it is attached to.
33. Change to the "Payment System" tab by holding down the ALT key and tapping the "P" key, or selecting with the mouse.



34. Select the workstation's payment system.

    If "None" is selected skip to step 38.
35. Select whether the payment terminal is attached.
36. Select the baud rate of the payment terminal.
37. Select the COM Port of the payment terminal.
38. Select whether an S&H Greenpoints System is attached.

    If "S&H Terminal is set to "No" skip to step 43.
39. Select the Baud Rate for the S&H terminal.
40. Select the COM Port of the S&H terminal.
41. If XINETIX is used, select the version being used.
42. If XINETIX is used, select whether or not to set the Customer Level to 1.
43. If S&H Greenpoints TCP/IP Interface is attached **CLICK** on the box to Enable TCP\IP Interface.

- Enter the TCP\IP address to connect to the S&H GreenPoints server.
- Enter Port Address for the S&H GreenPoints server connection.

44. When finished, click **Save** (or press **<ALT><A>**).

    The PoS workstation reboots.

45. If installing a Fujitsu register with full touch, after rebooting the system will prompt "Is the Touch Screen a D15". Press **Y** to accept Yes, or press **N** to select No.

    If this prompt does not appear, or if No is selected the installation is complete.

Setup 3M TouchWare driver to work with ScanMaster PoS

46. The TouchWare Properties window displays.

    Note: If at any time the Point of Sale appears before the TouchWare setup is completed, use "Alt-Tab" to return the "TouchWare Properties" screen to the foreground.

47. Press Alt-C to activate the **Calibrate** button.
48. Touch and hold the touch point displayed on the bottom left of the screen until it says "Touch Enable". Repeat on the touch point on the top right.
49. Wait for the "Calibration Complete" screen to appear, and then drag your finger around the screen and insure that the cursor follows properly. If correct click or touch the **DONE** button. To correct the calibration, click the **Calibrate** button and repeat the last two steps.
50. Touch the **Touch Settings** tab.
51. Touch the **Drawing** button in the Touch Mode section at the top of the screen.
52. Touch the **Beep** button in the Touch Sound section in the middle right of the screen, and the text below the button should change to "System Beep on touchdown"
53. Touch the **Tools** tab.
54. Touch the **Options** button.
55. Change the slider control for Frequency to approximately 800 Hz (right and left arrow keys are more accurate than using the mouse).
56. Change the slider control for Duration to 100 ms.
57. Touch **Close**.
58. Touch **Close**.

THIS CONCLUDES THE POS WORKSTATION INSTALLATION SECTION. REPEAT THE ENTIRE SERIES OF STEPS FOR EACH POS WORKSTATION!!

Upgrading ScanMaster 2.07.00 on the PoS Workstations

NOTE: If the POS is connected to a Vista Server and/or Vista Backoffice and is running Pervasive v9.5 you MUST follow the instructions under "**PERVASIVE v9.5 PATCH INSTRUCTIONS WHEN RUNNING VISTA BUSINESS.**"

Follow this procedure for all ScanMaster PoS Workstations.

1. Exit from the PoS software.
2. At the PoS Workstation, press the Start key on the keyboard.
3. Press <R> for Run.
4. Type the following path: **F:\WinReg\Install\Setup.exe**.
5. Press **Enter** for **OK** to run the setup executable.

   Note: If the appropriate version of .NET and MSI is not currently installed system will prompt that it is installing these components. Follow screen instructions and accept defaults.

   The Installation Wizard Welcome window displays.
6. Press **Enter** for **Next** to continue.

   The Setup Type window displays.
7. Confirm the appropriate setup type for your upgrade. Use the arrow keys to change the highlighted choice.
8. Press **Enter** for **Next** to accept.
9. If installing to an NCR terminal, the question "Does this POS have a DVI DynaKey Attached?" appears. Select appropriate response and press **Enter** for **Next** to continue.

   The Start Copying Files window displays.
10. Review the information to ensure that it matches your configuration and press **Enter** for **Next.**

    After the files are copied, the "Question" window displays asking whether hardware has changed.
11. Select appropriate response to hardware change question. Press **Y** for "Yes", or **N** for "No". If "Yes" is selected, complete steps (11 through 44) in the Workstation Installation section above.

    If this is the first register to be upgraded, the ScanMaster v2.07.00 Register File Conversion Utility appears, with a message box stating that it is recommended that all Server and B/O workstation applications including the EJ processor are closed during the conversion.

    If this is not the first register to be upgraded, skip to step 16.

12. After shutting down ScanMaster on all back office machines, including the EJ processor, press **Enter** to accept Ok.

If this is an upgrade from a version v2.01.00 or greater, skip to step 16.

The conversion utility will read each of the files necessary to convert, and display the number of records currently in the files.

13. Press Alt-P to activate the **Process** button
14. After the conversion is complete, press **Alt-X** to activate the **Exit** button
15. After reviewing the Register Conversion log, close it by pressing **Alt-F4**.
16. The installation is now complete.

    The PoS workstation reboots.

Note: Once rebooted, the PoS Workstation comes up in "Offline Mode". You may now move a cashier to this lane and move to another PoS Workstation to upgrade.

THIS CONCLUDES THE POS WORKSTATION UPGRADE SECTION. REPEAT THE ENTIRE SERIES OF STEPS FOR EACH POS WORKSTATION!!

Note: After all PoS Workstations have been upgraded, install Pervasive Server Engine on the ScanMaster server, and begin the ScanMaster Server upgrade.

Uninstalling ScanMaster on the Server and Back Office Workstations

To completely uninstall ScanMaster, manual operations are required both before and after using the Windows' Add or Remove Programs function. The following details the steps required to totally uninstall ScanMaster from a system.

1. If the EJ Processor or ESL Monitor is running on the Server or Back Office computers double click the application icon on the taskbar and click on the appropriate button to stop the tray application(s).
2. If the Connected Services StartASP application is in the taskbar, use the Windows Task Manager to End Task on the StartASP.
3. Remove ScanMaster created users: On each PC run
   <Def Drive>:\Grocery\Makeuser /REMOVE.
4. Remove Hasp and ESL Services - v1.3.x thru v2.00.xx - On the Server PC run:
   <Def Drive>:\Grocery\Smwsssvc -u
   <Def Drive>:\Grocery\Smwelsvc -u

   ScanMaster v2.01.02 and above - On the Server PC run:
   <Def Drive>:\Grocery\Sm2sssvc -u
   <Def Drive>:\Grocery\Sm2elsvc -u

   If the Crypkey service is still running on the Server, run:
   <Def Drive>:\Grocery\setupex -u
   (Do not reboot until the entire uninstall is completed).

5. If ScanMaster FM is installed, run one of the following from
   <Def Drive>:\Grocery on the PC with the FM service installed (depending on whether this is a [V1] or [V2] installation).

   Telxon
   [V1] FMTelxon.exe -u
   [V2] Sm2fmtel.exe -u

   Norand
   [V1] FMNorand.exe -u
   [V2] Sm2fmnor.exe -u

   Symbol
   [V1] FMAnsi.exe -u
   [V2] Sm2fmans.exe -u

6. Under **Start → Settings → Control Panel →** A**dd or Remove Programs**, select each ScanMaster entry (**ScanMaster ASP**, **ScanMaster Register Installation Package**, **ScanMasterFM**(V1) or **RetalixMobilFM**(V2), **ScanMaster**, etc.) and select **Remove**. Remove the main "ScanMaster" entry last. Entries that have "Register Install for v1.xx.xx" will not uninstall the register installation on the <LAN Drive>. These installation files will be removed in step 9. If you wish to remove these entries from the Add/Remove screen, use REGEDIT and look for these entries under HKLM\Software\Microsoft\Windows\Current Version\Uninstall. Open the folders with the long GUID numbers until you find the Register install entries listed on the Add/Remove screen and delete these keys. **Always use caution when editing/deleting registry entries!**
7. On ScanMaster V2 installs (v2.01.00 and higher) - Select to remove the Pervasive installs (Pervasive System Analyzer first, then Pervasive SQL).
8. If this is a typical install, disconnect the mapped F: drive. If a custom install, then delete the SCAN1DOS share on the physical drive. **When uninstalling a BackOffice PC, only delete folders local to that PC.**
9. If only uninstalling or removing a Back Office Workstation, manually remove the machine name from <LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Boff.tbl.
10. Using Windows Explorer, manually delete all of the ScanMaster created folders. Depending on whether it is a V1 or V2 install and system usage, some of the folders listed below may not be present:

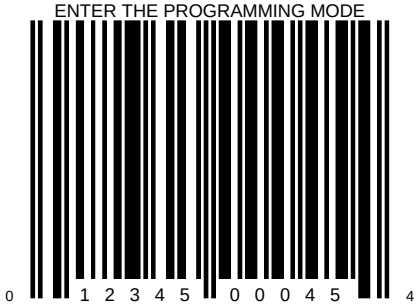
    Btrieve
    CID
    Docs
    Grocery
    History
    Journal
    Regfiles
    Scan1Dos (If typical installation)
    Till
    Update
11. If this is a custom install, delete the same folders on the <LAN Drive>.
12. Delete any Patch install folders as well as the WinReg and/or Reginstl folders if present.

Appendix A - Configuring Fujitsu Scanner/Scales

Configuring the Fujitsu Symphony 9900 Scanner/Scale

1. Scan the **Enter Programming Mode** tag.

ENTER THE PROGRAMMING MODE

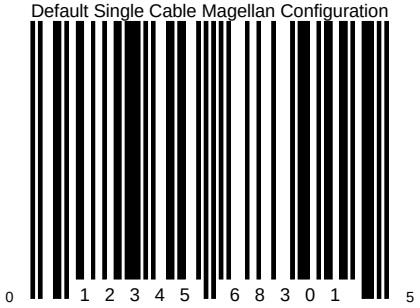


2. Scan the **Restore All Defaults** tag

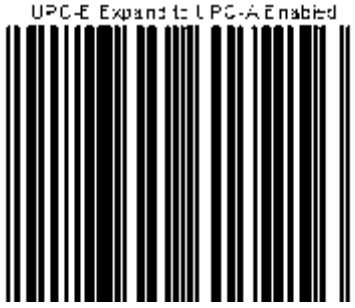
Restore All Defaults

3. Scan the **Default Cable Magellan Configuration** Tag.

Default Single Cable Magellan Configuration



4. Scan the **UPC-E Expanded To UPC-A Enabled** Tag.



5. Scan the **Weight Data Received Good Beep Enabled** Tag.

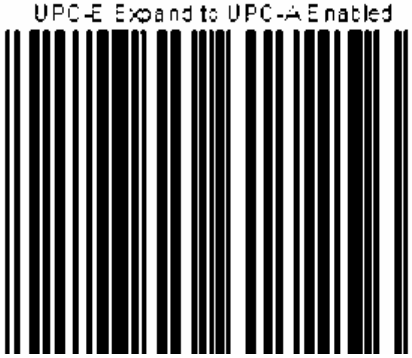
6. Scan the **Exit Save and Reset** Tag

Configuring the Fujitsu SlimScan 1200 Scanner

1. Scan the **Enter Programming Mode** tag.

2. Scan the **Restore All Defaults** tag

3. Scan the **UPC E Expanded To UPCA Enabled** Tag.



4. Scan the **Exit Save and Reset** Tag

Note:

Note: All NCR Scanner/Scales must be programmed for Magellan Single-Cable Emulation.

Appendix B - Building the ScanMaster database manually in Pervasive SQL (v10.x)

This process is done as part of the normal installation of ScanMaster 2.07.00, and is necessary only if the SQL Database connection is incorrect, or otherwise needs to be redone.

1. From the Task Bar, click Start→Programs→Pervasive PSQL10→Control Center & Documentation.

   The Pervasive Control Center will display.

2. Click the **"+"** next to PervasivePSQL
3. Click the **"+"** next to SERVER.
4. Click the **"+"** next to Databases.
5. If ScanMaster database name does not display, right click on Databases and select "New" then select "Database."

   The Create Database Wizard begins and the Specify Database Information screen displays.

6. In the Database Name field, type **ScanMaster.**
7. In the Directory field type **C:\Scan1Dos\Grocery\Files**, or select this directory using the browse button.
8. Uncheck ALL options under "Database Options" and make sure "Create Engine DSN" option is checked under "DSN Options."
9. Click Finish.

Appendix C - Disk Mirroring

The Disk Mirroring option uses a back-up hard drive in the event the primary hard drive fails. This backup security measure is ***highly recommended*** to minimize downtime in the event of a hard drive failure. An additional hard drive that is at least the size of the primary disk being mirrored must first be installed in the file server. Follow the hard drive manufacturer's installation instructions.

Disk mirroring is recommended for the ScanMaster Server only.

Warning: For SCSI drives, be sure that jumpers are set to uniquely identify each SCSI device, i.e.: Device #3, Device #4. The first bootable device is always device #0. The controller card is always device #7. For IDE drives sharing the same controller cable, be very careful to set up the original primary hard disk as the "Master" drive in an IDE "Master-Slave" relationship. The second hard drive is known as the "Slave drive".

Warning: Failure to properly define these relationships can lead to drive failure. Check the hard drive manufacturer instructions. If the manuals are not readily accessible, these settings are often available in the Support or Technical Specifications areas of the manufacturer's web site.

Setting Up Disk Mirroring in Windows NT

Follow the steps below to set up Disk Mirroring on the system:

1. From the Windows NT Server Task Bar, click on Start → Programs → Administrative Tools → Disk Administrator to display the Disk Administrator dialog box.
2. Click on the partition to mirror. A border surrounds the selection.

Note: Drive #0 and Drive #1 hard drives display. Partitions display on the primary hard drive, while the secondary hard drive displays as empty space. If drive #1 doesn't display free space, delete the partition. You can not mirror a drive until drive #1 is all free space.

Warning: Deletion of a partition erases all data in the partition area. Be sure to have a backup of any data you want to save that might be stored in the partition area to be deleted.

3. Hold down the **CTRL** Key and click on the empty space of the secondary hard drive to highlight the border around the target partition.
4. From the Disk Administrator menu bar, **click Fault Tolerance → Establish Mirror.**

   After a series of prompts, the server restarts
5. Login as Administrator.

Setting Up Disk Mirroring in Windows 2000

1. Start → Programs → Administrative Tools → Computer Management.
2. Right-click on the unallocated space on one of the disks where you want to create the mirrored volume and select **Create Volume** from the pop-up menu.

   The Create Volume wizard displays.
3. Follow the instructions and prompts that display in the windows.
4. Click **Finish** when you have completed mirroring the disks.

If the Primary Hard Drive Fails

Follow the steps below if the primary hard drive fails. A message box displays indicating one of the hard disks has failed.

1. Click **OK**.
2. Check the event viewer (system log) for more info about which drive had failed.
3. From the NT Server Task Bar, click on **Start → Programs → Administrative Tools → Disk Administrator** to display the Disk Administrator dialog box.

   From the Windows 2000 or XP task bar, click **on Start → Programs → Administrative Tools → Computer Management**. Select **Disk Management** from the Tree.
4. Identify the hard drive that has failed. If it is the primary hard drive, shut down and power off the system.
5. Remove the outer cabinet of the File Server and remove the damaged primary hard drive.
6. Change the secondary hard drive (the mirror drive) to the primary drive.
7. Install a replacement mirror drive for the secondary drive.

Warning: For SCSI drives, be sure the new drive is uniquely identified with its own device number. For IDE drives sharing the same controller cable, be sure to properly re-set the Jumper pin settings on each hard drive unit to define the proper "Master-Slave" relationship. Set up the primary drive as "Master" and the secondary drive as "Slave".

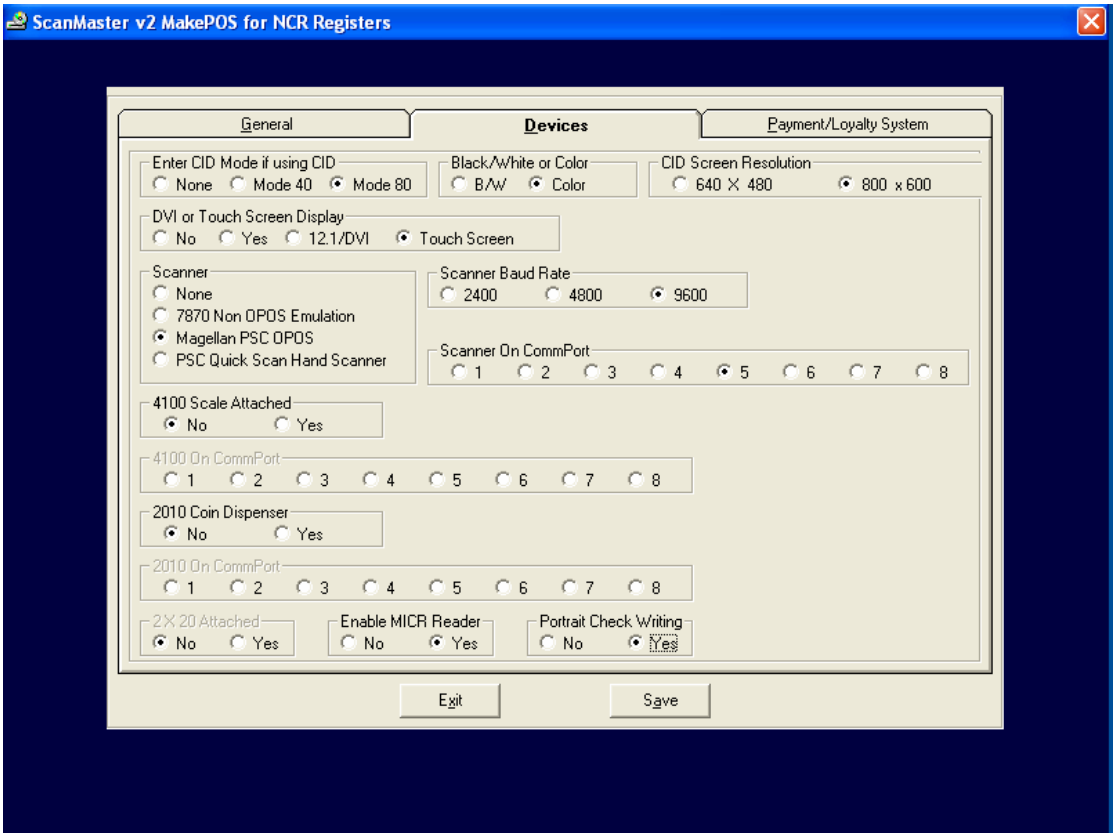
8. In Windows NT, assign drive letters using **Disk Administrator → Tools → Assign Drive Letter**. Do not assign a drive letter for a mirrored drive.

   In Windows 2000, assign drive letters **using Computer Management → Disk Management**. Right-click on the primary drive and select **Change Drive Letter and Path…** Do not assign a drive letter to the mirrored drive.
9. Perform the Setting Up Mirror Drive procedure documented earlier in this section.

Appendix D - Configuring NCR Hardware using MakePOS

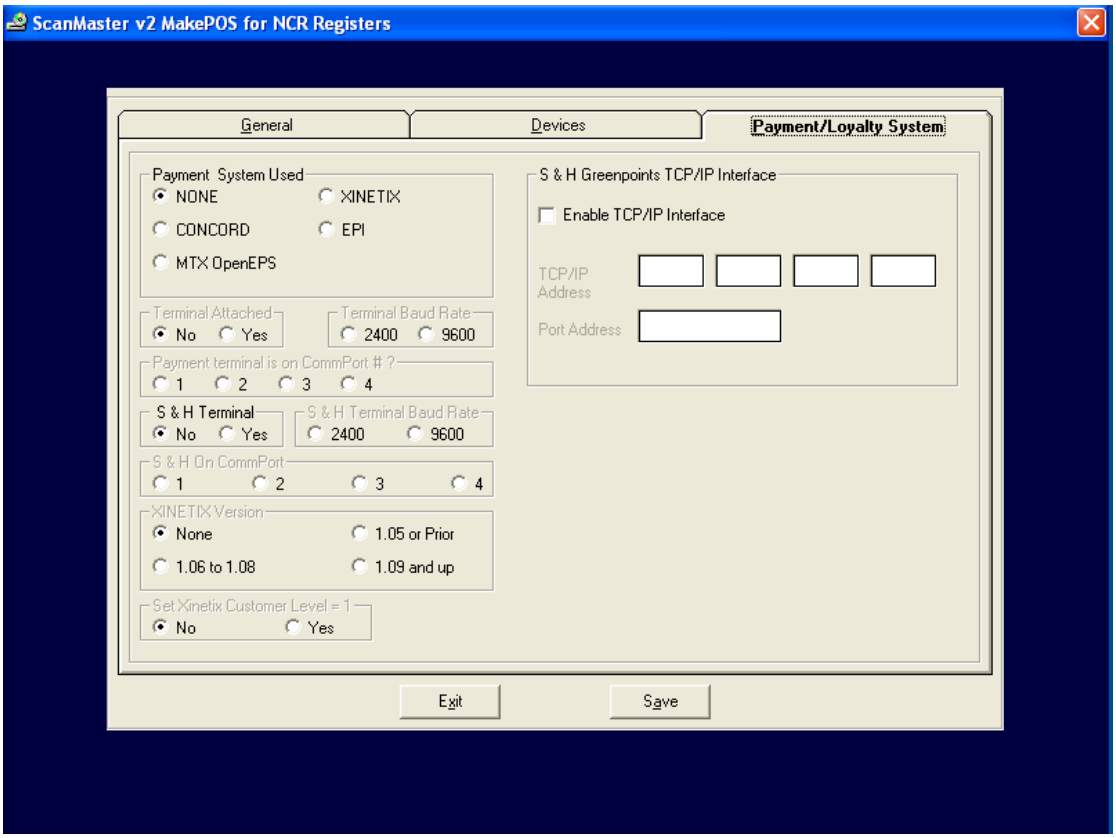
This process is used when installing with NCR hardware.

1. Change to the "Devices" tab by holding down the ALT key and tapping the "D" key, or selecting with the mouse.



2. Select the CID mode.
3. Select whether the operator display is Black/White or Color.
4. If the CID mode was set other than none select the CID Screen Resolution.
5. Under Operator Display Select Yes if using a Dynakey (other than 12.1/DVI).
6. If using a 12.1/DVI Dynakey Select that option
7. If using a TouchScreen select that option.
8. Select the Scanner Type. If "None" is selected skip to step 11.
9. Select the baud rate for the scanner.
10. Select the COM Port to which the scanner is connected.
11. Select whether or not the 4100 scale is being used.
12. If 4100 is selected, then select the scale's COM Port.
13. Select whether or not the 2010 Coin Dispenser is being used.
14. If 2010 is selected, then select the dispenser's COM Port.

15. If CID mode is set to "None" then select whether a 2x20 Customer Display is attached.
16. Select whether to enable MICR (Magnetic Ink Character Recognition) on the printer.
17. Select whether Portrait Check Writing is being used.
18. Change to the "Payment System" tab by holding down the ALT key and tapping the "P" key, or selecting with the mouse.



19. Select the workstation's payment system.

    If "None" is selected skip to step 23.
20. Select whether the payment terminal is attached.
21. Select the baud rate of the payment terminal.
22. Select the COM Port of the payment terminal.
23. Select whether an S&H Greenpoints System is attached.

    If "S&H Terminal is set to "No" skip to step 28.
24. Select the Baud Rate for the S&H terminal.
25. Select the COM Port of the S&H terminal.
26. If XINETIX is used, select the version being used.
27. If XINETIX is used, select whether or not to set the Customer Level to 1.

28. If S&H Greenpoints TCP/IP Interface is attached CLICK on the box to Enable TCP\IP Interface

- Enter the TCP\IP address to connect to the S&H GreenPoints server.
- Enter Port Address for the S&H GreenPoints server connection.

29. When finished, Click Save (or press <ALT><A>).

    A message box displays saying "Are you sure you want to add the information … to the registry?"

30. Press Enter for Yes.

    A message box displays confirming that the information has been successfully entered into the registry.

31. Press **Enter** for OK.

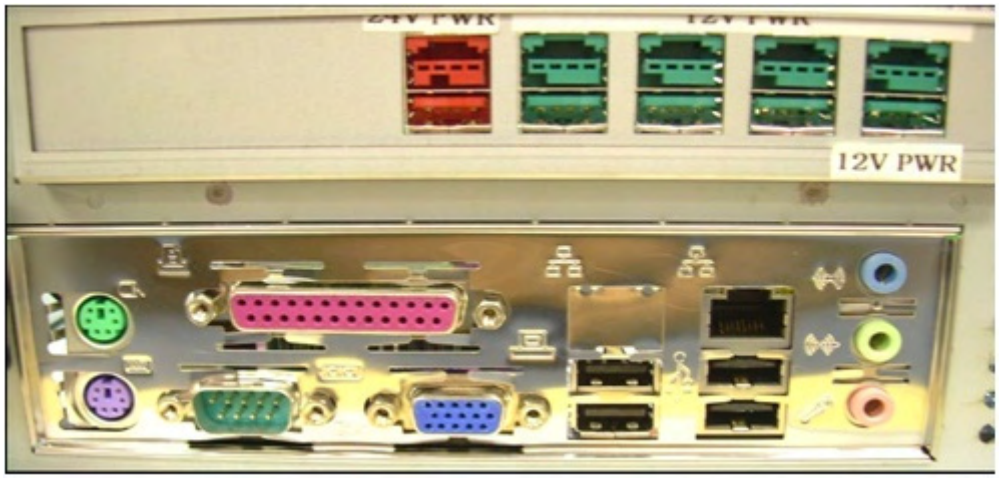
    The POS workstation reboots.

Appendix E - TeamPOS 3000 XE Hardware Configuration

The TeamPOS 3000 XE "USB" version supports primarily P-USB peripherals and has:

- 1 x VGA port – for the primary display.
- 1 x 24v P-USB 2.0 – for a powered USB printer.
- 4 x 12v P-USB 2.0 – for touch screens, TeamKey, magnetic stripe readers, remote VFD shopper displays, 92U keyboards, Hypercom payment terminals and so forth.
- 4 x non-powered USB 2.0 — (2 on the back panel, two on the front) PSC/Datalogic scanner/scales.
- 1 x COM port - not powered, for an RS-232 peripheral.
- 1 x Ethernet port – J45 for TCP/IP network connection.
- Additional Ports: 1 x parallel port, 1 x PS/2 Keyboard, 1 x PS/2 Mouse, 3 x Audio (line in, line out, mic in).
- Optional Digital Video Interface Card: provides interface to DVI monitor or touch screen (use separate power supply for the second monitor — the TeamPOS 3000 XE can power one D22/D25 display).

Note: There is no RS-232/COM port available that supports the serial 92R or 92M keyboards or earlier Fujitsu VF 2x20 displays. P-USB 92U or VF60U must be used.



Chapter 3: Customizing Your System

Customizing Your System

After loading the ScanMaster software, log on to a ScanMaster Back Office Workstation or the ScanMaster Server to configure the system to suit the store's business needs.

This chapter outlines the steps for customizing the ScanMaster system.

Note: It is highly recommended that a business interview be conducted first to discuss the possibilities and to establish the desired business practices. Use the ***Personalization Survey & Setup Guide*** from the ***ScanMaster User Guide – Appendix A*** to survey all of the possible choices and record the store's choices.

ScanMaster Back Office Workstation Configuration

The following steps, in this order, are required for basic configuration.

1. Set Date and Time
2. Configuring ScanMaster Security
3. Log on to the ScanMaster Back Office Workstation.
4. Enter Employees into the database.
5. Set up Departments and Subdepartments.
6. Set up Customer Maintenance options, if needed.
7. Set up the Item File.
8. Set up the Customer File.
9. Set up the Tax table.
10. Set up Security.
11. Define Receipts
12. Define the SRR Editor
13. Configure the ScanMaster Back Office Workstation and POS Workstation (Register) Control Files.
14. Configure Media.
15. Configure Keyboards

Additional Recommended Setup:

Set up:
- Tare Tables
- Mix N Match
- Flip Chart Maintenance (DynaKey installations)
- Bottle Links
- Report Codes

Define the customer file:
- Negative Check
- Frequent Shopper Matrix
- In-store Charges

Personalize the system.

Note: See the *ScanMaster User Guide – Chapter 8* for instructions on how to set up these features.

Setting Date and Time

Follow this procedure to set the date and time.

From the Back Office Workstation or ScanMaster Server NT Task Bar, click **Start→Settings→Control Panel→Date/Time**.

Double-click on the **Date/Time** icon to access the Date and Time dialog box.

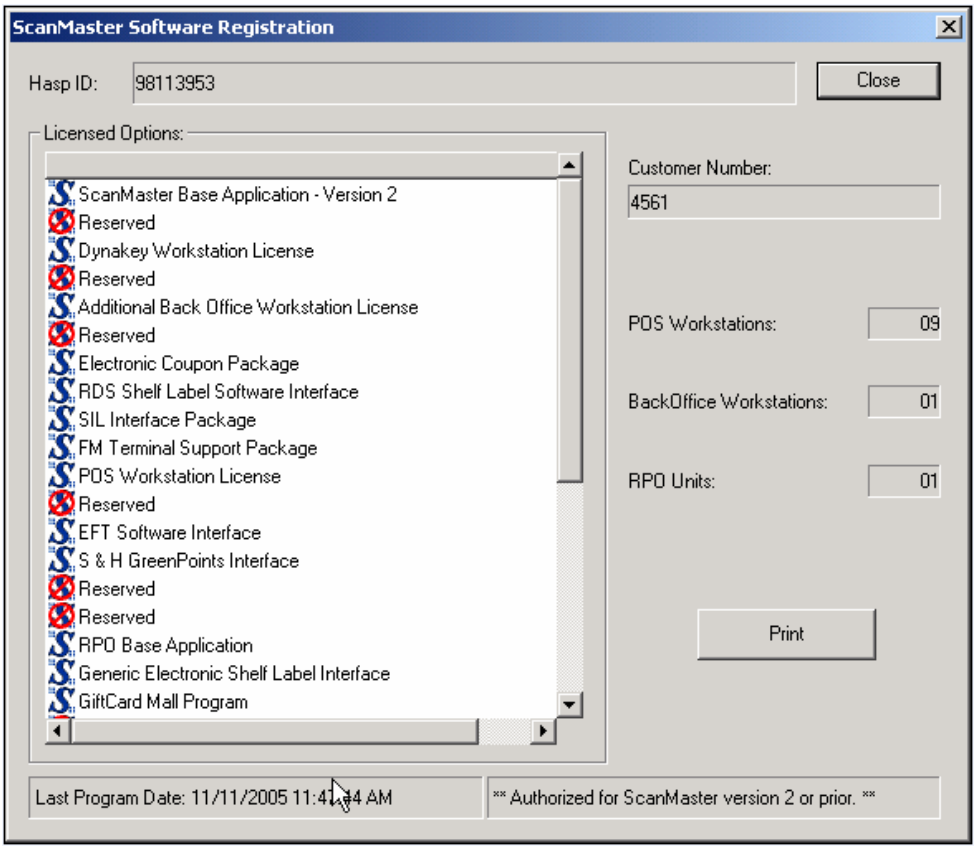
The Time Zone option box was pre-set at installation. Do Not Change this setting.
Enter the preferred date and time. Click **OK** to accept the changes.

Note: Windows anticipates seasonal time changes such as Daylight Savings Time and handles the change automatically as it occurs.

ScanMaster Software Registration

The ScanMaster base application and its available options are enabled through the HASP plug attached to the USB port of the back office workstation. The ScanMaster Software Registration program (SM2SSDSP.exe located in the Grocery directory) displays the store's licensed options, in addition to the:

- Customer Number
- Number of enabled POS Workstations
- Number of enabled Back Office Workstations
- Number of enabled Retalix Pocket Office (RPO) units



Note: Use the **Print** button to send the security report to the printer.

Logging on to the ScanMaster Back Office Workstation

1. Enter your 3-digit employee number at the Login Screen.
2. Enter your password.

*The **ScanMaster Main Menu** now displays.*

You are now ready to build your Employee File by entering all employees into the database.

Note: After setting up departments (below) please assign a default electronic coupon department number within the Back Office Settings to avoid receiving the "Invalid Default Electronic Coupon Department" error message each time you log in.

Entering Employees into the Database

Create the employee file first. Establishing employee numbers and passwords enable employees to log into ScanMaster.

1. From the ScanMaster Main Menu, select **Employee Maintenance** to display the **Employee Menu**.
2. Select **Employee Maintenance** on the Employee Menu.

   *The **Employee Maintenance** Screen displays with a form to complete for each employee, including yourself.*

For detailed instructions on entering employees into the Employee File, see ***Chapter 2, "Maintaining Employee Data,"*** in the ***ScanMaster User Guide.***

Setting Up Departments and Subdepartments

After completing the Employee File, set up departments. You can also create subdepartments under each department.

To enter departments into the database:

1. From the ScanMaster Main Menu, select **Department/Subdept Maintenance** to display the **Group/Department/Subdepartment Menu**.
2. Select **Department Maintenance**. The **Department Maintenance** screen displays with a form to complete for each department. Up to 99 departments can be created.

For detailed instructions on setting up departments, see ***Chapter 3, "Performing Department/Subdepartment Maintenance,"*** in the ***ScanMaster User Guide.***

To enter subdepartments into the database:

1. From the ScanMaster Main Menu, select **Department/Subdept Maintenance** to display the **Group/Department/Subdepartment Menu**.
2. Select **Subdepartment Maintenance** then press **Enter**.

   The Subdepartment Maintenance Screen displays with a form to complete for each subdepartment. Up to 999 subdepartments can be created.

For detailed instructions on setting up subdepartments, see ***Chapter 3, "Performing Department/Subdepartment Maintenance,"*** in the ***ScanMaster User Guide.***

Setting up Customer Maintenance Options

Before creating the Customer File, it is recommended that you select the Customer Maintenance Menu to enter information concerning customers with negative check and charge ratings. It is also suggested that you build the table of reason codes pertaining to the Negative Check File.

To access Customer Maintenance options:

1. From the ScanMaster Main Menu, select **Customer Maintenance** to display the **Customer Maintenance Menu**.
2. Select **Negative Check File Maintenance** or **Check/Charge Reason Code Maintenance** then press **Enter**.

The ScanMaster Negative Check Maintenance or the Customer Reason Maintenance screen displays.

For detailed instructions on completing the Negative Check Maintenance or the Customer Reason Maintenance Screen, see ***Chapter 5, "Maintaining Customer Data,"*** in the ***ScanMaster User Guide***.

Setting up the Item File

Set up the Item File to incorporate the PLU code of each item into the database. If batches have been created at the Host level, you could incorporate these into the system, thus saving the time of manual entry. Create local batches for those items that have not been previously entered.

To access the Item File:

1. From the ScanMaster Main Menu, select **Item Maintenance** to display the **Item File Menu**.
2. Select **Direct Item Maintenance** to manually key item information.

For more information about the Item Maintenance Menu, see ***Chapter 4, "Performing Immediate and Batch Item Maintenance,"*** in the ***ScanMaster User Guide.***

Setting up the Customer File

Create the Customer File. This file provides information about customers who have accounts with your store.

To create the Customer File:

1. From the ScanMaster Main Menu, select **Customer File Maintenance** to display the **Customer Maintenance Menu**.
2. Select **Customer File Maintenance** to display the **Customer Maintenance** screen.

For detailed instructions on about Customer Maintenance, see ***Chapter 5, "Maintaining Customer Data,"*** in the ***ScanMaster User Guide***.

Setting up the Tax Table

Create the Tax Table. This file provides information about 3 levels of Tax, descriptions, and various tax break points and exceptions.

To create the Tax Table:

1. From the ScanMaster Main Menu, select **System Personalization** to display the **Personalization Menu**.
2. Select **Tax Table Maintenance** to display the **Tax Table Maintenance** screen.

For detailed instructions on about Tax Table Maintenance, see ***Tax Table Maintenance*** in ***Chapter 8, "Personalizing Workstations"*** in the ***ScanMaster User Guide***.

Setting up Security

Establish the employee security settings. Security settings enable various privileges by employee to perform different ScanMaster functions.

To set Security for Employees:

1. From the ScanMaster Main Menu, select **Employee Maintenance** to display the **Employee Menu**.
2. Select **Enhanced Security** to display the **Enhanced Security** screen.

For detailed instructions on about Enhanced Security, see ***Enhanced Security*** in ***Chapter 2, "Maintaining Employee Data"*** in the ***ScanMaster User Guide***.

Define Receipts

Use ***Appendix A*** of the ***ScanMaster User Guide*** to determine the various choices possible for formatting a register receipt tape.

To define the Register Receipt:

1. From the ScanMaster Main Menu, select **System Personalization** to display the **Personalization Menu**.
2. Select **System Configuration** to display the System Configuration Editor screen.

For detailed instructions about "Defining Receipts", see the Functional Group for "**Customer Receipt and Display**" in ***Chapter 8*** of the ***ScanMaster User Guide***.

Setting up the SRR Editor

Customize the SRR Editor. The SRR Editor enables you to develop a customized reconciliation report that displays all pertinent accounting information for Paidouts, Receipts and Memos.

To edit reconciliation reports:

1. From the ScanMaster Main Menu, select **System Personalization** to display the **Personalization Menu**.
2. Select **SRR Editor** to display the **Reconciliation Report Editor** screen.

For detailed instructions about "SRR Editor", see the "SRR Editor" section of ***Chapter 8*** of the ***ScanMaster User Guide***.

Configuring Setting Files (Back Office & POS Workstation)

Configure the Back Office and POS Workstation Settings to make ScanMaster operational.

To access the Back Office or POS Workstation Settings:

1. From the ScanMaster Main Menu, select **System Personalization** to display the **Personalization Menu**.
2. Select **System Configuration** to display the **System Configuration Editor** screen.

Note: Please assign a default electronic coupon department number on the Global/Store Tab to avoid receiving an error message each time you log in.

3. The many options are uniquely grouped under each tab. Click one of the 18 tabs to see the group of related settings. Double click on a cell to display an edit area where changes can be made. Save the changes to designated lanes.

For detailed instructions and definitions for all Back Office and POS Workstation Settings, see ***Chapter 8: Personalizing Workstations*** in the ***ScanMaster User Guide***.

Configuring Media

Configure the supported media types and their related settings.

To access the Media Configurator:

1. From the ScanMaster Main Menu, select **System Personalization** to display the **Personalization Menu**.
2. Select **Media Configurator** to display the **Media Maintenance Menu.** Select **Media Configurator** to display the **Media Configurator** screen. Select the Register Number and Media Type to edit.

For detailed instructions and definitions for all Media Configurator settings, see ***Chapter 8: Personalizing Workstations*** in the ***ScanMaster User Guide***.

Configuring Keyboards

Configure the keyboard layouts for each register.

To access the Keyboard Configurator:

1. From the ScanMaster Main Menu, select **System Personalization** to display the **Personalization Menu**.

2. Select **Keyboard Configurator** to display the **Keyboard Config. Menu.** Select the menu associated with the keyboard type you are configuring to display the **Keyboard Configurator** Screen. Select the Register Number to edit.

For detailed instructions for on Keyboard Configurator settings, see ***Chapter 8: Personalizing Workstations*** in the ***ScanMaster User Guide***.

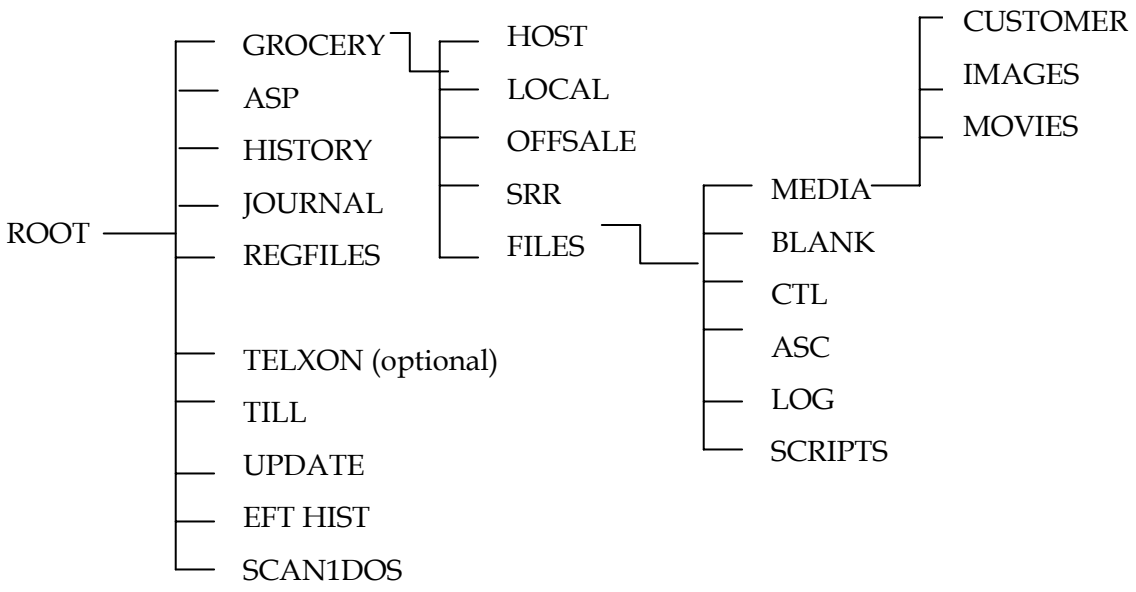
Chapter 4: File Structure and Description

Software files on ScanMaster are divided into two sets of folders and subfolders: those for the back office, and those for the file server. File server folders are: a local program file drive (typically C:\) and a shared Local Area Network (LAN) drive (typically F:\). If there is an additional Back Office Workstation, much of the folder structure is also similar, especially the subfolders in the \GROCERY folder.

This chapter shows the folder structures for the file server, additional ScanMaster Back Office workstations, and a POS workstation. The files in the folders are listed with a brief description of their functions.

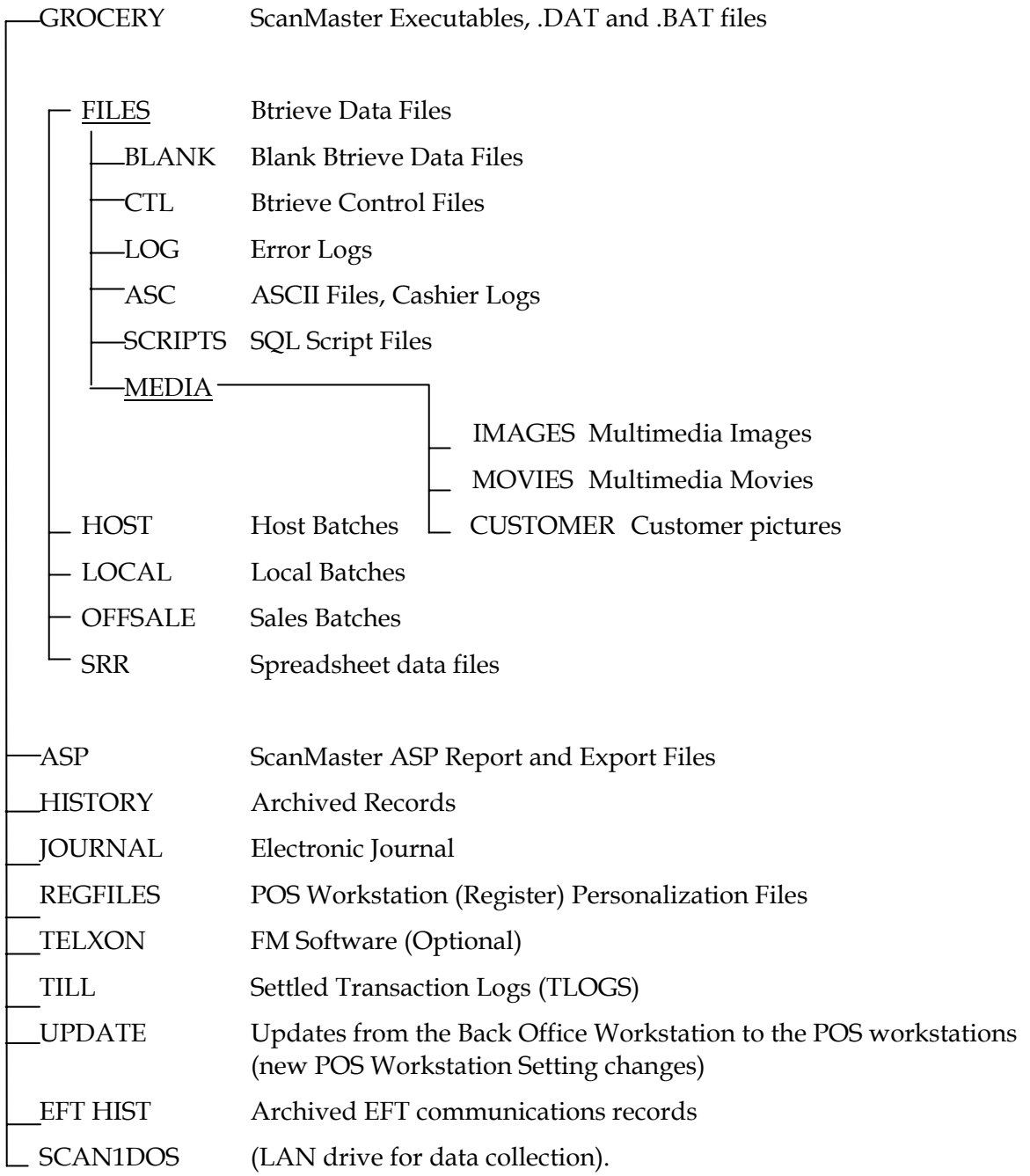
Workstation/Server Folder Structure

Folder Structure



Note: The file server has two drives: a Local Drive (typically C:) and a mapped LAN Drive (typically shared as SCAN1DOS). The local drive contains ScanMaster's executable files, while the LAN drive contains the system's data collection files. This chapter refers to them both when necessary as ROOT: \, unless only one drive is specified.

Workstation/Server Folders



Note: The local drive contains ScanMaster's executable files, while the LAN drive contains the system's data collection files.

ScanMaster Executable Files

GROCERY - Grocery Folder

All file server executables are located in the \GROCERY folder.

SM2LOGIN.EXE	Security Login
SM2MENU.EXE	Back Office Workstation Main Menu

Item Maintenance

SM2BMENU.EXE	Item Maintenance Menu
SM2ASC2B.EXE	Host to Batch
SM2BAPLY.EXE	Apply Batch Files
SM2BATCH.EXE	Print Batch Files
SM2F2BAT.EXE	Convert PLU Report to Batch
SM2FLIP.EXE	Flip Chart Maintenance
SM2ITEM.EXE	Item Maintenance
SM2MASS.EXE	Mass Attribute Change Utility
SM2MIX.EXE	Mix and Match Maintenance

Miscellaneous Item Maintenance

SMW2MENU.EXE	Miscellaneous Maintenance Menu
SM2WAJTPR.EXE	Adjective Price Maintenance
SM2BLINK.EXE	Bottle Link Editor
SM2BUNDL.EXE	Bundle File Maintenance
SM2COUP.EXE	Promotion/Coupon Editor
SM2ECPN.EXE	Electronic Coupon
SM2LIKE.EXE	Like Code Editor
SM2PMM.EXE	Multi-Media Promotions Editor
SM2RCODE.EXE	Report Code Editor
SM2VTARE.EXE	Variable Tare Maintenance
SM2TARE.EXE	Tare Table Maintenance
SM2UMTBL.EXE	Unit of Measure Table Editor

Employee Maintenance

SM2EMENU.EXE	Employee Menu
SM2ACEMP.EXE	Active Employee List
SM2CMON.EXE	Cashier Monitoring
SM2CSACT.EXE	Active Cashier Status
SM2EMP.EXE	Employee Maintenance File
SM2EMPLS.EXE	Employee List
SM2FRLOG.EXE	Force Cashier Logoff
SM2MSG.EXE	Cashier Messaging
SM2SECUR.EXE	Enhanced Security

Department Maintenance

SM2DMENU.EXE	Department/Subdepartment Menu
SM2DEPT.EXE	Department Maintenance
SM2GRMNT.EXE	Group Descriptor Maintenance
SM2MATRX.EXE	Department Restriction Matrix
SM2SUBD.EXE	Subdepartment Maintenance

Customer Maintenance

SM2CMENU.EXE	Customer Maintenance Menu
SM2CREAS.EXE	Customer Reason Maintenance
SM2CSCLR.EXE	Clear Customer Totals
SM2CUST.EXE	Customer Maintenance
SM2FSHOP.EXE	Frequent Shopper Discount Table
SM2FSHRP.EXE	Customer / Frequent Shopper Report
SM2H2CFG.EXE	Customer Host Configuration
SM2LDESC.EXE	Frequent Shopper Level Code Maintenance
SM2NCHK.EXE	Negative Check Maintenance
SM2NCRPT.EXE	Negative Check Report

Accounts Receivable

SM2AMENU.EXE	Accounts Receivable Menu

- SM2AGRPT.EXE A/R Aging Report

- SM2ARACT.EXE A/R Activity Report
- SM2ARPST.EXE Post A/R Payments and Adjustments
- SM2FCHRG.EXE Post A/R Finance Charges
- SM2MOEND.EXE A/R Month-End Close
- SM2STMNT.EXE A/R Statement Printing

System Personalization

SM2PMENU.EXE System Personalization Menu

- SM2BANR.EXE Banner File Maintenance
- SM2BSRR.EXE Reconciliation Report Editor
- SM2CCRT.EXE Customer CRT Promo Editor
- SM2COMCF.EXE Communications Control File Editor
- SM2FRATE.EXE Foreign Currency Rate Editor
- SM2REAS.EXE Reason Code Maintenance
- SM2SYSCF.EXE System Configuration Editor
- SM2TAX.EXE Tax Tables Maintenance
- SM2TCODE.EXE Tax Code Editor

Media Configurator

SM2NMENU.EXE Media Configurator Menu
SM2MEDIA.EXE Media Configurator
SM2MDFEE.EXE Media Cashing Fee Editor

Keyboard Configurator

SM2KMENU.EXE Keyboard Menu

- SM2K7450.EXE DynaKey Keyboard Configurator
- SM2KFLCN.EXE Falcon Keyboard Configurator
- SM2KNCR.EXE Keyboard Configurator for 56 & 64 key NCR

Communications

SM2TMENU.EXE Communications Menu

Reports

SM2RMENU.EXE Reports Menu

- SM2SJRPT.EXE Electronic Journal Reports
- SM2ECDEL.EXE Electronic Coupon Delete
- SM2ECRPT.EXE Electronic Coupon Reporting
- SM2EODPR.EXE Print End-of-Day Reports

Financial Reports

SM2FMENU.EXE Financial Reports Menus

- SM2ACTRP.EXE Hourly Activity Report
- SM2AUDRP.EXE Summary Audit Trail Reports
- SM2CARPT.EXE Consolidated Transaction Log (TLOG) Reports
- SM2CPRPT.EXE Enhanced Dept. Report
- SM2CSHRP.EXE Cashier Report
- SM2DAUD.EXE Detailed Audit Report
- SM2DEPT1.EXE Department Flash Report
- SM2DEPT2.EXE Department Historical Report
- SM2DPACT.EXE Department Activity Report
- SM2DPTEC.EXE Electronic Coupon by Dept. Report
- SM2NRTRP.EXE Non-Resettable Totals Report
- SW2PRODR.EXE Lane Productivity Report

Item File Reports

SM2UMENU.EXE Item File Reports Menu

- SM2ADMV.EXE Ad Movement/Loss Report
- SM2LRMV.EXE Clear Movement Report
- SM2PDIMR.EXE PLU File and PLU Movement Reports

End-of-Day Procedure

SM2EOD.EXE Starts End-of-Day

- SM2ACTVT.EXE Compiles Activity Information

- SM2ARC.EXE General System File Archiving
- SM2BAPLY.EXE Applies Automatic Batch Activation
- SM2CDEPT.EXE Compiles Department Sales Figures
- SM2CTLOG.EXE Consolidated TLOG
- SM2CSHPR.EXE Compiles Cashier Productivity
- SM2EODAC.EXE Prepares for Automatic EOD Batch Activation
- SM2NRT.EXE Compiles Non-Resettable Totals for Reporting
- SM2TLRPT.EXE Compiles TLOG for Cashier Productivity

Office Procedures

SM2OMENU.EXE Office Procedures Menu

- SM2ACEMP.EXE Active Cashier List
- SM2ADJST.EXE Adjust Settled Cashiers
- SM2DELAY.EXE Cashier Delays
- SM2DPSIT.EXE Deposits
- SM2OFREC.EXE Office Reconciliation
- SM2OFUND.EXE Media Flash Report
- SM2ORCPT.EXE Office Adjustments
- SM2PCKUP.EXE Pickups & Loans
- SM2SETTL.EXE Cashier Settlements
- SM2SRR.EXE Scan Master Reconciliation Report

System Services

SM2SMENU.EXE System Services Menu

- SM2BCOD1.EXE Label Printing
- SM2BCKUP.EXE Tape Backup Utility
- SM2LMENU.EXE Delete not found.Dat
  Delete Randon.Hld
  Delete Pickup.Dat
  Delete Err Log
- SM2EJBKP.EXE Electronic Journal Back-up
- SM2KSUS.EXE View/Delete Suspend.Dat

- SM2VIEW.EXE View/Print Error Log
  View Back Office Workstation Log
  View Security Log
- SM2IMENU.EXE Third Party Menu
  - SM2SIL.EXE SIL Interface
- SM2XMENU.EXE User-Defined Menu

General system log

- SM2ARC.EXE Part of End-Of-Day – General System File Archiving

Standalone Utilities (and DOS Applications)

SM27800.EXE	NCR Price Verifier Software
SM2CSTDL.EXE	Customer Range Delete
SM2H2CCF.EXE	Customer File Hosting Configuration
MAKEUSER.EXE	Sets Up User & POS Workstation NT Accounts (during installation)
SM2AGE.EXE	Nightly Accounts Receivable Aging
SM2ARDFX.EXE	Accounts Receivable Date Fix Program
SM2ASYNC.EXE	Synchronizes A/R History and Charges
SM2CHFIX.EXE	A/R History Date Repair Utility
SM2CJRPT.EXE	Electronic Journal Reports for viewing the Electronic Journal from ScanMaster v2.00.03.
SM2CLNEC.EXE	Electronic Journal Electronic Coupon clearing for expired coupons
SM2CLR.EXE	Financial File Clearing Program to be used before a store goes live
SM2CT2EJ.EXE	Converts TLOG Files to EJ files for processing in a lab environment
SM2EJ.EXE	Electronic Journal Processor
SM2ESL.EXE	Price ESL (Electronic Shelf Interface) interface file generator
SM2FCFIX.EXE	Finance Charge Undo
SM2WH2CUS.EXE	Customer Hosting Update Program
SM2INSTL.EXE	Installation Customization Screen

SM2LGOFF.EXE	ScanMaster Auto-Logoff Utility
SM2MDFEE.EXE	Media Fee Link Editor
SM2RPAIR.EXE	Repairs item file, Repairs batch file, Repairs Movement File, Repairs Electronic Coupon File, Repairs Customer File, Repairs Customer Demographics File, Repairs Negative Check File, Repairs Charge File -- Repairs/Deletes Key Fields with invalid data (nulls). Fills invalid non-key fields with appropriate default data.
SM2SFUPD.EXE	Software Update Editor
SM2SIL.EXE	SIL Configurator
SM2SILPR.EXE	SIL Processor
SM2SSDSP.EXE	ScanMaster Software Registration Display
SM2WSTATS.EXE	Status Editor Program
SM2TLOGX.EXE	TLOG Cashier Extract Program
SM2WAIT.EXE	Wait Utility for End-of-Day Processing
SM2XFER.EXE	A/R Finance Charge Deletion and Balance Forward Utility
SM2XPORT.EXE	Data Export Utility (See **Using SM2EOD.SCR** below for adding this executable to your End of Day script)
SM2XTRCT.EXE	TLOG Extract Utility
SRV2CONV.EXE	ScanMaster v1.1.5+ to 1.2 Batch Conversion Program
VIEWHOST.EXE	ASCII Host File Viewer

Installation Utilities

ALTREGLD.EXE	Utility designed to copy required offline files from the server to a pre-loaded register. Designed to allow registers to be loaded prior to installation and run after the ScanMaster server is loaded/converted.
COPYPARM.EXE	Installation utility that is called by a register upgrade. It gets a register number from the installer and copies any appropriate existing personalization files from the server.
FONTINST.EXE	GUI or command line utility that can install MS Linedraw.ttf on a Server or BackOffice workstation or the 64 key Courier double high and double wide fonts on the POS. This is called on the Server/BackOffice installs. The POS fonts are installed by the MakePos program. The font files are put in place by the installation process but must be added as a resource by our utilities.

MAKEPOS.EXE	Installation utility that allows the installer to configure the rlaunch2.dat file and appropriate control file.
MAKEUSER.EXE	Utility to build users on the ScanMaster server or on the individual POS workstations. It is called by the Server and POS install. It supports the following command line parameters. /AUTO – Used to run in "silent" mode on the server during the install. /REMOVE – Used to remove users created on the server during install . /POS – Used to build the Wrkstnxx user on each POS. POS COMPUTER NAME SHOULD BE POSxx OR THIS UTILITY WILL FAIL TO MAKE THE USER PART OF THE ADMINISTRATOR GROUP.
REG2CONV.EXE	v2.03.00 register conversion utility. Designed to allow upgrade to v2.03.00 from v1.02.xx and above while store is open. On the first register to run the program, the utility will copy and convert the required offline files to the v2.03.00 file formats and to Pervasive v8 file formats on it's local drive. After conversion the files are copied to the server where each subsequent register running the utility will copy the converted files to it's local drive.
SM2BLDDB.EXE	Utility to build the Pervasive ScanMaster database on the server.
SM2CLTDB.EXE	Utility to build the Pervasive ScanMaster database access on BackOffice workstations.
SRV2CONV.EXE	Server/BackOffice conversion utility. This utility converts all of the database files to the appropriate v2.03.00 and V8 formats. It also deletes previous smw*.exe and grc*.btr files.
TASKUTIL.EXE	POS utility to restore/hide the taskbar which is hidden by rlaunch2.exe.

Btrieve Data Files

ScanMaster uses Btrieve for File Record Management. The Btrieve data files are always located in the <LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES subdirectory. Below is a list of the Btrieve data files, a brief description of the files and the hardware on which these files must reside.

File Name	Description	File Server	POS Workstation
EBACCT.BTR	Restored Accounts Tables - Stores account numbers for checks/instore charges/etc	X	
EBASSOC.BTR	Restored Associated Files Table - stores locations of the Check Images, and the Receipt Captures	X	
EBCUST.BTR	Restored Customer Table - Information about customers	X	
EBDISC.BTR	Restored Discount Table - Discounts in transactions	X	
EBITEM.BTR	Restored Item Table - Items in transactions	X	
EBMGR.BTR	Restored Manager Table - This is the managers id/names in transactions	X	
EBNRT.BTR	Restored NonResetable Totals Table - NRTs in Transactions	X	
EBPROMO.BTR	Restored Promotions Table - Electronic Promotions and Receipts on Coupons in transactions	X	
EBTAX.BTR	Restored Tax Table - Tax amount/exempted in Transactions	X	
EBTENDER.BTR	Restored Tender Table - Type and amount of tender in Transactions	X	

File Name	Description	File Server	POS Workstation
EBTRANS.BTR	Restored Transaction Table - Primary transaction information table	X	
EJACCT.BTR	Accounts Tables - Stores account numbers for checks/instore charges/etc	X	
EJASSOC.BTR	Associated Files Table - stores locations of the Check Images, and the Receipt Captures	X	
EJCUST.BTR	Customer Table - Information about customers	X	
EJDEPTNM.BTR	Department Name Table - Where the EJ reports gets the names for the departments - Updated by the EJ processor whenever the ScanMaster Department file is changed.	X	
EJDISC.BTR	Discount Table - Discounts in transactions	X	
EJITEM.BTR	Item Table - Items in transactions	X	
EJITMTYP.BTR	Item Type Table - This is the Item Type list used by the EJ reports. This is a Fixed table, and is only updated by the installation scripts	X	
EJMGR.BTR	Manager Table - This is the managers id/names	X	

File Name	Description	File Server	POS Workstation
	in transactions		
EJNRT.BTR	NonResetable Totals Table - NRTs in Transactions	X	
EJPROMO.BTR	Promotions Table - Electronic Promotions and Receipts on Coupons in transactions	X	
EJTAX.BTR	Tax Table - Tax amount/exempted in Transactions	X	
EJTENDER.BTR	Tender Table - Type and amount of tender in Transactions	X	
EJTENDNM.BTR	Tender Name Table - This is where the EJ reports gets the names for the media. - Updated by the EJ processor whenever the ScanMaster Media Configuration file is changed.	X	
EJTRANS.BTR	Transaction Table - Primary transaction information table	X	
EJTRNTYP.BTR	Transaction Type Table - This is the Transaction Type list used by the EJ reports. This is a Fixed table, and is only updated by the installation scripts.	X	
GR2AMDIA	Active Multimedia File	X	
GR2BATCH.BTR	Batch File	X	

File Name	Description	File Server	POS Workstation
GR2BEXP.BTR	Batch Export File	X	
GR2BIMP.BTR	Batch Import File	X	
GR2BTSVC.BTR	Batch Service Monitor File	X	
GR2BUNDL.BTR	Bundle Code File	X	*
GR2CHARG.BTR	Accounts Receivable Charge File	X	*
GR2CHIST.BTR	In-Store Charge History File	X	*
GR2CPLNK.BTR	Coupon Link File	X	*
GR2CPN.BTR	Receipt Coupon Print File	X	*
GR2CPRMO.BTR	CID Promo File	X	*
GR2CUST.BTR	Customer File	X	*
GR2CUSTX.BTR	Extended Customer File	X	*
GR2DEPT.BTR	Department File	X	*
GR2DPT15.BTR	Hourly Activity By Department	X	*
GR2DPTRG.BTR	Active Department Totals (if Accountability by Lane is active)	X	*
GR2DPTTL.BTR	Active Department Totals	X	*
GR2DTILL.BTR	Department Totals (for settled or delayed cashiers)	X	
GR2EJSTA.BTR	Electronic Journal Status File	X	
GR2FINAL.BTR	Finalized Totals Report File	X	
GR2FITAB.BTR	Future Items to be Applied Batch	X	
GR2FMDTL.BTR	FM Template Detail File	X	

File Name	Description	File Server	POS Workstation
GR2FMEMP.BTR	FM Employee File	X	
GR2FMHDR.BTR	FM Template Header File	X	
GR2FMPFL.BTR	FM User Profile File	X	
GR2FMSEC.BTR	FM Security Settings File	X	
GR2FMTMP.BTR	FM Manager's Template List	X	
GR2FOFSL.BTR	Future Offsale Batch for Label Printing	X	
GR2FRATE.BTR	Foreign Currency File	X	*
GR2FSTG.BTR	Staging File for Future Batches when printing Labels	X	
GR2GROUP.BTR	Department Group File	X	
GR2GMDIA.BTR	Group Multimedia File	X	
GR2HEADR.BTR	Batch Header File	X	
GR2HEXP.BTR	Batch Header Export File	X	
GR2HIMP.BTR	Batch Header Import File	X	
GR2HOUR.BTR	Hourly Activity Report File	X	*
GR2IREAS.BTR	Instore Charge Reason Codes File	X	
GR2ITAB.BTR	Items To Be Applied Batch	X	
GR2ITEM.BTR	Item File	X	*
GR2ITGOS.BTR	Batch for Items Going Offsale Used by the Batch Staging Process	X	
GR2LABEL.BTR	Label File	X	
GR2LASTZ.BTR	End of Day History File	X	
GR2LIKE.BTR	Like Code File	X	*
GR2LNTST.BTR	Test File for Register	X	

File Name	Description	File Server	POS Workstation
GR2MDFEE.BTR	Media Fees File	X	*
GR2MIX.BTR	Mix and Match File	X	
GR2MRPRT.BTR	Interim Movement Criteria File	X	
GR2MVMNT.BTR	Item Movement	X	
GR2NCHEK.BTR	Negative Check File	X	*
GR2NREAS.BTR	Negative Check Reason Code File	X	
GR2NRGT.BTR	Non-resettable Totals File	X	
GR2OLDDT.BTR	Previous Day's Department Totals	X	
GR2OLDPT.BTR	Previous Day's Cashier Totals Report	X	
GR2PMM.BTR	Multi Media File	X	
GR2POINT.BTR	Electronic Coupon File	X	*
GR2PREAS.BTR	Positive Check Reason Code File	X	
GR2PRICE.BTR	Adjective Price File	X	*
GR2PROD.BTR	Cashier Productivity File	X	
GR2PRODRG.BTR	Lane Productivity File	X	
GR2PRS.BTR	Employee File	X	*
GR2PRSRG.BTR	Lane Totals Report (if Accountability by Lane is Active)	X	*
GR2PRSTL.BTR	Cashier Totals Report	X	*
GR2PSTXX.BTR	Department Flip Charts xx is dept number	X	*
GR2RCODE.BTR	Report Code File	X	
GR2RECON.BTR	Reconciled Total Report File	X	
GR2REGTL.BTR	Register Total File		*
GR2RGPRD.BTR	Lane Productivity	X	

File Name	Description	File Server	POS Workstation
	Report File		
GR2RMDIA.BTR	Register Multimedia File	X	
GR2RSTCT.BTR	Department Sales Restriction File	X	*
GR2SECUR.BTR	Enhanced Security File	X	
GR2SFUPD.BTR	Software Update File		*
GR2SILMP.BTR	Current ScanMaster SIL Mapping fields	X	
GR2SILSP.BTR	Supported (available) ScanMaster SIL Mapping fields	X	
GR2SSTAT.BTR	Last Staging Date & Time File	X	
GR2STAGE.BTR	Items To be Applied after Staging	X	
GR2STORE.BTR	Store Totals Historical File	X	
GR2SUBD.BTR	Subdepartment File	X	*
GR2TILL.BTR	Delayed Totals Report File	X	
GR2TLDPT.BTR	Yesterday's Department Totals File	X	
GR2TLPRS.BTR	Yesterday's Cashier Totals File	X	
GR2TRANS.BTR	Backoffice Transaction Number File	X	
GR2UCI.BTR	Universal Credit Insertion File	X	
GR2UMTBL.BTR	Unit Of Measure Table	X	
GS2ESL.BTR	Pricer ESL Data Storage File	X	
SNHDATA2.BTR	S&H Green Points Live Auto Redemption File	X	
SNHPEND.BTR	S&H Green Points Pending Auto	X	

File Name	Description	File Server	POS Workstation
	Redemption File		

* These files are used on the POS workstation only when it is in Off-Line Mode.

Note: These files may also reside on a BackOffice workstation(s) but are not used by ScanMaster. As a backup, the End of Day Process copies these files from the server to the root drive of the machine running the EOD process.

GROCERY\HOST

All host batches reside in this directory.

GROCERY\LOCAL

All local batches reside in this directory.

GROCERY\OFFSALE

All off-sale batches reside in this directory.

GROCERY\SIL\ACHIVE

The directory where SIL files that have already been processed are stored. They can be reprocessed as needed.

GROCERY\SIL\BATCH

The directory where ScanMaster batches are stored after they are imported from the processed SIL files.

GROCERY\SIL\DECODE

The directory where temporary files are placed after the SIL engine processes the original SIL file.

GROCERY\SIL\ENCODE

The directory where the extract requests are stored.

GROCERY\SIL\OUTPUT

The directory where LOG and extraction data are stored.

GROCERY\SIL\SOURCE

The directory where original SIL files from host are placed.

GROCERY\SIL\TEMPLATE

The directory where extraction template files are stored.

GROCERY\SRR

Spreadsheet (ScanMaster Reconciliation Report) (Each of the following three is created at End-Of-Day)

Memos with date (ME*mmddyy*.DAT)

Receipts with date (RE*mmddyy*.DAT)

Paid-Outs with date (PO*mmddyy*.DAT)

POMAP	Store Reconciliation Report Paidout Map files for the layout of the Paidout section of the SRR Paid-out accounts on the POS workstations. Renamed POMAP.001 when needed by ScanMaster and placed in the UPDATE directory.
MEMAP	Store Reconciliation Report Memo Map files for the layout of the Memo section of the SRR.
REMAP	Store Reconciliation Report Receipt Map files for the layout of the Receipt section of the SRR.

GROCERY\FILES\BLANK

During installation empty BTRIEVE files are installed in this directory.

GROCERY\FILES\CTL

CTL files are used to create empty BTRIEVE files in both the \GROCERY\FILES\BLANK and \GROCERY\FILES directories, named according to the .CTL (control) file containing the template.

The .BTR files in the BLANK subdirectory remain blank. As the day progresses, the .BTR files in the \GROCERY\FILES subdirectory fill with information. If an empty file is needed by a program, the program will either create an empty .BTR file in the \GROCERY\FILES subdirectory using the .CTL file, or copy an empty .BTR file from \GROCERY\FILES\BLANK to \GROCERY\FILES.

The .CTL files are primarily used if the .BTR files become unusable for some reason, and need to be recreated. For more information on recovering from system problems, see Chapter 6, "Recovery Procedures," or Chapter 7, "Troubleshooting".

GR2ACTRP.CTL	Activity Report File
GR2BATCH.CTL	Batch File
GR2BUNDL.CTL	Bundle Code
GR2CHARG.CTL	Accounts Receivable Charge File
GR2CHIST.CTL	In-Store Charge History File
GR2CPLNK.CTL	Coupon Linking File
GR2CPN.CTL	Receipt Coupon Print File
GR2CPRMO.CTL	CID Promo File
GR2CUST.CTL	Customer File
GR2CUSTX.CTL	Extended Customer File
GR2DEPT.CTL	Department File
GR2DPT15.CTL	Hourly Activity Report by Department File
GR2DPTRG.CTL	Active Department Total File (Lane)
GR2DPTTL.CTL	Active Department Totals
GR2DTILL.CTL	Department Totals for Delayed or Settled Cashiers
CR2EJSTA.CTL	Electronic Journal Status File
GR2FINAL.CTL	Final Totals Report File
GR2FRATE.CTL	Foreign Currency File
GR2CGROUP.CTL	Department Group File
GR2HEADR.EXE	Batch Header File
GR2HOUR.CTL	Hourly Activity Report File
GR2ITEM.CTL	Item file
GR2LASTZ.CTL	End of Day Date History File
GR2LIKE.EXE	Like Code File
GR2MDFEE.CTL	Media Fees File
GR2MIX.CTL	Mix and Match File
GR2MVMNT.CTL	Item Movement File
GR2NCHEK.CTL	Negative Check File
GR2NRGT.CTL	Non-resettable Totals File
GR2POINT.CTL	Electronic Coupon File

GR2PRICE.CTL	Adjective Price File
GR2PROD.CTL	Cashier Productivity File
GR2PRS.CTL	Employee File
GR2PRSRG.CTL	Lane Totals Report File
GR2PRSTL.CTL	Cashier Totals Report File
GR2RCODE.CTL	Report Code File
GR2RECON.CTL	Reconciled Total Report File
GR2RGPRD.CTL	Lane Productivity Report File
GR2RSTCT.CTL	Department Sales Restriction File
GR2SECUR.CTL	Enhanced Security File
GR2STORE.CTL	Store Totals Historical File
GR2SUBD.CTL	Subdepartment File
GR2TILL.CTL	Delayed Totals Report File
GR2TLDPT.CTL	Yesterday's Totals Report File
GR2UCI.CTL	Universal Credit Insertion File
GR2UMTBL.CTL	Unit of Measure File
GR2UPD.CTL	Update File
GR2PST.CTL	Electronic Flip Chart File

GROCERY\FILES\LOG

ARC.LOG	Contains a general system log generated by SMWARC.EXE. This file can be used to trace errors in the EOD Archive program.
AUTOEOD.LOG	Contains the actions relating to the automatic EOD: Enabling/Disabling the Automatic EOD function in the System Configuration, setting or changing the automatic start times for each day of the week, selecting to skip or un-skip an automatic EOD and the execution of a manual EOD.

Note: If the automated EOD sees that a manual EOD has been executed at the time an automated EOD is scheduled to start, an entry will be made in the AUTOEOD.LOG file and the automated EOD will abort.

ERROR.LOG	Log for viewing from System Services/User-Defined Menu. Displays all errors reported by ScanMaster Programs.

SM2FRLOG.LOG	Log for viewing actions performed using the Force Cashier Logoff function: The date/time the action took place, the employee logged into ScanMaster when the logoff occurred, the cashier (or lane) that the action affected and the action type (Cashier Logoff or Office Status Reset).

GROCERY\FILES\ASC

AUDTRAIL.ASC	An ASCII file listing of any activity that affects the office safe, for example, a drawer pickup or opening a register.
AUDTRAIL.OLD	ScanMaster keeps the audit trail for two days; this file is a copy of AUDTRAIL.ASC from the previous day.
GRCTLOG.ASC	Combined Transaction Log (TLOG).
ITMHSTEX.###	A verbose batch error report, where ### is the store number.
TLOG*rrnn.ccc*	POS Workstation Log, (TLOGS), where ***rr*** represents the POS workstation number; *nn* represents the sequence number and *ccc* represents the cashier number.

GROCERY\FILES\MEDIA\IMAGES and GROCERY\FILES\MEDIA\MOVIES

Media files (both images and movies, respectively) are placed in these folders are import. These files are used by the Promotional Media Maintenance program when displaying images and movies to the customer on the customer information display.

GROCERY\FILES\MEDIA\CUSTOMERS

Customer photo images are placed in this folder and will display on the POS terminal when doing check tendering, check cashing, or in-store charge tendering. The picture will only appear if the store is using the positive check file and the customer's picture exists in the file.

The .jpg filename for the customer photo must be placed in this folder using the customer's 12-digit account number. For example, "000000509876.jpg" for customer number 000000508876.

ASP – Application Service Provider Directory

When the Back Office Setting "Enable Connected Services Interface" is enabled, store reports and export files are written as text files for external purposes when both the EOD process and Final Deposit are performed. ScanMaster automatically date stamps these files and places them in the <Program File Drive>:\GROCERY\ASP folder. The files are given the XXXXmmdd.yy naming convention where "XXXX" denotes the report initials (see list below), "mm" denotes the month (01-12), "dd" denotes the day (01-31) and "yy" denotes the year (00-99).

Note: Regardless of the setting of the Back Office Setting "Enable Connected Services Interface", balancing files are created and placed in the ASP folder.

DPAC1101.09 is the Department Activity Report for November 1, 2009.

Report Initials	Description
ENDD	Enhanced Department Report - Daily
ENDW	Enhanced Department Report - Last Week
DHSD	Department Historical Report - Daily
DHSW	Department Historical Report - Last Week
DPAC	Department Activity Report - Daily
HRAC	Hourly Activity Report - Yesterday
CTNS	Consolidated TLOG No Sale Report
CTNC	Consolidated TLOG Non-Scans Report
CTRT	Consolidated TLOG Returns/Refunds Report
CTOV	Consolidated TLOG Overrides Report
CTNG	Consolidated TLOG Negative Sales Report
CTCS	Consolidated TLOG Canceled Sales Report
CTVD	Consolidated TLOG Void Report
CTEC	Consolidated TLOG Error Correct Report
CTMS	Consolidated TLOG Media Swap Report
SADT	Summary Audit Trail Report - Yesterday
DADT	Detailed Audit Trail Report - Yesterday
CTRT	Cashier/Store Totals Report - Trial Balance
CTRF	Cashier/Store Totals Report - Yesterday Final (Created during Final Deposit)
LNPR	Lane Productivity Report - Yesterday (Only available if system in Cashier Accountability)

LNCR	Cashier Report for Lane Accountability (Only available if system in Lane Accountability)
NRTL	Non-Resettable Totals Report
SRRT	Store Reconciliation Report (in Excel Format) - Trial Balance
SRRF	Store Reconciliation Report (in Excel Format) - Final (Created during Final Deposit)
CTGC	Consolidated TLOG Gift Cert/Card Report
ECDP	Electronic Coupons by Department - Daily
CTXT	Cashier/Store Totals Export - Trial Balance
CTXF	Cashier/Store Totals Export - Final (Created during Final Deposit)
DPNM	Department Name
GPNM	Group Name
MDNM	Media Name
ITNM	Item Export
MOVE	Movement Export

HISTORY - History Directory

This subdirectory stores archives of the day's work in a PkZip-compatible format. Archives are stored for 365 days.

If two End-Of-Day Procedures are accidentally run, the redundancies captured in the archives provide the means to reconstruct the financial data collected prior to the execution of an End-Of-Day Procedure.

GRCTLOG.ASC	Combined Transaction Log (TLOG)
TLOG*rrnn.ccc*	Individual Cashier Transaction Logs (TLOGS), where *rr* represents the POS workstation number; *nn* represents the sequence number and *ccc* represents the cashier number.
GRCCLGnn.ccc	Individual Cashier Check Logs, where *nn* represents the sequence number and *ccc* the cashier number.
GR2DPTRG.BTR	Department Total (If **Accountability By Lane** is active in Back Office Settings)
GR2DPTTL.BTR	Department Total (If **Accountability By Lane** is **not** active in Back Office Settings)
GR2TILL.BTR	Delayed Financial Data
GR2TLDPT.BTR	Previous Day's Department Total

GR2RECON.BTR	Data for finalized cashiers
GR2FINAL.BTR	Yesterday's data for finalized cashiers
DR*mmddyy*.DAT	Historical Department Files. *mmddyy* represents the month, day and year in which the file was created.
AUTOEOD.LOG	The automatic EOD log prior to cleaning (based on the Back Office Setting "Days Historical Data to Save").
SM2FRLOG.LOG	The log showing actions performed using the Force Casher Logoff function.
TRAIL.OLD	The renamed usage trail log (TRAIL.ASC) prior to cleaning (based on the Back Office Setting "Days Historical Data to Save").

All ScanMaster Reconciliation Reports (SRR)

LASTZ.RUN	File which stores when the last End-Of-Day Procedure was run and whether it was run automatically or manually.
AUDTRAIL.OLD	Yesterday's pickups and loans, settlements, deposits, office reconciliation and office adjustments.
AUDTRAIL.ASC	Today's pickups and loans
*.LOG	Any miscellaneous error logs residing in the \ASC and \LOG subdirectories
TRAIL.ASC	Log that shows Logins and Logoffs on the system and programs accessed.

JOURNAL - Journal Directory

This directory contains the databases for the Electronic Journal (if this optional module is used).

When a cashier is settled or a pickup is performed, SM2EJ.EXE processes the associated Transaction Log (TLOG) files into the database. All line item transactions and relevant descriptive data (such as cashier information) are copied into the database.

SM2SJRPT.EXE is the program that permits the access of information processed into the database files, and are called when the menu option Electronic Journal Reports.

REGFILES - Register Files Directory

This directory serves as a template for the files which are on each POS workstation. When changes occur within a file in this directory, a copy is made for each POS workstation and placed in the UPDATE directory. The three (3) digit filename extension displays the number of the POS workstation for which the file is intended. The default file is kept in this directory and usually bears the extension .DAT.

When a POS workstation is updated, or when the End-Of-Day Procedure is run, each POS workstation checks the UPDATE directory to retrieve the appropriate file. The file is then deleted from the UPDATE directory.

BANNER.001	Banner File
BANNER.002	
and so forth	
BANNER.DAT	
BOTLINK.001	Bottle Link Table
BOTLINK.002	
and so forth	
BOTLINK.DAT	
CONTROL.001	POS Workstation Settings File
CONTROL.002	
and so forth	
CONTROL.DAT	
COUPON.001	Coupon Price Codes File
COUPON.002	
and so forth	
COUPON.DAT	
DEFDRIVE.001	Default Drive Letter (usually C:)
DEFDRIVE.002	
and so forth	
DEFDRIVE.DAT	
DYNXLAT.001	DynaKey Keyboard Layout
DYNXLAT.002	
and so forth	
DYNXLAT.DAT	
ERR.001	Error File

ERR.002	
and so forth	
ERR.DAT	
FILECHEK.001	Generated by the GROCERY /FILECHECK command to verify the correct data files are in place to support the register configuration
FILECHEK.002	
and so forth	
FILECHEK.DAT	
FRQDISC.001	Frequent Shopper Discount Table
FRQDISC.002	
and so forth	
FRQDISC.DAT	
GRCDISP.001	Displays every string literal in the code, allowing the editing of displayed messages at POS workstation
GRCDISP.002	
and so forth	
GRCDISP.MSG	
KBDDEPT.001	Department Keyboard Link File
KBDDEPT.002	
and so forth	
KBDDEPT.DAT	
KBDXLAT.001	Keyboard File
KBDXLAT.002	
and so forth	
KBDXLAT.DAT	
KBDXLAT.PC	
KEYPRIME.001	For Regression Testing: Simulates key press (Playback Mode)
KEYPRIME.002	
and so forth	
KEYPRIME.DAT	
LANDRIVE.001	Network Drive Letter (usually F:)
LANDRIVE.002	
and so forth	
LANDRIVE.DAT	
LVLDESC.001	Frequent Shopper Level Descriptor File

LVLDESC.002	
And so forth	
LVLDESC.DAT	
MEDIADSC.001	Payment Media Descriptor File
MEDIADSC.002	
and so forth	
MEDIADSC.DAT	
NCR.001	Tells the system that the code is running on NCR hardware
NCR.002	
and so forth	
NCR.DAT	
OVRDREAS.001	Override Reason Code File
OVRDREAS.002	
and so forth	
OVRDREAS.DAT	
PRESET.001	PLU Code File
PRESET.002	
and so forth	
PRESET.DAT	
RAMDRIVE.001	RAM Disk Drive Letter (usually virtual Drive D:)
RAMDRIVE.002	
and so forth	
RAMDRIVE.DAT	
RANDOM.001	Limits the number of random winners per day (See Chapter 3, "System Setup," POS Workstation Settings, "Maximum # of Random Winners" for more information.)
RANDOM.002	
and so forth	
RANDOM.DAT	
REPRTDSC.001	Available Reports Descriptor File
REPRTDSC.002	
and so forth	
REPRTDSC.DAT	
RTRNREAS.001	Return Reason Code File
RTRNREAS.002	

and so forth	
RTRNREAS.DAT	
STATES.001	State abbreviation list for checks
STATES.002	
and so forth	
STATES.DAT	
STATUS.001	Displays status in order of priority during item entry
STATUS.002	
and so forth	
STATUS.DAT	
TARE.001	Tare Weight Code File
TARE.002	
and so forth	
TARE.DAT	
TAX1.001	Tax Table 1
TAX1.002	
and so forth	
TAX1.DAT	
TAX2.001	Tax Table 2
TAX2.002	
and so forth	
TAX2.DAT	
TAX3.001	Tax Table 3
TAX3.002	
and so forth	
TAX3.DAT	
TAXCODE.001	Tax Code Description File
TAXCODE.002	
and so forth	
TAXCODE.DAT	
TRANCODE.001	Transaction Number File
TRANCODE.002	
and so forth	

TRANCODE.DAT	
TSTATUS.001	Displays status in order of priority during tendering
TSTATUS.002	
and so forth	
TSTATUS.DAT	
VOIDREAS.001	Void Reason Code File
VOIDREAS.002	
and so forth	
VOIDREAS.DAT	

TELXON - Telxon Directory

This is an optional directory requiring an additional software module. If the store is using Telxon shelf scanning equipment, the temporary batch files for that equipment reside in this directory.

All pertinent executables (.EXE) are in the \GROCERY subdirectory of the device running the FM software.

TILL - Till Directory

The Transaction Logs (TLOGS) of settled cashiers are stored in this subdirectory.

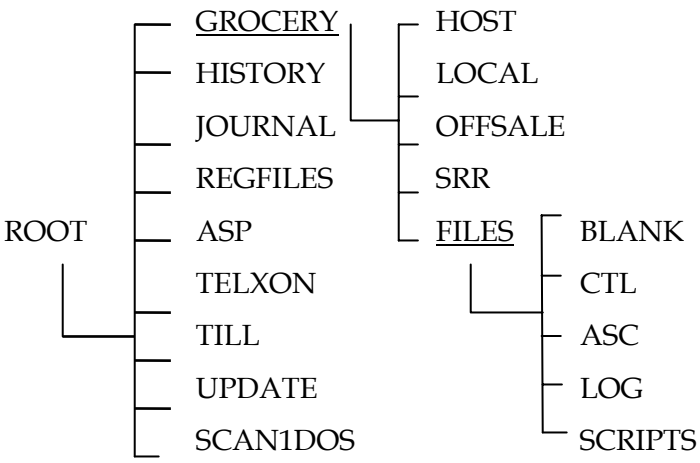
A Transaction Log has the filename convention of TLOGrrnn.ccc, where rr represents the POS workstation number; nn represents the sequence number and ccc represents the cashier number.

UPDATE - Update Directory

Updates and changes to the REGFILES reside in this directory. When a POS workstation is updated, or when the End-Of-Day Procedure is run, each POS workstation checks this directory for information which has been written to a file bearing its unique POS workstation number. After the POS workstation retrieves the file, the file is deleted from the UPDATE directory.

Additional Workstation Software Index

Directory Structure



Note: The additional Back Office Workstation has one Local Drive (C:). All files are accessed from the file server's (F:) Drive. The directory structure of the additional Back Office Workstation is similar to that of the file server.

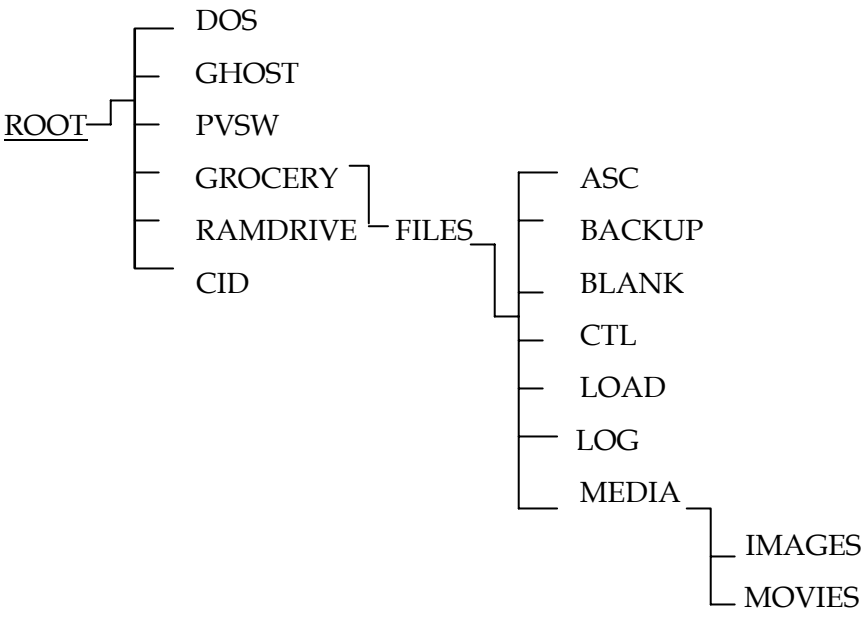
Additional Workstation Directories

- GROCERY — ScanMaster Executables, .Dat and .Bat files
  - FILES — Btrieve Data Files
    - BLANK — Blank Btrieve Data Files
    - CTL — Btrieve Control Files
    - LOG — Error Logs
    - ASC — ASCII Files, Cashier Logs
    - SCRIPTS — SQL Script Files
  - HOST — Host Batches
  - LOCAL — Local Batches
  - OFFSALE — Sales Batches
  - SIL — ScanMaster SIL Interface
    - ACHIVE — Previously processed SIL Files
    - BATCH — ScanMaster Batches post-import
    - DECODE — Temporary file location for SIL Processor
    - ENCODE — Extract Request Files
    - OUTPUT — Log and Extraction Data Files
    - SOURCE — Host SIL Files
    - TEMPLATE — Extract Template Files
  - SRR — Spreadsheet data files.
- ASP — ScanMaster ASP Report and Export Files
- HISTORY — Archived Records
- JOURNAL — Electronic Journal
- REGFILES — POS Workstation (Register) Personalization Files
- TELXON — FM Software
- TILL — Settled Transaction Logs (TLOGS)
- UPDATE — Updates from the Back Office Workstation to the POS workstations.
- SCAN1DOS — (LAN drive data collection).

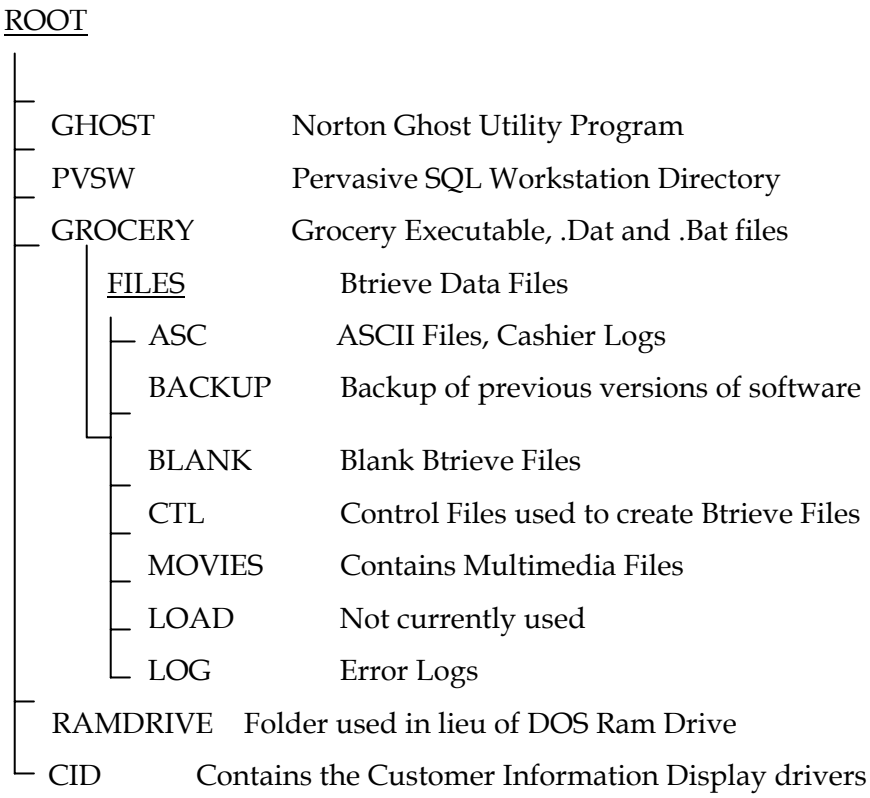
Note: The local drive contains ScanMaster's executable files, while the LAN drive contains the system's data collection files.

POS Workstation Software Index

Directory Structure



POS Workstation Directories



Files for POS Workstation

<Program File Drive>:\ - ROOT Directory

7156DLLG.EXE	Stores the logo for the receipt printer
AUTOEXEC.BAT	System startup command file
BDELAY.EXE	Delays network login after a reboot to allow Windows to remove previous session
COMMAND.COM	DOS system command interpreter
CONFIG.SYS	System device configuration file

GROCERY DIRECTORY <Program File Drive>:\GROCERY

7156DLLG.EXE	NCR logo load utility
APTMEDIA.DAT	Configuration file for S&H GreenPoints
BANNER.DAT	Scrolling banner message
BOTLINK.DAT	Bottle linking table
CONTROL.DAT	ScanMaster POS workstation configuration file
CONTROL.TMP	Template for System Configuration settings
COPYPARM.EXE	ScanMaster Parameter Copy Utility
COUPON.DAT	Manufacturers coupon price table
DEFDRIVE.DAT	Default drive letter
DEPT.ICO	Department Icon
DPTVALID.DAT	Department Validation File
DRVRMSG.NCR	Data file containing NCR driver error messages that the ScanMaster program loads to display
DYNXLAT.DAT	DynaKey keyboard layout
EFTDRIV2.DAT	Holds the mapped drive designation where the secondary EFT files will be placed to allow a second EFT Manager application to route the check tender to a different host switch
ERR.DAT	ScanMaster cashier error database file
FILECHEK.DAT	Generated by the GROCERY /FILECHECK command to verify the correct data files are in place to support the register configuration
FILEIN	Logo to print on receipt

FILEOUT	Final Logo File which gets transmitted to the printer
FRQDISC.DAT	Frequent shopper discount table
G3700726.BOM	NCR LPIN Number for the software loaded
GR2DEPT.BTR	Btrieve Department File
GRCDISP.MSG	Cashier prompts
GRCSFUPD.ASC	Defines the files that are considered for update
KBDDEPT.DAT	Department key layout
KBDXLAT.DAT	Keyboard layout
KEYPRIME.DAT	Required if Record Mode is active. (Created during record mode to be used by playback mode).
LANDRIVE.DAT	Network Drive Letter
LVLDESC.DAT	Descriptions of each customer level
MEDIACFG.DAT	Media Configuration File
MEDIACFG.TMP	Template for Media Configuration File
MEDIADSC.DAT	Tender descriptions
NCR.DAT	Flag file to specify ScanMaster is running NCR hardware.
NCR7156.LGO	NCR flag file to print a logo
OVRDREAS.DAT	Price override reasons codes
POMAP.DAT	All available paidouts on flip charts at POS workstations
PRESET.DAT	Department key UPC preset codes
RAMDRIVE.DAT	RAMdisk drive letter file
RANDOM.DAT	Local File containing the number of random winner coupons that are currently issued
REGTIME.BAT	Server/Workstation Time Synchronization batch file (**Note:** If the name of the server is something other than SERVER, this file must be edited to path to the correct server name).
REPRTDSC.DAT	Available Reports Descriptor File
REGSTART.DAT	File used to pass the Grocery.exe parameters within a Windows POS Workstation environment (See REGSTART.DAT below)
RLAUNCH2.EXE	Register Launch Program (used in conjunction with REGSTART.DAT)
RTRNEAS.DAT	Item return reason codes
SMCIDPIC.DAT	Manually created file to place a logo on the CID. (Note: The file contains a single line pathing to the .JPG file).
STATES.DAT	State abbreviations for checks

STATUS.DAT	Available functions appearing under the status key during a sale
TARE.DAT	Scale tare weight codes
TAX1.DAT	Tax table 1
TAX2.DAT	Tax table 2
TAX3.DAT	Tax table 3
TAXCODE.DAT	Receipt tax code for single or multiple tax
TRANCODE.DAT	Transaction counter
TSTATUS.DAT	Available functions appearing under the status flag at total time
VARTARE.DAT	Variable Tare Codes
VOIDREAS.DAT	Item void reason codes
WGROCERY.EXE	ScanMaster Windows executable

<Program File Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES

GR2BUNDL.BTR	Bundle File Maintenance Codes
GRCCLGss.ccc	Check Log (ss represents a sequence number and ccc is a cashier or lane number)
GR2CHARG.BTR	Accounts Receivable Charge File
GR2CHIST.BTR	In-Store Charge History File
GR2CPLNK.BTR	Coupon Link File
GR2CPN.BTR	Receipt Coupon Print File
GR2CPRMO.BTR	CID Promo File
GR2CUST.BTR	Customer File
GR2CUSTX.BTR	Extended Customer File
GR2DEPT.BTR	Department file
GR2DPTRG.BTR	Active Department Totals File (If **Accountability By Lane** is active in Back Office Settings)
GR2DPTTL.BTR	Active Department Totals File (If **Accountability By Cashier** is active in Back Office Settings)
GR2FRATE.BTR	Foreign Currency Exchange Rate File
GR2HOUR.BTR	Hourly Activity Report File
GR2ITEM.BTR	Item File
GR2MDFEE.BTR	Media Fees File

GR2MIX.BTR	Mix and Match File
GR2NCHEK.BTR	Negative Check File
CR2POINT.BTR	Electronic Coupon File
GR2PRICE.BTR	Adjective Price Lookup File
GR2PRS.BTR	Employee file
GR2PRSRG.BTR	Totals Report File (If **Accountability By Lane** is active in Back Office Settings)
GR2PRSTL.BTR	Totals Report File (If **Accountability By Cashier** is active in Back Office Settings)
GR2REGTL.BTR	Register Totals File
GR2RCODE.BTR	Report Code File
GR2POSOP.BTR	Register NCR Security File
GR2RSTCT.BTR	Department Sales Restriction Matrix File
GR2SFUPD.ASC	Defines the files that are considered for update
GR2SFUPD.BTR	Software Update File
GR2SUBD.BTR	Subdepartment File
LOCAL999.BTR	Local Not Found Batch (for Off-Line Mode)
GR2PST*xx*.BTR	Electronic Flip Charts (xx represents the department number)
REGLOG	Register Error Log
REGLOG.XXX	POS workstation error log file
STATIC.DAT	Contains power-fail transaction data
STATIC1.PFL	Contains power-fail transaction data
SUSPEND.DAT	Permits suspended transactions in Offline Mode. Generated by the system.
TLOGINIT.DAT	Temporary POS initialization record
Txxxxxxx.ccc	Electronic Journal Transaction Files (xxxxxxx represents the sequence number and ccc the cashier number)
TLOGxxyy.zzz	Transaction Log File (xx represents the lane, yy the sequence number and ccc the cashier number)

<Program File Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\BLANK

GR2BUNDL.BTR	Blank Bundle Code File
GR2DPTRG.BTR	Blank Department total file for lane accountability
GR2DPTTL.BTR	Blank Department total file for end of day clearing

GR2FRATE.BTR	Blank Foreign Currency File
GR2HOUR.BTR	Blank Hourly Activity File
GR2MDFEE.BTR	Blank Media Fees File
GR2PRICE.BTR	Blank Adjective Price File
GR2PRSRG.BTR	Blank Media Total File for lane accountability
GR2PRSTL.BTR	Blank cashier total file for end of day clearing
GR2REGTL.BTR	Blank backup cashier total file for end of day clearing.

<Program File Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\CTL

GR2BUNDL.CTL	Bundle Code Control File
GR2DPTTL.CTL	Department Total Control File
GR2FRATE.CTL	Foreign Currency Control File
GR2HOUR.CTL	Hourly Activity Control File
GR2ITEM.CTL	Item Control File
GR2MDFEE.CTL	Media Fee Control File
GR2PRICE.CTL	Adjective Price Control File
GR2PRSTL.CTL	Cashier Total Control File
GR2REGTL.CTL	Register Total File

RAMDRIVE DIRECTORY <Program File Drive>:\RAMDRIVE

The files located in the RAMDRIVE directory are created automatically during a transaction and exist temporarily until the transaction is completed.

REGSTART.DAT

The POS Workstations C:\GROCERY\REGSTART.DAT contains the parameters that, in previous versions of ScanMaster , were passed through the GROCERY.EXE line of the Autoexec.bat file. The parameters entered in the REGSTART.DAT file are called whenever ScanMaster is started on the POS Workstation, the parameters set in the REGSTART.DAT file are called (through RLAUNCH.EXE).

Note: Some of these settings are overwritten by the OPOS configuration (where noted below).

/FT

Use the Fujitsu Touch Screen.

/F32

Use the Fujitsu Touch w/TeamKey Keyboard.

/F92

Use the Fujitsu 92R Touch w/TeamKey Keyboard.

/BW

Use color scheme on operator display designed for a black and white monitor.

/REC

Place POS in Sale Record Mode

/PLAY

Place POS in Playback mode

/SCERROR

Send beeps to the Sound Card

Note: You can change the wave file used for the ScanMaster error tone. In Windows XPe enter the **Control Panel**, select **Sounds and Audio Devices**. Click on the Sounds Tab. In Program Events click on Default Beep. Change and play the sounds desired for the error tone. The default beep set here will be used by ScanMaster.

/SCANTYPE:MAGELLAN

Use Magellan Scanner/Scale interface instead of OPOS configured Scanner/Scale

/SCANc

Scanner com port configuration

c = 1-8 (overridden by OPOS configuration)

/SCALEc

Scale Com port

c = 1-8 (overridden by OPOS configuration)

/BANKc:bbbb

Payment Terminal configuration where

c = serial com port 1-8

bbbb = baud rate (default 9600)

/COINc

NCR 2010 Coin Changer configuration

c = serial com port 1-8

/APTc:bbbb

S&H GreenPoints Interface configuration (xiNETix spec 1.05 and prior)

c = serial com port 1-8

bbbb = baud rate (default 9600)

/XINETIXc:bbbb

S&H GreenPoints Interface configuration (xiNETix spec 1.06 and prior)

c = serial com port 1-8

bbbb = baud rate (default 9600)

/NOR

Disable Register Reboot and End of Day

/NOCDISP

Disable communication to 2X20 customer display

/NCR7156

Use NCR 715x thermal printer

/NOSED

Disable the communication of Scanner Enable / Disable commands

/NOPRT

Disable Printer communication/NOSCAN

/NOSCAN

Disable Scanner/Scale communication

/XV

Disable all validation printing

/NOOFFLINE

Disable display of Offline Icon

/JOURNAL

Enable Journal Printer communication

/PAYMENT:(type)

Electronic Payments Interface selection

/PAYMENT:EPI = Universal Payment System Version 2

/PAYMENT:EFT = Universal Payment System Version 2

/PAYMENT:CONCORD = Concord's EFT Manager

/PAYMENT:APT = S&H GreenPoints

/PAYMENT:XINETIX = S&H GreenPoints

/PAYMENT:OPENEPS = MTXEPS OpenEPS API (verified by ScanMaster HASP Security)

/DYNAKEY

Enables NCR DynaKey screen layout. Omit for non-DynaKey.

/DYN800

Enables 12.1″ and DVI (Digital Video Interface) DynaKeys

/D:xx

Restart delay in seconds. Limited to max 99 seconds. Used to fix restart error on slower machines.

/?

Displays setting options in Notepad

ScanMaster Financial Data Flow

At the Register

When the register is online and communicating with the server, data is read from and written to files on the server's shared LAN drive. If the register is not communicating with the server, these files are read from and written to data collect files on the register's local hard drive.

When the register is offline, the files on the local hard drive collect transaction data, and are automatically updated when the register is back online.

Read Only

\GROCERY\FILES**GR2DEPT.BTR** (department file)
\GROCERY\FILES**GR2CPN.BTR** (promotion/coupon file)
\GROCERY\FILES**GR2ITEM.BTR** (item file)
\GROCERY\FILES**GR2RSTCT.BTR** (dept restriction table)
\GROCERY\FILES**GR2NCHEK.BTR** (negative check file)
\GROCERY\FILES**GR2CPLNK.BTR** (coupon link file)
\GROCERY\FILES**GR2CPRMO.BTR** (CID promotion)
\GROCERY\FILES**GR2PST##.BTR** (Electronic flip charts, ## is department number)

Write Only

\GROCERY\FILES**GR2DPTTL.BTR** (dept totals if cashier accountability)
\GROCERY\FILES**GR2DPTRG.BTR** (dept totals if lane accountability)
\GROCERY\FILES**GR2HOUR.BTR** (hourly activity totals)
\GROCERY\FILES**GR2CHIST.BTR** (in-store charge history)

Read and Write

\GROCERY\FILES**GR2CHARG.BTR** (in-store charge log)
\GROCERY\FILES**GR2PRSTL.BTR** (media totals – Cashier Accountability)
\GROCERY\FILES**GR2PRSRG.BTR** (media totals – Lane Accountability)
\GROCERY\FILES**GR2PRS.BTR** (employee file)
\GROCERY\FILES**GR2CUST.BTR** (customer file)
\GROCERY\FILES**GR2POINT.BTR** (electronic coupon file)
\GROCERY\FILES**GR2NCHEK.BTR** (negative check file)

EFT Logs

If the POS Workstation Setting ***DISABLE EFT LOGGING* = N** then EFT logs are kept on the register's local hard drive throughout the day. These files are moved to the server at the End-of-Day.

\GROCERY\FILES**AUTHLOG.rrr** (log of EFT auth records)
\GROCERY\FILES**SNFLOG.rrr** (log of EFT store-and-forward records)

Signature Capture Files

If the POS Workstation Setting option ***ENABLE ELEC SIGNATURE CAPTURE = YES***, tendered media types that have the setting ***SIGNATURE LINE ON SLIP = Y*** will produce TIFF (Tag Image File Format) files containing captured signature data.

```
\GROCERY\FILES\tttttttt.Sxx (Signatuer Capture Files where tttttttt is the
transaction number and xx is the tender number within the sale)
```

For example, if transaction number 01234567 has three tenders: Visa, Cash, MasterCard, the signature for the Visa payment would be 01234567.S01 and the signature for the MasterCard payment would be 01234567.S03.

The TLOG writing routine will **(1)** copy all signature files to the F:\JOURNAL directory for the Electronic Journal Processor to record and **(2)** delete files after successful transfer. These steps will only be taken when the POS is in ONLINE mode. When OFFLINE, the files will neither be copied to the server nor deleted from the local hard drive of the POS.

The Offline Consolidation routine will search for and copy all found signature capture files from the local hard drive of the POS to the server for processing by the Electronic Journal Processor. This file transfer will happen in unison with the existing Electronic Journal TLOG consolidation.

The Electronic Journal will record the filename of the signature file associated with each tender and store the filename in the Electronic Journal database along with the other transactional data. The files will remain on the server but not incorporated into the core Electronic Journal Database.

Electronic Coupons

If the POS Workstation Setting option ***ENABLE UNVRSL MRKTING INTERFACE = YES***, Electronic Coupons issued to the customer are written to the <LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files\UMI folder using the LLTTTTTT.UMI filename (where LL is the lane number and TTTTTT is the transaction number). The file layout is listed below:

Field Name	Field Length (Bytes)	Field Type	Notes
Function Code	1		L = Electronic Coupon
Sequence #	5		
Type	1		1 = UCI 2 = ScanMaster UPC 3 = ScanMaster Mix & Match 4 = ScanMaster Report Code 5 = ScanMaster Bundle Code 6 = ScanMaster Promo Code

Field Name	Field Length (Bytes)	Field Type	Notes
			7 = ScanMaster Department 8 = ScanMaster Total Sale
Lookup Code	20	RJ0	
Status	1		0 = Normal 1 = Void
Discount Sponsor	1		0 = Store 1 = Manufacturer
Department	4	RJ0	
Description	20	LJS	
Qty	2	RJ0	
Amount	6	RJ0	2 Decimal Places (9999.99)
Blank	95	0F	

Field Types: RJ0 (Right-Justified, Zero-Filled), LFS (Left Justified), 0F (Zero-filled)

If an Electronic Coupon is voided, a void Electronic Coupon record is sent through the Universal Marketing Interface (see Status field above).

Electronic Journal

The electronic journal records real time item movement. Each transaction is represented by a separate electronic journal file. The TLOG processor processes the data and makes it available to the Electronic Journal reports.

During each sale

Electronic Journal records are written to the register.

`C:\GROCERY\FILES\Rrrttttt.ccc`

rr = register number

ttttt = transaction number

ccc = cashier number or lane number

At the end of each sale

Electronic Journal files are written to the server.

`<LAN Drive>:\JOURNAL\Trrttttt.ccc`

rr = register number

ttttt = transaction number

ccc = cashier number or lane number

Transaction Logs and Checklogs

Sign On

At Cashier **sign on** for both Cashier accountability and Lane accountability, a transaction log (TLOG) is created on the register's local hard drive and appended to at the end of each transaction during that cashier's session on that register.

`C:\GROCERY\FILES\GRCTLOG.ccc`

ccc = cashier number

A checklog is created on the register's local hard drive and written to at the end of each transaction during that cashier's session on that register:

`C:\GROCERY\FILES\`**`GRCCLOG.ccc`**

ccc = cashier number

After Each Transaction

At the end of each transaction for both Cashier accountability and Lane accountability, the transaction log (TLOG) is moved to the server.

`<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\`**`TLOGrrnn.ccc`**

rr = register number

nn = session number (beginning with 00)

ccc = cashier number

After Sign Off

The checklog (checking account and amount information, also charge information) is moved to the server.

`<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\`**`GRCCLGss.ccc`**

ss = session number (beginning with 00)

ccc = cashier number

If you turn on the Back Office Setting *PRINT CASHIER LOG FILES*, checklog data will be printed on the cashier settlement report. The register writes net totals.

Pickup and Loan Data Flow

Accept

At accept of each Pickup or Loan, media totals are written to the following files.

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2PRSTL.BTR** if using cashier accountability
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2PRSRG.BTR** if using lane accountability

The office record is modified in:
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2STORE.BTR

Transaction Log (TLOG) data is written to the following files.

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**TLOGrrnn.ccc**

rr = back office is always 00

nn = session number (beginning with 01)

ccc = cashier number

Details

Pickup or loan details are written to the **Audit Trail**.

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\ASC**AUDTRAIL.ASC**

SRR Adjustments for the Current Day

Handkeyed Receipt

Handkeyed Receipt totals are written to the following file.

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\SRR**REmmddyy.dat**

mm = month

dd = day

yy = year

The office record is modified in:
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2STORE.BTR

Handkeyed Paidout

Handkeyed Paidout totals are written to the following file:

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\SRR**POmmddyy**.dat

mm = month

dd = day

yy = year

The office record is modified in:
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2STORE.BTR

Note: An audit trail is provided for the SRR. A record will be written to the audit trail file each time a change is made by hand to the SRR.

Handkeyed receipts or paidouts should always be made for the current day.

Mid-Day Deposit Data Flow

When an End-of-Day is activated, the files DEPOSIT.DUN and RECON.DUN are deleted from the <LAN Drive>:\GROCERY directory and some options are grayed-out on the Office Procedures menu. Once all delayed cashiers have been settled, the first available option on the Office Procedures menu is Office Reconciliation. After the Office Reconciliation is performed, the first available option on the Office Procedures menu is Deposits and the RECON.DUN file is created in the <LAN Drive>:\GROCERY directory.

When the RECON.DUN file exists in <LAN Drive>:\GROCERY, the next deposit is the ***final*** deposit that creates a beginning balance for the next day. After the final deposit is performed, all buttons on the Office Procedures menu are available and the DEPOSIT.DUN file is created in the \GROCERY directory.

When both RECON.DUN and DEPOSIT.DUN exist in <LAN Drive>:\GROCERY, all buttons on the Office Procedure menu are available and any deposits performed at this time are considered mid-day deposits.

Office Totals

Office totals are read from the following file.

`<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2STORE.BTR`

Office totals are modified for the appropriate media and a deposit record is written to the Audit Trail.

`<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\ASC\`**`AUDTRAIL.ASC`**

The system writes deposit information to the appropriate totalizers on the **SRR.**

Accounts Receivable Postings

When a payment is made to an in-store charge account, the end of day procedure decreases the oldest balance in the customer history files. This happens only if you run SMWAGE.EXE or do a Month-End.

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2CHIST.BTR**

When a payment is made to an in-store charge account, the end of day procedure decreases the total balance in the Charge File.

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2CHARG.BTR** and increases the office balance in:

The office record is modified in:
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2STORE.BTR

Note: If GRCCHIST.BTR and GR2CHARG.BTR get out of sync, there is a utility to get them back in sync. GR2CHIST.BTR contains each charge transaction and each finance charge record. GR2CHARG.BTR contains the current account balance, account limit, and interest rate.

Office Adjustment Data Flow

At accept

Office Totals are modified in the following file.

The office record is modified in:
`<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2STORE.BTR`

The totalizers in the SRR are written to and modified.

SRR Totalizer #0217 if safe is increased

SRR Totalizer #0218 if safe is decreased

An office adjustment record is written to the **Audit Trail**:

`<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\ASC\`**`AUDTRAIL.ASC`**

Cashier Delay Data Flow

At Accept

Media Totals are moved.

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2PRSTL.BTR** if using cashier accountability
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2PRSRG.BTR** if using lane accountability
TO
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2TILL.BTR**

Department totals are moved.

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2DPTTL.BTR** - cashier accountability
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2DPTRG.BTR** - lane accountability
TO
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2DTILL.BTR**

Cashier TLOGs are moved.

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**TLOGrrnn.ccc**
TO
<LAN Drive>:\TLOG**TLOGrrnn.ccc**

Zero-byte placeholder files are created.

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\ **$LOGrrnn.ccc**

Check Logs are moved.

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GRCCLGss.ccc**
TO
<LAN Drive>:\CHECKLOG\ **GRCCLGss.ccc**

Zero-byte placeholder files are created.

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**$RCCLGnn.ccc**.

Note: Department totals for both settled and delayed cashiers are written to GR2DTILL.BTR.

Cashier Settlement Data Flow

At Accept

Media Totals are moved
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2PRSTL.BTR** - cashier accountability
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2PRSRG.BTR** - lane accountability
TO
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2RECON.BTR**

Department totals are moved
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2DPTTL.BTR** - cashier accountability
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2DPTRG.BTR** - lane accountability
TO
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2DTILL.BTR**

Office Record is Increased
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2STORE.BTR

Cashier TLOGs are Moved
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**TLOGrrnn.ccc**
TO
<LAN Drive>:\TLOG**TLOGrrnn.ccc**

Zero-byte Placeholder Files are Created
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**$LOGrrnn.ccc**.

Check Logs are Moved
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GRCCLGss.ccc**
TO
<LAN Drive>:\CHECKLOG\ **GRCCLGss.ccc**

Zero-byte Placeholder Files are Created
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**\$RCCLGss.ccc**.

A Settlement Record is Written
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\ASC**AUDTRAIL.ASC**

Note: Department totals for both settled and delayed cashiers are written to **GR2DTILL.BTR**.

Adjust Settled Cashiers Data Flow

SM2ADJST.EXE

Adjust Settled Cashier gets settled cashier information from and writes adjustments from the following file.

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2RECON.BTR**

Modifies the Office Safe Totals.

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2STORE.BTR

The Cashier Over/Short and Net Store Over/Short on the SRR are updated.

Updates Cashier Over/Short In Cashier Totals

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2PRSTL.BTR**

Writes both adjusted totals and new complete totals to the audit trail

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\ASC**AUDTRAIL.ASC**

End of Day Data Flow

SM2EOD.EXE

1 – Sets Flag Files

Flags the beginning of the EOD to inhibit the user's ability to access certain back office programs that will be affected during the EOD.

<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files**EOD.BOF**

2 - Copies all of the Batches:

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\HOST → <Program File Drive>:\GROCERY\HOST
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\LOCAL → <Program File Drive>:\GROCERY\LOCAL
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\OFFSALE → <Program File Drive>:\GROCERY\OFFSALE

3 - Copies the register personalization files

<LAN Drive>:\REGFILES → <Program File Drive>:\REGFILES

4 - Copies all Btrieve files

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES → <Program File Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES

5 - Secret Numbers Reset

The cashiers' numbers at the POS workstation are reset. This is not an option.

\GROCERY\FILES**GR2PRS.BTR**

6 – Makes REG Copy of Btrieve Files

Makes an REG copy of the Btrieve data files for the registers. This list will vary depending on the POS Workstation Settings. These files are read to and copied. They are not written to unless the register is offline.

<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files**Gr2prs.reg** (employee file)
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files**Gr2dept.reg** (department file)
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files**Gr2subd.reg** (sub-department file)
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files**Gr2cpn.reg** (promotion/coupon file)
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files**Gr2item.reg** (item file)
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files**Gr2chist.reg** (in-store charge history)
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files**Gr2charg.reg** (instore charge log)
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files**Gr2rstct.reg** (department restriction table)
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files**Gr2nchek.reg** (negative check file)
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files**Gr2cust.reg** (processed customer file)
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files**Gr2pst##.reg** (electronic flip chart ## = dept num)
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files**Gr2cplnk.reg** (coupon link file)
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files**Gr2cprmo.reg** (cid promotion)

7 - Copies Blank Data Collect Files

Copies blank data collect files from the <Program File Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\BLANK directory to <LAN Drive>:\GROCERY FILES on the server. The BTR files will be used to collect totals for the next day's business on the server's F: drive.

<LAN Drive>::\GROCERY\FILES**GR2MVMNT.BTR** (if real time movement is turned on)
<LAN Drive>::\GROCERY\FILES**GR2PRSTL.BTR** (media totals if cashier accountability)
<LAN Drive>::\GROCERY\FILES**GR2PRSRG.BTR** (media totals if lane accountability)

<LAN Drive>::\GROCERY\FILES**GR2DPTTL.BTR** (department totals if cashier accountability)
<LAN Drive>::\GROCERY\FILES**GR2DPTRG.BTR** (department totals if lane accountability)
<LAN Drive>::\GROCERY\FILES**GR2HOUR.BTR** (hourly activity totals)

8 – Writes Register Flag Files

The end-of-day register flag files are written(**EOD.rrr**) to the shared directory for each register on the store system. The system knows which registers to update by reading REG.TBL in the <LAN Drive>:\GROCERY directory.

<LAN Drive>::\Grocery\Files**EOD.001**
<LAN Drive>::\Grocery\Files**EOD.002**
<LAN Drive>::\Grocery\Files**EOD.003**

9 – Updates LASTZ.RUN

Updates <LAN Drive>:\GROCERY**LASTZ.RUN** with the current **time and date**. This file tracks when and how an End-of-Day has been run and is used to prevent running two EODs during the same day.

8 – Runs EOD Script

Runs the end of day script, **SM2EOD.SCR,** which includes the programs below. Each application's dataflow is discussed in more detail in the following section.

SM2CTLOG.EXE

SM2ARC.EXE

SM2CDEPT.EXE

SM2CSHPR.EXE

SM2TLRPT.EXE

SM2NRT.EXE

SM2ACTVT.EXE

SM2BAPLY.EXE (if doing batch activation)

Executables added to end of day script

9 – Deletes End-of-Day Flag

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**EOD.BOF** is the flag that was placed on back office workstations, and the server to inhibit users from obtaining access to programs that are affected by the EOD. This flag is deleted to allow access to programs that are affected by the EOD.

Running the End-of-Day Script

A. SM2CTLOG.EXE

SM2CTLOG.EXE consolidates all of the Transaction Logs (TLOGS) for that day. The files are written to two places – CRTLOG.ASC, and CTMMDDYY.ASC. GRCTLOG.ASC is overwritten at each EOD.

Consolidates TLOGs

```
<LAN Drive>:\Tlog\
            TO
<LAN Drive>:\ Grocery\ Files\ Asc\ Grctlog.Asc
```

Copies Files

```
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files\Asc\Grctlog.Asc
            TO
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files\Asc\Ctmmddyy.Asc
```

mm = month

dd = day

yy = year

Note: GRCTLOG.ASC and CTmmddyy.ASC are identical until the next day's EOD.

B. SM2CDEPT.EXE

SM2CDEPT.EXE processes the daily department totals and updates the weekly department totals.

Processes The Department Totals

```
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files\Gr2dtill.Btr
            To
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files\Drmmddyy.Dat
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files\Drmmddyy.Ccc
```

mm = month
dd = day
yy = year
ccc = cashier

Updates Weekly Department Totals

```
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\DRWEEK.DAT (this week's department sales data)
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\DRLWEEK.DAT (last week's department sales data)
```

C. SM2CSHPR.EXE

SMW2SHPR.EXE compiles the lane and cashier productivity information.

Compiles lane and cashier productivity

```
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\ASC\GR2TLOG.ASC
            TO
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2PROD.BTR
```

D. SM2TLRPT.EXE

SM2TLRPT.EXE consolidates the **Enhanced Department Report** information for the **day, current week, and last week.**

Enhanced Dept Report for the Day

```
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\ASC\GRCTLOG.ASC  (cycles through this file)
                                        TO
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\VDmmddyy.dat  (voids)
                \CRmmddyy.dat  (coupons)
                \DImmddyy.dat  (discounts)
                \DCmmddyy.dat  (department counts)
                \Rtmmddyy.dat  (returns)
```

Enhanced Dept Report For The Current Week

```
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\VDWEEK.dat (voids)
                \CRWEEK.dat  (coupons)
                \DIWEEK.dat  (discounts)
                \DCWEEK.dat  (department counts)
                \RTWEEK.dat  (returns)
```

Enhanced Dept Report Last Week

```
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\VDLWEEK.dat  (voids)
                \CRLWEEK.dat  (coupons)
                \DILWEEK.dat  (discounts)
                \DCLWEEK.dat  (department counts)
                \RTLWEEK.dat   (returns)
```

Coupon Totals

If the following Back Office Settings are set to ***YES,***

ADD DBL MFG COUPONS BACK TO SALES

ADD STORE COUPONS BACK TO SALES

ADD DBL STORE COUPONS BACK TO SALES

then the appropriate coupon totals are added to the following files.

```
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\DRmmddyy.dat
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\DRmmddyy.ccc
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2HOUR.btr
```

Note: The Btrieve data files are *not* altered based on these Back Office Settings.

E. SM2NRT.EXE

SM2NRT.EXE compiles the non-resettable totals for the day.

```
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\ASC\GRCTLOG.ASC
                TO
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2NTGT.BTR (grand totals)
```

Note: Non-resettable totals are by lane. Registers write net sales which include manufacturer coupons not store coupons or multiples.

F. SM2ACTVT.EXE

SM2ACTVT.EXE consolidates the individual cashier records into store records.

`<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2HOUR.BTR`

G. SM2BAPLY.EXE

These applications run only if batch activation is selected.

SMWBAPLY.EXE stages and applies batches that are set up for automatic activation on this date.

H. User Added Applications

Using SM2EOD.SCR

A variety of daily store activities -- automatic batch activation, for example-- can be executed automatically through ScanMaster's End of Day procedure. This is accomplished through ScanMaster's End of Day Script (named SM2EOD.SCR).

The End of Day Script is among numerous tasks performed by ScanMaster when the End of Day routine is performed. It is located at: <LAN Drive>:\Grocery\SM2EOD.SCR.

Through this file, other programs, batch files, or various activities can be added to the End of Day routine.

Note: It is recommended that ***ANY*** items added to the SM2EOD.SCR file should be placed at the end of the file, and before the line containing "SM2ARC". This ensures ScanMaster's basic functions are performed first before any supplementary activities are completed.

Using Microsoft Windows Notepad, DOS Editor or some other ASCII file editor, append SM2EOD.SCR by adding an:

- A Program Executable
- A Batch File

Adding an Executable

Stores may want to run a certain software program during the End of Day routine. This is accomplished by incorporating the program's executable file in the SM2EOD.SCR.

For example, to automatically activate and apply a batch of items, the program executable file for that ScanMaster program is added to SM2EOD.SCR. Those executable SM2BAPLY is placed at the end of the script before SM2ARC.

Note: There is no need to include .EXE on the executable programs. ScanMaster SM2EOD.SCR assumes the command is an executable so the .EXE extension is not needed, but can be used if desired. In addition, you cannot add command line parameters to an executable program within the SM2EOD.SCR file. If you need to do so, place the executable along with the command line parameter(s) in a batch file. (See ***Adding a Batch File*** below.)

The SM2XPORT program can be added to the End of Day Script to automatically export the Customer File, Electronic Coupon File, Item File and Movement File.

You can configure what files are exported in the SM2XPORT program by running the application without any command line options, and then selecting the appropriate reports, and then save. When SM2XPORT is added to the End of Day Script it will process those files saved in the configuration.

The SM2ESL program can be added to the End of Day Script to either append data read from the shared Btrieve (<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files\GR2ESL.BTR) file to the <LAN Drive>:\ESL\ESL.001 file or create a <LAN Drive>:\ESL\ESL.SCR file which will be a complete ScanMaster Item File converted to an ASCII file formatted for the Pricer ESL (Electronic Shelf Label) interface. When added to the SM2EOD.SCR file without parameters, the SM2ESL will read the data from the GR2ESL.BTR file, write it to the <LAN Drive>:\ESL\ESL.001 file and delete the data from the GR2ESL.BTR file. When the command line "/AUTO" is added, the program will create either the initial load file <LAN Drive>:\ESL\ESL.SCR before deleting the data from the GR2ESL.BTR file.

Note: The installation and upgrade process determines if the ESL service is authorized on the Hasp and is also turned on in the system configuration (Back Office Setting "Enable Pricer Interface"). If either of these parameters is false, the installation and upgrade process will uninstall the service.

Please see *Clear Customer Totals* in Chapter 5 of the *ScanMaster 2.03 User Guide* for more information on exporting and clearing customer totals during End-of-Day Processing.

Adding a Batch File

Batch files can also be included in the End of Day Scripts. For example, stores may use a batch file to send movement information to a host during the End of Day procedure.

This is accomplished by creating and saving a batch file -- for example, CALLHOST.BAT -- with the necessary host instructions and then placing that .BAT file line in the SM2EOD.SCR.

This batch file -- and all of its instructions -- runs when it is called during End of Day.

Note: It is **NECESSARY** to include the .BAT file extension when including a batch file in the End of Day script. If this is not done the End of Day script will attempt to run the application with an .EXE. Example: If CALLHOST is placed in the End of Day script file, the End of Day Process will attempt to run CALLHOST.EXE instead of CALLHOST.BAT.

Automatic Batch Activation

One of the most common uses of the ScanMaster End of Day Script is for automatic batch activation. These executables (SM2WAIT and SM2BAPPLY) are placed at the end of the EOD script to activate batches -- sale, off-sale, host, etc. -- that start on the next business day following the End of Day.

End-of-Day Resets Register

As part of the End-of-Day process, each register is reset for the next day's business. A register must be at the CLOSED prompt before the EOD is automatically performed. ScanMaster BackOffice activities, such as the EOD, never interrupt the front-end operation. The End-of-Day process performs the following steps on the POS workstation:

1 – Resets Register Totals

GR2PRS.BTR

Secret Number

Register Number

2– Resets Random Winner

If the store is running a promotion in which random winners are selected to win prizes each day, then the number of random winners is reset to 0.

```
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files\Random.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Random.xxx
```

3 – Copies Blank Files

Copies the blank files from the blank file on the shared LAN drive to the register.

```
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files\Blank\Gr2prstl.btr (Cashier Accountability)
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files\Blank\Gr2prsrg.btr (Lane Accountability)
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files\Blank\Gr2dpttl.btr (Cashier Accountability)
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files\Blank\Gr2dptrg.btr (Lane Accountability)
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files\Blank\Gr2hour.btr (hourly activities totals)
                                          TO
C:\Grocery\Files\Gr2prstl.btr (Cashier Accountability)
C:\Grocery\Files\Gr2prsrg.btr (Lane Accountability)
C:\Grocery\Files\Gr2dpttl.btr (Cashier Accountability)
C:\Grocery\Files\Gr2dptrg.btr (Lane Accountability)
C:\Grocery\Files\Gr2hour.btr (hourly activities totals
```

4 – Copies the Error Log

The local register error log is copied to the shared LAN drive

```
C:\grocery\files\reglog.xxx → <LAN Drive>:\Grocery\files\log\Rlmmddyy.xxx
```

Rl = Register Log

MM = two-digit month

DD = two-digit day

YY = two-digit year

XXX = three-digit register number

5 – Copies And Deletes EFT Logs

If the POS Workstation Setting DISABLE EFT LOGGING = No then EFT logs are kept on the register's local hard drive throughout the day. At the end of day, the files are copied to the server's LAN drive, renamed, and then deleted from the register.

```
C:\Grocery\Files\AuthLog.xxx (authorization log file)
C:\Grocery\Files\SNFLog.xxx (store and forward log file)
                          TO
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files\Log\Almmddyy.xxx (authorization log file)
<LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files\Log\Slmmddyy.xxx (store and forward log file)
```

6 – Copies All Reg Files And Converts Them To Btrieve Files

Copies Btrieve files with the REG extension from the <LAN Drive>:\Grocery\Files directory on the server to the C:\Grocery\Files directory on the register, and changes the extension from REG to BTR.

```
C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2PRS.BTR (employee file)
C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2DEPT.BTR  (department file)
C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2SUBD.BTR (sub-department file)
C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2CPN.BTR (promotion/coupon file)
C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2ITEM.BTR (item file)
```

Note: Before copying GR2ITEM.REG to GR2ITEM.BTR, the register determines if there will be at least 5MB of memory left on the register after the item file is copied. If not, the item file will not be copied and you will get an out of memory error. You will have to free memory at the register to continue.

```
C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2CHIST.BTR  (in-store change history)
C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2HARGE.BTR (in-store charge log)
C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2RSTCT.BTR  (department restriction table)
C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2NCHEK.BTR  (negative check file)
C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2POINT.BTR (processed electronic coupon file and removed
movement)
C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2CUST.BTR (processed customer file and extracted only
account numbers, control codes, and frequent shopper information)
C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2PST##.BTR (electronic flip charts where ## is department
number)
C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2CPLNK.BTR (coupon link file)
C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2CPRMO.BTR (CID promotion)
```

7 – Deletes the End-of-Day flag

The end of day flag file is deleted when the register is updated.

<LAN Drive>:\Update\Eod.xxx

8 – Copies Personalization Files From <LAN Drive>:\Update

Copies all personalization files from the shared directory, <LAN Drive>:\Update, that has the matching extension number of the particular register and renames the files. This list varies depending on which files have been updated since the last end-of-day.

```
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Banner.xxx       →  C:\Grocery\banner.dat
```

```
<LAN Drive>:\Update\BotLink.xxx      →  C:\Grocery\botlink.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\control.xxx      →  C:\Grocery\Control.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Coupon.xxx       →  C:\Grocery\Coupon.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Err.xxx          →  C:\Grocery\Err.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Frqdisc.xxx      →  C:\Grocery\Frqdisc.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Kbddept.xxx      →  C:\Grocery\Kbddept.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Kbdxlat.xxx      →  C:\Grocery\Kbdxlat.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Dynxlat.xxx      →  C:\Grocery\Dynxlat.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Ovrdreas.xxx     →  C:\Grocery\Kbddept.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Preset.xxx       →  C:\Grocery\Preset.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Rtrnreas.xxx     →  C:\Grocery\Rtrnreas.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Tax1.xxx         →  C:\Grocery\Tax1.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Tax2.xxx         →  C:\Grocery\Tax2.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Tax3.xxx         →  C:\Grocery\Tax3.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Taxcode.xxx      →  C:\Grocery\Taxcode.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Tare.xxx         →  C:\Grocery\Tare.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Voidreas.xxx     →  C:\Grocery\Voidreas.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Mediadesc.xxx    →  C:\Grocery\Mediadesc.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\reprtdsc.xxx     →  C:\Grocery\Reprtdsc.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Status.xxx       →  C:\Grocery\Status.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Tstatus.xxx      →  C:\Grocery\Tstatus.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Aptmedia.xxx     →  C:\Grocery\Aptmedia.dat
<LAN Drive>:\Update\Lvldesc.xxx      →  C:\Grocery\Lvldesc.dat
```

9 – Reboots the Workstation

The register will reboot once all of the files have been copied.

End-of-Day Archive

The End-of-Day Archive is executed during the End-of-Day Script. The archiving procedure creates and keeps files for a set number of days. You determine the number of days with the Back Office Setting, ***DAYS OF HIST. ARCHIVES TO SAVE.*** The default setting is 14 days.

SMWARC.EXE:

Archives the following files into history archive (<LAN Drive>:\HISTORY**ssjjjTL.zip**):

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\ASC\GRCTLOG.ASC
\GRCTLOG.OLD
\CTmmddyy.ASC

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GRCCLGss.ccc (individual cashier check logs)
\GR2DPTRG.BTR (department totals for lane accountability)
\GR2PRSRG.BTR (cashier totals for lane accountability)
\GR2DPTTL.BTR (department totals for cashier accountability)
\GR2PRSTL.BTR (cashier totals for cashier accountability)
\GR2DTILL.BTR (department sales data)
\GR2TLDPT.BTR (department totals for the previous day)
\GR2RECON.BTR(cashier & store totals for office reconciliation)
\GR2TILL.BTR (delayed cashier data)
\GR2STORE.BTR (store totals)
\GR2FINAL.BTR (totals after office reconciliation, used for final deposit)
\DRmmddyy.ccc (individual cashier historical department totals)
\DRmmddyy.DAT (daily historical department totals)
\DRWEEK.DAT (weekly historical department totals)
\CRmmddyy.DAT (daily coupon totals)
\CRWEEK.DAT (weekly coupon totals)
\DCmmddyy.DAT (daily department counts)
\DCWEEK.DAT (weekly department counts)
\DImmddyy.DAT (daily discount totals)
\DIWEEK.DAT (weekly discount totals)
\RTmmddyy.DAT (daily return/refund totals)
\RTWEEK.DAT (weekly return/refund totals)
\VDmmddyy.DAT (daily void totals)
\VDWEEK.DAT (weekly void totals)
\ECmmddyy.DAT (electronic coupon totals by department)

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\SRR.**

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\LASTZ.RUN
Provides answer to question, "Did store run 2 EODs during same day?" A record is written to this file at the beginning of an EOD. (You will be cautioned if you are starting the second EOD in a 24-hour period).

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\LOG\EJ.LOG
\EOD.LOG (eod log)
\ERROR.LOG (error log)
\ITRAIL.LOG (item trail)
\SM2ARC.LOG (eod archieve log)
\RLmmddyy.rrr (Register error log; time stamped)
\ALmmddyy.rrr (EFT authorization log)
\SLmmddyy.rrr (EFT store and forward log)

```
<LAN Drive>:\HISTORY\ssjjjTL.ZIP
       ss = last two digits of store number
       jjj = Julian calendar date
```

Archives and Deletes

<LAN Drive>:\TLOG\TLOG*.* (based on days # TLOG to save)

<LAN Drive>:\CHECKLOG\GRCCLGss.ccc

Deletes Place Holders for Tlogs and Checklogs:

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\$RCCLGss.ccc

<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\$LOGrrtttt.ccc

SRR Adjusts Current Day

The store reconciliation report adjusts the day's totals for Handkeyed receipts and paidouts.

Handkeyed Receipt:

The Handkeyed receipt total is written the receipt file for that day's business, and modified in the store totals.

`<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\SRR\REmmddyy.dat`

mm = month

dd = day

yy = year

The Handkeyed receipt total modifies cash or check in the office record.

`<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GRCSTORE.BTR`

Handkeyed Paidout

The Handkeyed paidout total is written to the paidout file for that day's business, and modified in the store totals.

`<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\SRR\POmmddyy.dat`

mm = month

dd = day

yy = year

The Handkeyed paidout total modifies the office record.

`<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GRCSTORE.BTR`

Note: Handkeyed receipts or paidouts for the current day must be recorded in the SRR before office reconciliation.

Office Reconciliation

When an End-of-Day is executed, the files DEPOSIT.DUN and RECON.DUN are deleted from the <LAN Drive>:\GROCERY directory and some options are grayed out on the Office Procedures menu. Once all delayed cashiers have been settled, the first available option on the Office Procedures menu is Office Reconciliation. After the Office Reconciliation is performed, the RECON.DUN file is created in the <LAN Drive>:\GROCERY directory and the first available option on the Office Procedures menu is Deposits.

SM2OFREC.EXE

SM2OFREC.EXE is the application that adjusts the office record in GR2STORE.

`<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2STORE.BTR`

SM2OFREC.EXE then copies and renames the file.

`<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\`**`GR2FINAL.BTR`**

The office reconciliation record is then written to the audit trail.

`<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\ASC\`**`AUDTRAIL.ASC`**

The following file is created, which records the current date and time.

`<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\`**`RECON.DUN`**

Final Deposit

When an End-of-Day is run, the files DEPOSIT.DUN and RECON.DUN are deleted from the <LAN Drive>:\GROCERY directory and some options are grayed out on the Office Procedures menu. Once all delayed cashiers have been settled, the first available option on the Office Procedures menu is Office Reconciliation. After the Office Reconciliation is performed, the first available option on the Office Procedures menu is Deposits and the RECON.DUN file is created in the <LAN Drive>:\GROCERY directory.

When the RECON.DUN file exists in <LAN Drive>:\GROCERY, the next deposit is the final deposit that creates a beginning balance for the next day. After the final deposit is performed, all buttons on the Office Procedures menu are available and the DEPOSIT.DUN file is created in the <LAN Drive>:\GROCERY directory.

When RECON.DUN exist in <LAN Drive>:\GROCERY; but DEPOSIT.DUN does not, all buttons on the Office Procedure menu are grayed out except the Deposit button. The deposit performed at this time is considered the final deposit.

SM2DPSIT.EXE

When the office record is modified by making a final deposit, SM2DPSIT.EXE updates GR2STORE, and creates a new beginning safe record in <LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES**GR2STORE.BTR**

```
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2STORE.BTR
```

The deposit totals are written to the appropriate totalizers in the SRR paidout file for the current day:

```
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\SRR\POmmddyy.DAT
```

The cashier and office totals are moved.

```
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2RECON.BTR
                                  TO
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2FINAL.BTR
```

A backup copy of the department totals is created.

```
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2DTILL.BTR
to
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2TLDPT.BTR
```

A copy of the final deposit is written to the audit trail

```
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES\ASC\AUDTRAIL.ASC
```

A file is created with the current date and time.

```
<LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\DEPOSIT.DUN
```

Archiving Files for End of Day

Overview

Several Back Office Setting questions dealing with archiving files for End of Day processing have been changed. The questions are:

Days of Hist. Archives to Save: Enter the number of days history that must be archived during End of Day. This affects:

- ZIP files in the <LAN Drive>:\History directory
- VD, DS, RT, and CRmmddyy.* in the \Grocery\Files directory.

Weeks of SRR to Save: Enter the number of weeks of SRR that are necessary to archive. This affects:

- All spreadsheet files in the \SRR directory. (\SRR*.DAT)
- DRmmddyy.* in the \Grocery\Files directory.

Note: The DR*.* (Department Sales) files must follow clearing the SRR files because the DR*.* files are used by the SRR.

# of Days of TLOG to Save: Enter the number of days of TLOG that must be archived. This is done by SMWCTLOG.EXE. This affects:

- TLOG.* files in the \TLOG directory.
- CT*.ASC files in the \Grocery\Files\Asc directory

# of Days of EFT log to Save: Enter the number of days of Electronic Funds Transfer communications to archive. (The default is 0 = 60.)

Days Historical Data to Save: Enter the number of days the system will save supplemental department information (for example historical voids and error correct). This information is accumulated through the Enhanced Department Report and the Department Activity Report.

Chapter 5: Btrieve File Manager

Btrieve File Manager

Overview

Btrieve is the database file manager that ScanMaster uses to store and retrieve information for Back Office and Register functions. Btrieve database files carry the .BTR extension.

The Btrieve File Manager for ScanMaster version 2 is now supplied by the Pervasive.SQL v8 that you will install on your system. The files are now Btrieve version 7.x. Although the file sizes don't change with the newest version, the headers have changed.

Pervasive.SQL v8 can read Btrieve versions 5.x, 6.x, and 7.x.

Previous versions of Btrieve cannot read the newest version of Btrieve. You will have to exercise caution when downloading host batches in Btrieve format.

Btrieve commands must be issued from an MS-DOS prompt or from the Windows Desktop using **Start → Run → Browse**. The application to run is called SM2BUTIL.EXE and is located in the <Program Files Drive>:\GROCERY folder. Highlight the file, click on **Open**. If desired, append a command line option (see below) and before clicking **OK**. A windows interface will display for use of this application.

Note: The SM2BUTIL application must be run only on the ScanMaster Server or on a ScanMaster Back Office Workstation.

Command line options include:

```
SM2BUTIL -STAT    [BTR File Name]
SM2BUTIL -CREATE  [BTR File Name] [CTL File Name]
SM2BUTIL -SAVE    [BTR File Name] [ASC File Name]
SM2BUTIL -LOAD    [BTR File Name] [ASC File Name]
SM2BUTIL -RECOVER [BTR File Name] [ASC File Name]
SM2BUTIL -REBUILD [BTR File Name] [CTL File Name]
```

To display the application version number, type:

```
SM2BUTIL -VER
```

To show a simple help file

```
SM2BUTIL -HELP
SM2BUTIL /?
```

Password protected files must be executed from the command line only and carry the additional switch **/O<Owner>** where **<Owner>** is replaced by the user name of the Owner of that file.

SM2BUTIL Windows Interface

The SM2BUTIL application can run in either DOS command mode or as a Windows application. The windows interface screen is shown below. From Windows Explorer, double click on the file <Program Files Drive>:**\GROCERY\SM2BUTIL.EXE** to start this application.

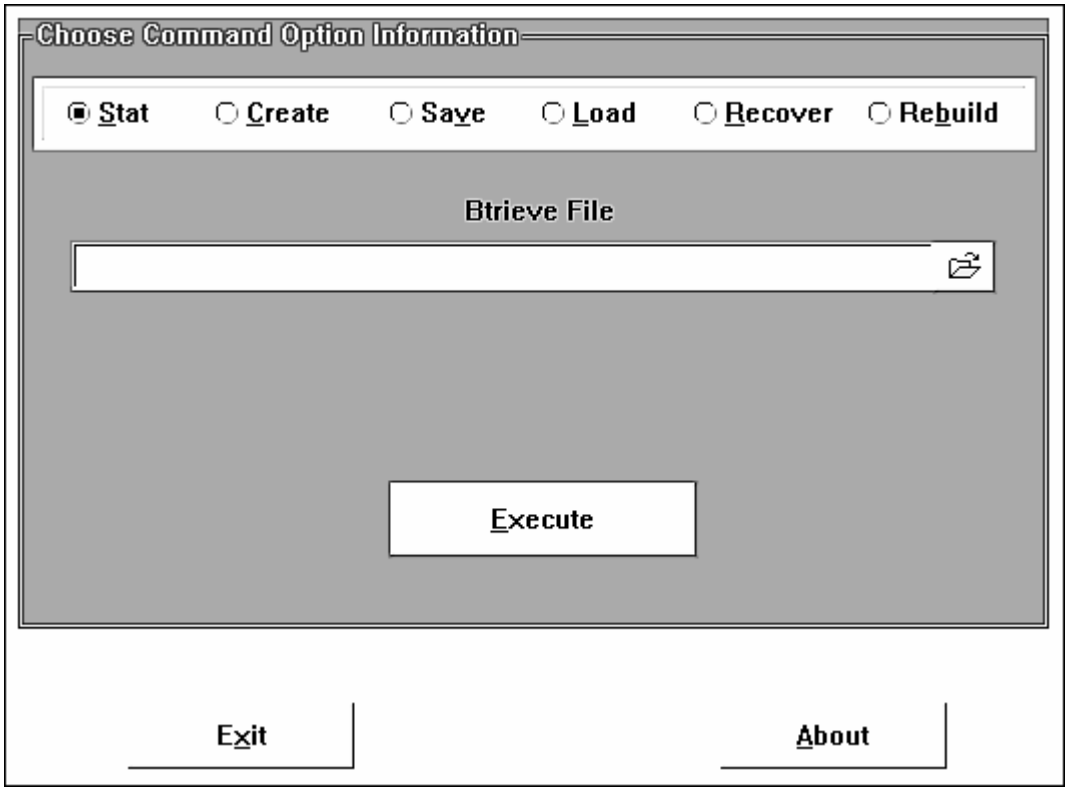


Figure 5 – 1: SM2BUTIL Main Screen

Any one of six potential commands can be executed on named Btrieve, Control, or ASC (text) files. Click the appropriate action desired. The file types change depending on the command option chosen. STAT works only on Btrieve files. SAVE, LOAD, and RECOVER require entry of Btrieve and ASCII files. CREATE and REBUILD require entry of Btrieve and Control File names. The ASCII File prompt replaces the Control File prompt label for SAVE, LOAD, and RECOVER commands.

Click on the Browse Folder icon to the right of the file name box to choose a file. The full file name and path can also be entered directly.

Displaying Btrieve File Statistics

SM2BUTIL -STAT <BTR Filename>

The **STAT** command displays the defined characteristics of a Btrieve file and statistics about its contents. Use **STAT** to determine all the parameters specified for a file produced by the **CREATE** command.

To run **STAT**, enter the command in the format shown above or use the Windows interface by double clicking on **C:\GROCERY\SM2BUTIL.EXE** from Windows NT explorer.

Replace **<BTR Filename>** with the name of an existing Btrieve file for which statistics are to be retrieved. Specify the full path name.

```
SM2BUTIL -STAT GR2POINT.BTR
```

The **STAT** command displayed above retrieves the file statistics for the GR2POINT.BTR file.

Results are displayed in a window with three horizontal regions.

The upper region shows File Statistics such as File Date, Time, Size, Record Length, Page Size, Number of Indexes, Unused Pages, Number of Records, and Preallocates Pages setting.

The middle region shows Key Information such as the Key number, Field Position (starting column) and Length, # of Keys, Data Type, and Flags. The eight possible flags are as follows:

D	**Duplicates** are allowed in this field
M	**Modifiable** allows edits to the contents of this field
N	**Null** marks out bad records – Not used in ScanMaster
A	**Alternate** Collating Sequence Number – Not used in ScanMaster
A or **D**	**Ascending** or **Descending** Sort Order
S	**Supplemental Key** – Dynamically created index – Not used
E	**Extended** – For automatic increment – Not used in ScanMaster
M	M**anual** – Manually entered values not maintained by Btrieve
SEG	**Segmented Key** – Concatenated key (multiple fields) Red – First Segment; Blue – each additional field forming the key **–** (dash) - Means no flag set

The lower region shows Legend information to explain FLAG Settings

Here is a sample screen resulting from the STAT inquiry above.

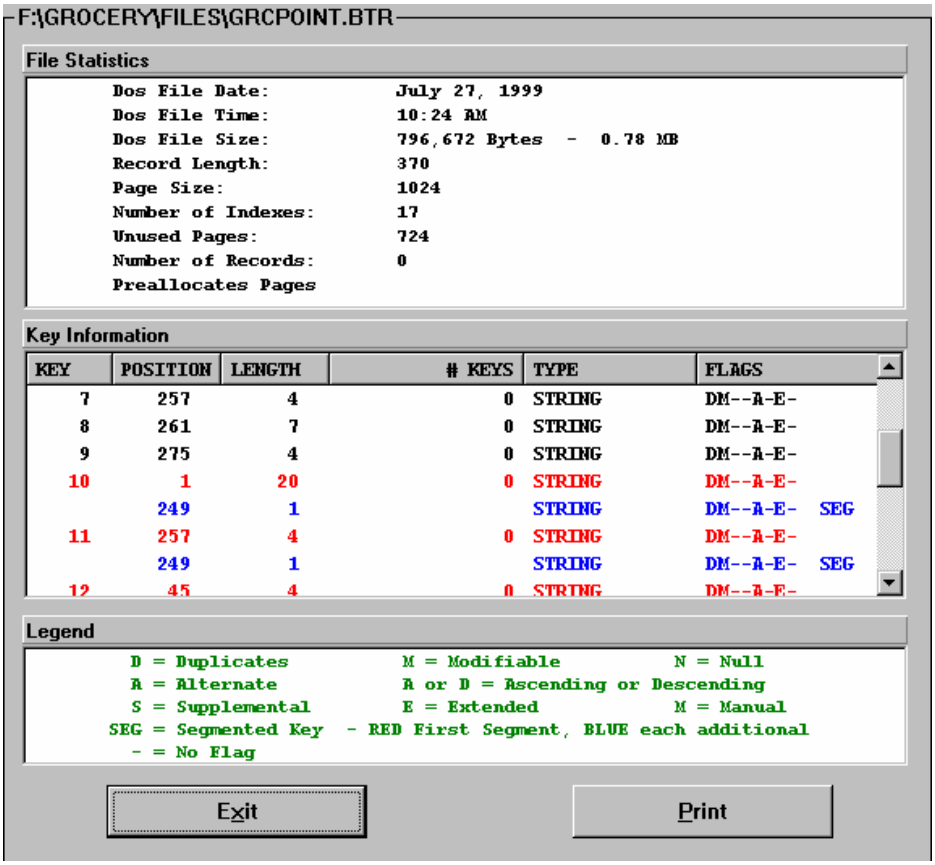


Figure 5-2: SM2BUTIL STAT Screen

Creating a Btrieve File

SM2BUTIL -CREATE <BTR Filename> <CTL File>

The **CREATE** command generates an empty Btrieve file by using the characteristics specified in a description file. If an existing file already contains records, it will ask if you want those records deleted.

Before executing **CREATE**, if one does not already exist, it may be necessary to use a text editor to generate a control file. The <CTL File> must follow standard Btrieve layout definition format.

To run **CREATE**, enter the command in the format shown above or use the Windows interface. Click the **Create** radio button, enter the Btrieve file name to be created, then enter the name of the Control file (CTL) to use to create this Btrieve file.

Replace **<BTR Filename>** with the name of the Btrieve file to be created. Specify a full path name, if necessary.

For **<CTL File>**, substitute the name of the control file containing the Btrieve specifications for the new file. Specify the full path name if necessary. By convention, these files are stored in the C:\GROCERY\FILES\CTL folder.

SM2BUTIL –CREATE C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2DEPT.BTR
C:\GROCERY\FILES\CTL\GR2DEPT.CTL

When using the MS-DOS command line, the **CREATE** command above should be typed on one line. This command builds a new Btrieve file called GR2DEPT.BTR according to the file layout specifications given in the Btrieve specifications file called GR2DEPT.CTL located in the C:\GROCERY\FILES\CTL folder.

Saving Btrieve Records to Another File

SM2BUTIL -SAVE <BTR File> <ASC Filename>

The **SAVE** command retrieves records from a Btrieve file and stores them in a sorted order in a sequential ASCII file. It is the exact inverse of **LOAD**. This command can be used in conjunction with **LOAD**, so the data in a Btrieve file can be easily extracted, edited, and then stored in another Btrieve file.

SAVE generates a single record in the output file for each record in the Btrieve file it is reading. Each record begins with its length and a comma and ends with a carriage return and a line feed (0D0AH). The file terminates with an end-of-file character (1AH). The file is compatible with most text editors. **SAVE** performs no conversion on the data in the records.

After **SAVE** completes its processing, it displays the total number of records saved on the screen.

To run **SAVE**, enter the command in the format shown above or use the Windows interface. Click the **Save** radio button, enter the Btrieve File name, and the ASCII File name.

Replace **<BTR File>** with the name of the Btrieve file containing the records to be saved. Specify a full path name, if necessary.

Replace **<ASC Filename>** with the name of the ASCII file that should contain the records being saved. Specify a full path name, if necessary.

SM2BUTIL –SAVE C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2ITEM.BTR
C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2ITEM.ASC

When using the MS-DOS command line, the **SAVE** command above should be typed on one line. This command saves a Btrieve file called GR2ITEM.BTR to a text file called GR2ITEM.ASC in the C:\GROCERY\FILES folder.

Be sure to use some extension other than .BTR for the ASC file name to avoid overwriting an existing Btrieve file in the \GROCERY\FILES folder.

If the logical drive containing the output file fills up before the entire field is saved, **SAVE** stops, displays the number of records already saved, and then displays the following screen:

Disk volume is full. Enter new file name to continue or to quit, then press Enter.

To continue the operation in another output file, complete one of the following instructions:

To save the Btrieve file to diskette, remove the full diskette and replace it with another formatted diskette.

To save the Btrieve file to a hard disk, specify another logical drive that has space available.

To continue storing records, enter the name of the file that Btrieve is to use and press **Enter**. Btrieve continues to copy records from the Btrieve file to the new output file.

If a logical drive fills up and it is necessary to terminate the **SAVE** operation, type a period (.) and press **Enter**.

SM2BUTIL -LOAD <Btrieve File Name> <ASC File Name>

The LOAD command inserts records from a sequential ASCII file (formatted in Btrieve LOAD format) into an empty Btrieve file. LOAD performs no conversion on the data in the load file. After Btrieve transfers the records, it displays the total number of records loaded.

Create the empty Btrieve file before performing the LOAD or the application will ask you to delete existing records. Without a blank file, the LOAD command cannot continue.

Before running the LOAD command, create a sequential file that contains the new records. Create the file by using either a standard text editor or an application program. When using a text editor to create the LOAD file, be sure to pad each record with as many blank spaces as necessary to fill the record length specified in front of the record. When using an application program to create the **LOAD** file, be sure to append a carriage return and line feed to each record and include an end-of-file record. Follow the required file description format.

To run **LOAD**, enter the command using the format shown above or use the Windows interface. Click on the **Load** radio button then enter the <Input File> into the ASCII File field. Enter the <Btrieve File> name in the Btrieve File field.

Replace **<Btrieve File>** with the name of the Btrieve file into which the records are to be inserted. Specify a full path name if necessary.

Replace **<ASC File Name>** with the name of the ASCII sequential file containing the records to be loaded into the Btrieve file. Specify a full path name if necessary.

```
SM2BUTIL -LOAD C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2DEPT.BTR
C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2DEPT.ASC
```

When using the MS-DOS command line, the LOAD command displayed above should be typed on one line. This command inserts sequential records from the GR2DEPT.ASC text file into the GR2DEPT.BTR file located in the C:\GROCERY\FILES folder.

Recovering a Btrieve File

SM2BUTIL -RECOVER <BTR File> <Output File>

The **RECOVER** command reads records from a specified Btrieve file by using Step operations and creates a sequential file in which the data is stored. This sequential file is compatible with the **LOAD** command.

Use **RECOVER** to retrieve data from a damaged Btrieve file. For example, if a file has been damaged due to a system failure that occurred while the file was being accessed, the **RECOVER** command may be able to retrieve many, if not all, of the records in the file. Then use the **LOAD** command to insert the records into a new, undamaged Btrieve file. Also see the **REBUILD** command (next page).

To run **RECOVER**, enter the command by using the format shown above or use the Windows interface. Click on the **Recover** radio button, then enter the **<BTR File>** to be recovered in the Btrieve File Field and the **<Output File>** name in the ASCII File field.

Replace **<BTR File>** with the name of the Btrieve file that is to be recovered. Specify a full path name, if necessary.

Replace **<Output File>** with the name of the ASCII file to which **RECOVER** should store the recovered records. If necessary, specify a full path name.

```
SM2BUTIL -RECOVER C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2DEPT.BTR
C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2DEPT.ASC
```

When using the MS-DOS command line, the **RECOVER** command displayed above should be typed on one line. This command retrieves records from the damaged GR2DEPT.BTR file and saves them into an ASCII formatted file called GR2DEPT.ASC located in the C:\GROCERY\FILES folder. The GR2DEPT.ASC file is properly formatted for execution using the **LOAD** command. See ***Loading Records into a Btrieve File***.

After **RECOVER** retrieves the records, it displays the total number of records recovered.

If the logical drive containing the output file fills up before the entire Btrieve file is recovered, **RECOVER** stops, displays the number of records already recovered, and then displays the following message.

Disk volume is full. Enter new file name to continue or to quit then press Enter.

To continue the operation in another output file, complete one of the following instructions:

When recovering the Btrieve file to diskette, remove the full diskette and replace it with another diskette.

When recovering the Btrieve file to a hard disk, specify another logical drive that has space available.

To continue storing records, enter the name of the file that Btrieve is to use then press **Enter**. Btrieve continues to restore and copy records from the Btrieve file to the new output file.

If a logical drive is full and it is necessary to terminate the **RECOVER** operation, type a period (.) then press **Enter**.

Rebuilding a Btrieve File

SM2BUTIL -REBUILD <BTR File> <Control File>

The **REBUILD** command automates the process of file restoration. It sequentially performs three steps to quickly restore a damaged file:

Execute the **RECOVER** command

Execute the **CREATE** command

Execute the **LOAD** command

For example, if a file has been damaged due to a system failure that occurred while the file was being accessed, the **REBUILD** command may be able to retrieve many, if not all, of the records in the file and restore the file to an operable condition.

To run **REBUILD**, enter the command by using the format shown above or use the Windows interface. Click on the **Rebuild** radio button, then enter the **<BTR File>** to be recovered in the Btrieve File Field and the **<Control File>** name in the Control File field.

Replace **<BTR File>** with the name of the Btrieve file that is to be rebuilt. Specify a full path name, if necessary.

Replace **<Control File>** with the name of the CTL file that defines the proper layout for the undamaged Btrieve file. Specify a full path name.

SM2BUTIL -REBUILD C:\GROCERY\FILES\GR2DEPT.BTR
C:\GROCERY\FILES\CTL\GR2DEPT.CTL

When using the MS-DOS command line, the **REBUILD** command displayed above should be typed on one line. This command rebuilds records in the damaged GR2DEPT.BTR file. The GR2DEPT.CTL file is the properly formatted definition for the file layout.

Pervasive.SQL v8 Utilities

In addition to using the utilities provided with your ScanMaster system, Pervasive.SQL v8 has file utilities that you can use. For more information regarding the use of these utilities, download an electronic copy of the Pervasive.SQL v8 User's Guide on the Pervasive Software website:

http://www.pervasive.com

The document is also located in help files on your computer. To find the User Guide document, select **Start → Programs →Pervasive→ Pervasive.SQL v8 → Documentation→Pervasive.SQL v8.** Expand the Pervasive.SQL User's Guide book icon to see the chapters and their titles.

Pervasive.SQL v8 Status Codes and Messages

Pervasive.SQL v8 status codes and messages may be displayed during installation, while using the utilities, or while using an application. You can obtain a complete listing of Pervasie.SQL v8 Status Codes and Messages on the Pervasive web site:

http://www.pervasive.com

The documents are also located in help files on your computer. To find the Status Codes and Messages documents, select **Start → Programs →Pervasive→ Pervasive.SQL v8 → Documentation→Pervasive.SQL v8.** Expand the Status Codes and Messages book icon to see the chapters and their titles.

Status Codes

Pervasive.SQL v8 Status Codes are returned to an application making a Pervasive.SQL interface call. The application determines if the status code is displayed to the user. Applications will often display status codes in addition to helpful messages about a problem that has occurred. For more information regarding Pervasive.SQL v8 Status Codes, obtain an electronic copy from their web site stated above.

Messages

Pervasive.SQL v8 Messages are returned to end-users by utilities or specific components and generally begin with a prefix or number. For more information regarding Pervasive.SQL v8 Messages, obtain an electronic copy from their web site stated above.

Chapter 6: Recovery Procedures

Recovery Procedures

Hardware redundancy provides extra protection for files in the event of system failure. When redundancy exists, two components must fail before all file access is lost. If a single component fails, action can be taken to maintain an acceptable level of access.

If the network or ScanMaster file server fails, the POS workstations can be switched to run in Off-Line Mode. Ordinarily, the system runs in On-Line Mode, and all look-up requests are directed to the ScanMaster file server. If a POS workstation is in Off-Line Mode, all look-up requests are directed to the resident files located on the hard drive of the POS workstation.

Switching POS Workstations to Off-Line Mode

The Network Has Failed

If the ScanMaster file server loses communications with the ScanMaster Back Office Workstation and the POS workstations, the system automatically resets to run in Off-line mode. All POS workstations must be switched to Off-Line Mode until communications are restored. If the ScanMaster Back Office Workstation has problems locating the ScanMaster file server, the ScanMaster Back Office Workstation may require restarting when the ScanMaster file server is restored.

If the network is down (the cashier is in the middle of a sale)
Follow this procedure.

The cashier display on the POS workstation displays the following message:

```
.............LAN FAILURE.............
      Press CLEAR to reset the system.

                          GR2ITEM.BTR STATUS=3111
```

The cashier must respond to the prompt in order to take the POS workstation to Off-Line Mode.

Press **CLEAR** in response to the message.

The POS workstation displays the following message:

```
      Please wait while system resets.
```

The POS workstation automatically restarts in Off-Line Mode.

The network icon (the word NET with a red circle and slash over it) will appear in the upper right-hand corner of the screen. The cashier will be required to sign back on. If communications were lost in the middle of a transaction, the register will return to that sale after Sign On. The cashier can complete the sale started before the network and file ScanMaster Server went down. Data from the sale is written to the hard disk of the POS workstation.

The cashier continues to make sales transactions in Off-Line Mode. When the POS workstation is placed back in On-Line Mode, information entered during Off-Line Mode is automatically transferred to the ScanMaster file server.

If the network is down and POS workstations are inoperable (the cashier is idle and no new sale has been initiated):
Follow these procedures.

1. The cashier tries to sign off.
2. If unsuccessful, proceed to Step 2.
3. Turn the POS workstation off, then power it back up.

   The POS workstation automatically restarts in Off-Line Mode.

Note: A windows networking error message will appear. Press Enter for Yes to "restore this connection next time you log on".

4. If the cashier was unable to sign off before the POS workstation was restarted to the Off-Line Mode, the cashier must sign on again and then sign off, using the same cashier number as was Entered before the POS workstation was restarted in Off-Line Mode.
5. This clears the cashier number from the POS workstation.
6. The cashier must sign back on to the POS workstation once again in order to continue operations in Off-Line Mode.

Note: If Cashier security is enabled, only the 3-digit cashier number is required. The 3-digit security number is not required in Off-Line Mode.

The cashier can continue to make sales transactions in Off-Line Mode. When the POS workstation returns to On-Line Mode, information Entered during Off-Line Mode is automatically transferred to the ScanMaster file server.

Powering Down the ScanMaster File Server

If it is necessary at any time to manually power off the ScanMaster file server (if the hardware requires service, for example), it is MANDATORY that the network be shut down. This ensures that all currently opened files are closed in an orderly fashion and diminishes the possibility of files being corrupted.

Follow these instructions for each device in order to successfully power down the ScanMaster file server.

POS Workstations

If POS workstation functions are required while the ScanMaster file server is being serviced, it is imperative that the POS workstations be switched to Off-Line Mode to continue store functions.

For more information about switching to Off-Line Mode for ScanMaster file server service, see "***Recovery Procedures: The ScanMaster File Server Requires Service or File Repair is Needed***" which displays next in this chapter.

ScanMaster Back Office Workstation

ScanMaster Back Office workstations are inoperable when the ScanMaster file server is down.

IMPORTANT: It is recommended that ScanMaster Back Office workstations be at the desktop before taking the ScanMaster file server down.

1. Close all open ScanMaster menus and programs and **EXIT to LOGIN**.
2. At the **Security Login –ScanMaster** screen, click the Close (**X**) Box displayed in the far upper right corner of the display.

ScanMaster File Server

Follow this procedure on the file server.

1. Be sure that all POS workstations and ScanMaster Back Office Workstations are logged off. POS workstations can operate in off-line mode as needed.
2. From the **Security Screen –ScanMaster** screen, click the Close (**X**) Box displayed in the far upper right corner.
3. From the Task Bar, click **Start**, **Shut Down** to display the **Shut Down Windows** dialog box.
4. *A dialogue box displays the following choices:*
    - Shut down
    - Restart
    - Close All Programs and Log On as a Different User
1. Select **SHUT DOWN**. Click **OK** to confirm.
2. *The screen displays dialogue boxes that indicate that shutdown is occurring.*
3. When a dialog box displays indicating that it is safe to turn off the computer, power off the ScanMaster file server and monitor. ScanMaster Back office Workstations should also be powered off the same way.

Note: While the ScanMaster Server is unavailable, Electronic Journal files cannot be processed. Also, EFT transactions are processed using the off-line settings of the Media Configuration File.

The ScanMaster File Server Requires Service or File Repair is Needed

If the ScanMaster file server requires service or if a file must be repaired (the network is up and the POS workstations are operating), follow this procedure.

1. Have cashiers close their POS workstations down by signing off.

   *The "**CLOSED**" message displays.*
2. Press the **REPORTS MENU** key or press the UP ARROW if using a DynaKey.

   *The **Reports Menu** options are available.*
3. Select the **UTILITIES** (3) option.

   The Utilities options are available.
4. Select the **CHANGE TO OFFLINE MODE** (9) option. Press **ENTER/YES**. Confirm your choice by pressing **ENTER/YES**.

   The workstation will reset.

Note: When the POS workstation is in Off-Line Mode, the network icon (the word NET with a red circle and slash over it) will appear in the upper right-hand corner of the screen. All look-up requests made at the POS workstation are routed to the resident files on the hard drive of the POS workstation.

1. If cashier security is enabled, the cashier signs on to the POS workstation, using the 3-digit employee number only security number is not required.

The cashier can continue to make sales transactions in Off-Line Mode.

Note: When the POS workstation returns to On-Line Mode, information entered during Off-Line Mode is automatically transferred to the ScanMaster file server.

Power On Sequence – File Server

Follow this procedure for the power on sequence.

1. Power on all equipment physically attached to the file server, such as external modem, monitor, network hub, etc. Then power on the file server.

   Expect to wait about 45 seconds before performing Step 2.

2. When the Windows dialog box screen is displayed prompting login, press **CTRL-ALT-DEL**.

*The **Welcome** Screen displays, displaying the following data fields:*

- **User name:**

  This field displays the name of the last user to log on to this workstation/file server.

- **Password:**

  This is the password associated with the username.

- **Domain:**

  This field indicates the domain name of the ScanMaster file server (STORE) and should not be changed. It appears as the "Log on to: field when the **Options** is chosen from the login screen.

3. Highlight the **User name:** field by using TAB. If no previous username is displayed in the **User name:** data field, enter your username.
4. Use TAB to highlight the **Password:** field.
5. Enter your password in the **Password:** data field and press **Enter**, or just press **Enter** if no password is required.
6. The **Windows desktop** displays.
7. Double-click the ScanMaster icon.
8. The **Security Login –ScanMaster** screen displays.

   The ScanMaster file server is "up."

9. Power on other devices not directly physically attached to the ScanMaster file server, including ScanMaster Back Office Workstations and POS workstations.

   Note: Restore POS workstations to On-Line Mode one POS workstation at a time in order to keep store functionality at peak performance.

   If POS workstations were switched to Off-Line Mode through use of the Utilities' Switch to Off-Line Mode option on the POS workstation keyboard, they must then be switched to On-Line Mode by using the **REPORTS MENU → UTILITIES →CHANGE TO ON-LINE MODE** (6) option.

   For more information about the UTILITIES option on the POS workstations, see "***Recovery Procedures: The ScanMaster File Server Requires Service or File Repair Is Needed***," discussed earlier in this chapter.

Switching back to On-Line Mode

After the ScanMaster file server is powered back up and operating as described in the section ***Power On Sequence – ScanMaster File Server***, switch the POS workstations back to On-Line Mode.

To switch back to On-Line Mode, follow this procedure:

1. Press the REPORTS MENU Key or press the UP ARROW if using a DynaKey.

   *The **Reports Menu** options are available.*

2. Select the **UTILITIES** (3) option.

   The Utilities options are available.

3. Select the **CHANGE TO ON-LINE MODE** (6) option. Press **ENTER/YES**. Confirm your choice by pressing **ENTER/YES**.

   The workstation will reset.

Note: When the POS workstation is back in On-Line Mode, the network icon (the word NET with a red circle and slash over it) will no longer appear in the upper right-hand corner of the screen. Information entered during Off-Line Mode is automatically transferred to the ScanMaster file server if the End-Of-Day procedure was not executed at the off-line POS workstation. Look-up requests made at the POS workstation are routed to the ScanMaster file server.

Setting Up and Initializing Backup

Overview

There are several ways to back up ScanMaster using the Microsoft Windows back-up software that comes with your system. However, you must configure the software to meet your store's needs. Two common ways of backing up ScanMaster include:

- Creating a batch file that runs daily when the End-of-Day routine is initiated.

- Manually backing up the system each day using the User Defined Menu.

Creating a Batch File to Automatically Back Up ScanMaster during EOD

An easy way to back up your system each day is to create a command-line batch file for ScanMaster's End-of-Day routine. Once this line is placed in the routine, it will automatically be performed when an End-of-Day is run.

Add the command line to the End-of-Day routine by editing the **SM2EOD.SCR** file. This file is located at <LAN Drive>:\Grocery. Access a command prompt by selecting **START → RUN →** (type) **CMD→ OK.** Navigate to the LAN Drive (i.e. **<F:>** and press **Enter**). Change directories (i.e. **CD\GROCERY**) Use the edit command (**EDIT SM2EOD.SCR**). The back up command-line should be the last line of the **SM2EOD.SCR** file.

Using the parameters detailed below, you can select which drives and directories you want backed up.

Note: You can only back up directories, not individual files, and you cannot use wildcard characters. Also, a compatible tape must be loaded into the tape drive before the back-up procedure is initiated.

Back-up parameters included in this batch command give you most of the same functionality that is provided in the graphical user interface.

Syntax

Below is the syntax necessary to set up the command line. This should be placed on one line when entered. See the ***Parameters*** section below for an explanation of the different types of switches.

```
ntbackup operation path
[/a][/v][/r][/d "text"][/b][/hc:{on | off}]
[/t {option}][/l "filename"][/e][/tape:{n}]
```

To back up your file server's shared LAN drive (in this case, drive F:), except for "open, shared" files, enter the following line.

```
ntbackup backup f: /d "cdrive" /hc:on /t copy
```

To back up "open, shared" files, first create another directory on the C: drive and copy the open files to this directory before backing up those files.

```
md backup
copy f:\grocery\files\*.Btr c:\backup
```

Parameters

These parameters explain the backup options for your ScanMaster system. Parameters enclosed in [ ] brackets are optional switches. Do not type the [ ] enclosure brackets when you use each of these parameters.

Parameter	Description

Parameter	Description
operation	Specifies the operation, backup.
path	Specifies one or more paths of the directories to be backed up.
/a	Causes backup sets to be added after the last backup set on the tape. When /a is not specified, the program reuses the tape and replaces previous data. When more than one drive is specified but /a is not, the program overwrites the contents of the tape with the information from the first drive selected and then appends the backup sets for the remaining drives.
/v	Verifies the operation.
/r	Restricts access
/d "text"	Specifies a description of the backup contents.
/b	Specifies that the local Registry be backed up.
/hc:on or **/hc:off**	Specifies that hardware compression is on or off.
/t {option}	Specifies the backup type. Option can be one of the following: **Normal** -- All the selected files are backed up and marked as such on the disk. **Copy** -- All the selected files are backed up, but they are not marked as such on the disk. **Incremental** -- Among the selected files, only those that have been modified are backed up and marked as such on the disk. **Differential** -- The selected files that have been modified are backed up, but they are not marked as such on the disk. **Daily** -- Among the selected files, only those that have been modified that same day are backed up, but they are not marked as such on the disk. (This can be useful if you want to take work home and need a quick way to select the files that you worked on that day.)
/l "filename"	Specifies the filename for the backup log.
/e	Specifies that the backup log include exceptions only.

Parameter	Description
/tape:{n}	Specifies the tape drive to which the files should be backed up. N is a number from 0 to 9 that corresponds to the tape drive number listed in the Registry.

Manually Backing Up the System Using the User Defined Menu.

You can manually back up the system each day using the User Defined Menu.

The **User Defined Menu** is the third option on the ScanMaster System Services Menu. Click on that button (or press **Alt-U**) to access the ScanMaster User Defined Menu.

This is a customizable menu that is used at the store-level for specialized DOS applications.

Editing the User-Defined Menu

Since this menu is user-defined, you can customize up to ten options to meet your needs. These options are created in a text editor and are linked to the **SM2XMENU.MNU** file. Below is an example of how to customize this menu.

The store wants to create a DOS Tape Backup of the Grocery File Directory. In order to do this, follow the steps below.

1. Create a .BAT file using a text editor.
2. Enter the commands in the .BAT file should process

Note: Add "SM2XMENU.EXE" to the bottom of the batch file in order to return to the ScanMaster User-Defined Menu.

3. Place the .BAT file in the **<Program Files Drive>:\GROCERY** directory.
4. Link the .BAT file to the User-Defined Menu.

   Using the text editor, edit **SM2XMENU.MNU**. The first two lines are used by the program. Do not edit these two lines. Place a description of the program [TAPE BACKUP] on the third line, then place the .BAT filename directly under the description line.

   SM2XMENU.MNU example:

   Line 1 = **`user-defined programs`**
   Line 2 = **`sm2xmenu.exe`**
   Line 3 = **`TAPE BACKUP`** (This is the program description.)
   Line 4 = **`tape.bat`** (Batch file with extension.)

File Recovery Procedures

Overview

The ScanMaster System Back-Up feature was designed to restore system files in the event of a file server hard drive failure.

If the hard drive on your file server fails, follow the steps below to restore system information saved on a tape back-up.

Note: Remember to back up your system files **each day** to ensure you have a copy of your system's most current data.

Restoring a File Server Using a Tape Back-Up

1. Reload the Windows Operating System (Windows NT or Windows 2000 \2003 Server) for the file server. (Refer to Chapter 2 of the Installing and Support ScanMaster User Guide.)

   Be sure the data has been backed up previously.
   Re-installation of the operation system erases all prior existing data.

2. Re-establish the share of the LAN drive. (Refer to Server Installation steps documented in Chapter 2.)
3. Insert the **Workstation Back-Up** tape in the tape drive.
4. From the Windows NT Task Bar, click **Start → Programs → Administrative Tools (Common) → Backup** to display the **Back-Up** screen.

OR

1. From the Windows 2000\2003 Task Bar, click **Start → Programs → Accessories → System Tools→Backup** to display the **Back-Up** screen.
2. Using Windows NT, open the **Tapes** window, usually located in the lower left corner of the **Backup** window box to display the **Tapes** window.

OR

Using Windows 2000 \2003 Server, click on the **Restore** Tab.

1. Select the line describing the tape contents.
2. Click the check box next to the tape name description.

   A check box indicates the tape has been selected.

3. Using Windows NT, on the tool bar at the top of the **Tapes** window, click **RESTORE** to display the **Restore** information dialog box displays.

OR

Using Windows 2000, on the tool bar at click **Tools** followed by **Options.** Click the **Restore** tab.

1. Using Windows NT, click **OK** to restore system information and to display the **Restore Status** dialog box.

Note: If the **Confirm File Replace** dialog box displays, click on the **YES TO ALL** button to overwrite files on the hard drive.

OR

Using Windows 2000 \ 2003, click the Always replace the file on my computer radio button and click OK.

1. Insert the Data File Back-Up tape.
2. Click the line describing the tape contents.
3. Click the check box next to the tape name description.

   An "X" in the check box indicates the tape has been selected.
4. Using Windows NT, click the RESTORE button, located on the tool bar at the top of the screen to display the Restore information dialog box.

   OR

   Using Windows 2000 \ 2003, on the tool bar click Tools followed by Options. Click the Restore tab.
5. Using Windows NT, click OK to restore system information and to display the Restore Status dialog box.

Note: If the **Confirm File Replace** dialog box displays, click on the **YES TO ALL** button to overwrite files on the hard drive.

OR

Using Windows 2000 \ 2003, click the Always replace the file on my computer radio button and click OK.

1. When the back-up process is complete, click OK.
2. Using Windows NT , from the Menu Bar, click on Operations then select Exit to close the NT Backup program.

OR

Using Windows 2000 \2003, click the click on Job then select Exit.

1. Using Windows Explorer, navigate to the LAN Drive icon, then click on the + sign next to the Backup folder.
2. Select all the displayed files in the right hand pane of the Backup folder. Select all files by clicking on the first file name, holding down the Shift key, then clicking the last file in the right hand pane. Release the shift key when all the files are highlighted.
3. Hold down the CTRL key, then press C to copy all of the selected files to the windows clipboard.

4. Click on the <LAN Drive>:\GROCERY\FILES folder.
   Hold down the CTRL key, then press V to paste all selected files into this folder. If the Confirm File Replace dialog box displays, click YES TO ALL to copy all back-up files to the <LAN Drive:\Grocery\Files folder.
5. From Task Bar, click on Start→Run to display the Run dialog box.
6. In the Open: text box, type: `C:\Grocery\Makeuser.`
   (where C: is the program files drive designation). Click OK to create all default users on the system.
7. Open Windows Explorer, select Tools, Disconnect Network Drive. Click once on the F drive as the Network Drive to highlight it. Click OK to disconnect it.
8. From the Task Bar, click Start→Settings→Control Panel to display the Control Panel dialog box.
9. Double-click on the System icon to display the System Properties window.
10. Click the Environment tab, then scroll down the list of "System Variables". (In Windows 2000 \ 2003 systems, click the Advanced tab followed by Environment Variables). Double-click the system variable named "Path" to display the contents of the Path variable in the Value text box.
11. If the phrase below is not included in the value statement, add the following to the Value text box at the bottom of the screen.

    ```
    ;%SystemRoot%\Grocery
    ```

12. Click on the **SET** button and then click **OK**.
13. Close the Control Panel.
14. From the Task Bar, click **Start, Shut Down, Close all programs and log on as a different user** then **OK**. (In Windows 2000 \ 2003 systems, choose "Log Off Administrator").
15. Log back onto the system to activate the above changes.
16. The recovery process is complete.

Chapter 7: Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting

The normal configuration for ScanMaster includes a file server, back office workstation(s), and all POS workstations interconnected by a local area network (LAN). When these devices are working as intended, the system is operating in On-Line Mode. This means that look-up requests initiated at a POS workstation and all data entered at the Back Office Workstation are routed over the network to the file server.

However, if the file server or network fails, the interconnection between the separate devices comprising the ScanMaster system is broken, and network communication between the server, back office PC(s), and POS workstations is no longer possible. When this occurs, the system is operating in Off-Line Mode. When a POS workstation runs in Off-Line Mode, look-up requests are routed to the hard drive of the POS workstation, rather than to the file server.

The file server or network need not be inoperable in order for all POS workstations or a single POS workstation to be switched to Off-Line Mode. Management can switch any or all POS workstations to Off-Line Mode at their discretion by accessing the Reports Menu.

Off-Line Mode

If Communication with the File Server Fails: Switching to Off-Line Mode

If the file server PC loses communications with the back office PC and the POS workstations, the system automatically resets to run in Off-line mode. All POS workstations must be switched to Off-Line Mode until communications are restored. If the back office PC has problems locating the file server PC, the back office PC may require restarting when the file server PC is restored.

If the network is down (the cashier is in the middle of a sale), follow this procedure.

The cashier display on the POS workstation presents the following message:

```
.............LAN FAILURE.............
     Press CLEAR to reset the system.
```

The cashier must respond to the prompt in order to take the POS workstation to Off-Line Mode.

Press **CLEAR**.

The POS workstation displays the following message:

```
     Please wait while system resets.
```

The POS workstation automatically restarts in Off-Line Mode.

The network icon (the word NET with a red circle and slash over it) will appear in the upper right-hand corner of the screen. The cashier will be required to sign back on. If communications were lost in the middle of a transaction, the register will return to that sale after Sign On. The cashier can complete the sale started before the network and the ScanMaster Server went down. Data from the sale is written to the hard disk of the POS workstation.

The cashier continues to make sales transactions in Off-Line Mode. When the POS workstation returns to On-Line Mode, information entered during Off-Line Mode is automatically transferred to the file server PC.

If the network is down: POS workstations are inoperable

If the network goes down and the cashier is idle (no new sale is in progress), follow this procedure:

1. The cashier tries to sign off.
2. If unsuccessful, proceed to Step 2.
3. Turn the POS workstation off, then power it back up.
4. The POS workstation automatically restarts in Off-Line Mode.

Note: A windows networking error message will appear. Press Enter for Yes to "restore this connection next time you log on".

5. If the cashier was unable to sign off before the POS workstation was restarted to the Off-Line Mode, the cashier must sign on again and then sign off, using the same cashier number as was Entered before the POS workstation was restarted in Off-Line Mode.
6. This clears the cashier number from the POS workstation.
7. The cashier must sign back on to the POS workstation once again in order to continue operations in Off-Line Mode.

Note: If Cashier security is enabled, only the 3-digit cashier number is required. The 3-digit security number is not required in Off-Line Mode.

The cashier can continue to make sales transactions in Off-Line Mode. When the POS workstation returns to On-Line Mode, information Entered during Off-Line Mode is automatically transferred to the ScanMaster file server.

If the Network is Up: Switching a POS workstation to Off-Line Mode

At management discretion, it is possible to switch a POS workstation, or all POS workstations, to Off-Line Mode, even if the network and file server are working properly.

To switch a POS workstation to Off-Line Mode, follow this procedure.

1. Close the POS workstation down by pressing the **Sign In/Off** key an entering the logoff ID and security number.

   *The "**CLOSED**" prompt appears in the upper left corner of the cashier display.*
2. Press the **Reports Menu** key (or press the Up Arrow if using a DynaKey).

   *The **Reports Menu** options are available.*
3. Select the **UTILITIES** (3) option.

   The Utilities options are available.
4. Select the **CHANGE TO OFF-LINE MODE** (9) option.

Note: When the POS workstation is in Off-Line Mode, the network icon (the word NET with a red circle and slash over it) will appear in the upper right-hand corner of the screen. All look-up requests made at the POS workstation are routed to the resident files on the hard drive of the POS workstation.

Note: Security numbers are not used during offline mode operation if Cashier Security is enabled.

If the Network is Up: Switching Back to On-Line Mode

To switch back to On-Line Mode:

1. Return the system to the "**CLOSED**" prompt.
2. Press the **Reports Menu** key or press the Up Arrow if using a DynaKey.

   *The **Reports Menu** options are available.*
3. Select the **UTILITIES (3)** option.

   The Utilities options are available.
4. Select the **CHANGE TO ON-LINE MODE (6)** option. Press **ENTER/YES**. Confirm your choice by pressing **ENTER/YES**.

   The workstation will reset.

Note: When the POS workstation is back in On-Line Mode, the word "OFFLINE" no longer appears in the lower left corner of the cashier display. All look-up requests made at the POS workstation are routed to the file server. When a POS workstation returns online from the offline mode, all cashier, store, and PLU information is automatically transferred to the file server.

Corrupt Files

If attempts to access a file continually result in a Btrieve error message, it may indicate that the file has been corrupted. The actions that you take to correct the error depend upon the type of Btrieve message that you receive.

Pervasive.SQL Status Codes and Messages can be obtained from the Pervasive.SQL 2000 Documentation. To access the documentation, follow the steps below.

1. Start → Programs → Pervasive → Pervasive.SQL 2000 → Documentation → Pervasive.SQL 2000 Documentation.
2. Select **Status Codes and Messages** from the Help Topics Contents Menu and click **Open**.

Corrupt Executables

If an executable (a routine ending in the extension .EXE) becomes corrupted, it must be rewritten. Contact ScanMaster Support personnel.

The circumstances under which an executable may be corrupted appear later in this section.

Determining the Characteristics of a File

Pervasive.SQL Status Codes such as ***1: The operation parameter is invalid*** *and* ***2: The application encountered an I/O error*** may indicate that a parameter, position block, key value, or another characteristic associated with a file is invalid.

Upon receiving these messages, execute the **SM2BUTIL STAT** command for the file that you are trying to access. If you continue to receive a Btrieve error message, you may have to use the **CREATE**, **LOAD** or **RECOVER** commands to rebuild and reload the file.

Recreating the Corrupted File

Pervasive.SQL Status Codes such as ***3: The file is not open*** *and* ***12: The MicroKernel cannot find the specified file*** may indicate that the file has been accidentally deleted or does not exist.

After first assuring that you have specified the correct filename and are still receiving the Btrieve error message, execute the **SM2BUTIL CREATE** command. This command creates a new Btrieve file, using the characteristics that you specify for it.

Recovering a Corrupted File

Pervasive.SQL Status Codes such as ***14: The MicroKernel cannot create or open the pre-image file*** may indicate that the file has been damaged.

If you are certain that you have the access rights to the file and that the disk is not full, execute the **SM2BUTIL RECOVER** command. The **SM2BUTIL RECOVER** command reads records from a specified Btrieve file and creates a new Btrieve file. After records are recovered, you then load them into the new Btrieve file through use of the **LOAD** command.

The **SM2BUTIL RECOVER** command can be used to recover the records of a corrupted Person, Employee, or Customer File.

Btrieve commands are described in detail in ***Chapter Five – Btrieve File Manager***.

Responding to a Full-Disk Condition

To respond to Pervasive.SQL Status Code ***18: The disk is full***, first attempt a restart of the system. Don't restart on the hard drive. Instead, check disk space at DOS and optimize where possible.

If you continue to receive this Pervasive.SQL Status Code after restarting the system, you must free up memory on the disk. If this is a recurring problem, you may wish to investigate why the disk is filling.

Pervasive.SQL Status Codes ***14: The MicroKernel cannot create or open the pre-image file***, ***15: The application encountered an I/O error during pre-imaging***, and ***25: The application cannot create the specified file*** also may indicate a full-disk condition.

Program Errors

Pervasive.SQL Status Codes such as ***21: The key buffer parameter is too short***, ***30: The specified file is not a MicroKernel file***, and ***48: Alternate collating sequence definition is invalid*** indicate an error in the program. An executable may be corrupt. Contact ScanMaster Support personnel.

If an executable file is corrupted, the system may close and return the operator to the NT/WIN2000 Desktop. If this happens, retry the operation. If the same situation occurs, contact ScanMaster Support personnel.

Responding to a Full-Table Condition

Btrieve messages such *as* ***81: The MicroKernel encountered a lock error***, ***86: The file table is full***, and ***87 The handle table is full*** may indicate that a record or table is full. Restart the system to attempt a correction.

Responding to a Locked File Condition

To respond to Btrieve messages such as ***85: The file is locked***, close the file, reopen it (this is done at the Back Office PC under the **System Services Menu**), and repeat the operation.

Conclusion

Because more than one error condition may initiate a Btrieve message, use caution when diagnosing the nature of the problem and applying remedial action.

Refer to the listing of Btrieve status codes and messages in Chapter Five for more information, or contact your ScanMaster support representative if you are unsure about how to proceed with correction.

In most situations, the Btrieve commands **LOAD**, **RECOVER**, **SAVE**, **STAT** and **CREATE** can correct the error. Refer to Chapter Five for more information about Btrieve commands.

Troubleshooting the POS Workstation

Printer problems may be experienced at POS workstations. An error code is listed on the cashier display.

- **Printer Error 126 - Check Printer Paper:** This means the printer is out of paper. Press **CLEAR** to continue when error is corrected.
- **Printer Error 127 - Receipt Motor Jammed.** Press **CLEAR** to continue when error is corrected.
- **Printer Error 131 - No Slip Inserted.** Press **CLEAR** to continue when error is corrected.
- **Printer Error 132 - - Slip Motor Jam.** Press **CLEAR** to continue when error is corrected.
- **Printer Error 135 - Blank Slip Read, No MICR Data Available.** Press **CLEAR** to continue when error is corrected.
- **Printer Error 136 - General MICR Error.** Retry operation usually indicates bad read of MICR Data. Press **CLEAR** to continue the retry operation.
- **Printer Error 137 - Check Printer Lid:** This means the printer lid is open. Press **CLEAR** to continue when error is corrected.

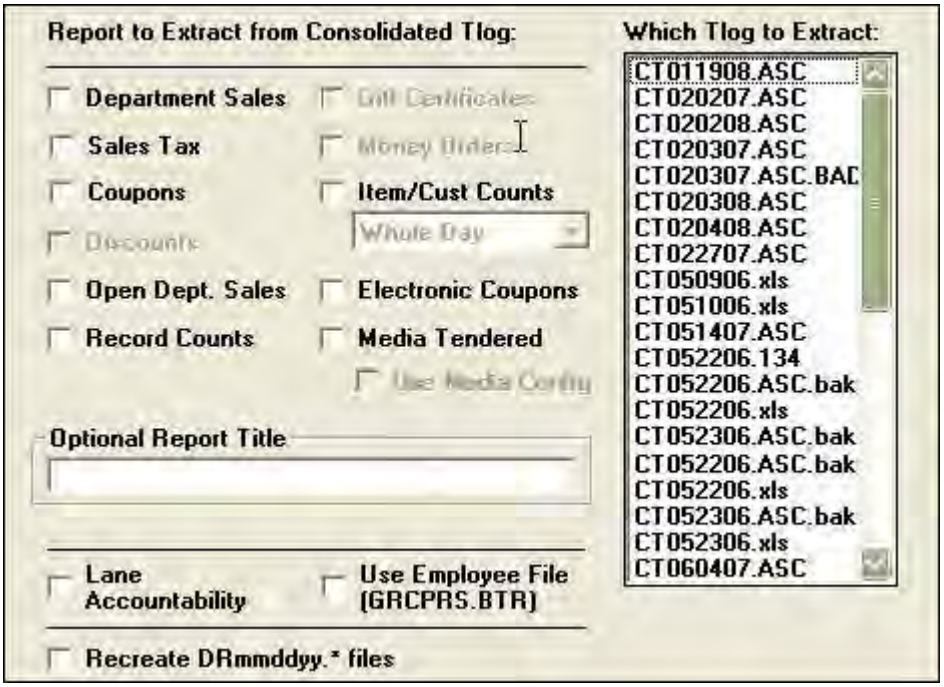
Extracting TLog Files

Overview

ScanMaster has a dealer and support-oriented utility application (**SM2XTRCT.EXE**) to extract information from previously consolidated TLogs when a corruption occurs in a primary data source due to problems in the primary data source dependent tables.

If a primary data source is corrupted during an end-of-day or some other process, this utility can be used as an alternate way to re-create sales information (for department sales, sales tax, coupons, discounts, open department sales, record counts, media tendered, gift certificates, money orders, item/customer counts, or electronic coupons). The utility can help reconcile EOD balancing.

ScanMaster TLog Extract Screen



Using the ScanMaster TLog Extract

This ScanMaster utility can only be run from the Server or Back Office workstation using the executable located at **C:\Grocery\SM2XTRCT.EXE** from a **Run** dialog box or a DOS prompt. Simply type in this executable location and name and press **Enter** to display the ScanMaster TLog Extract screen.

Follow these steps to use the **ScanMaster TLog Extract** utility.

1. Click on the type(s) of data reports (Department Sales, Sales Tax, coupons, discounts, open department sales, record counts, media tendered, gift certificates, money orders, item/customer counts, or electronic coupons) to extract from these historic Tlog files.

2. Select one TLog to extract:
   GRCTLOG.ASC (yesterday) OR
   CTMMDDYY.ASC (older file).
3. Click **PROCESS** to build the report(s).
4. Select **PRINT** from the ASCII file viewer to print the report(s).

Note: When "Media Tendered" is selected, check the "Use Media Config" checkbox to request that the tender descriptions found in the Media Configuration file (and not the hard-coded tender descriptions) be used in the extract report.

Field Descriptions

Below are field descriptions for the ScanMaster TLog Extract application.

Data to Extract from Consolidated Tlog:
Click one or more type(s) of reports desired from the consolidated TLog information. Each report type begins on a separate page. Most reports include store totals as well. Types include:

- **Department Sales:** By cashier, shows total department sales by department.
- **Sales Tax:** By cashier, shows total tax amounts for Tax 1, Tax 2, Tax 3, and Total Tax.
- **Coupons:** By Store coupon and Manufacturer coupon, shows paper-based total face amount, paper-based total double amount, total electronic coupon, and total coupon amounts by cashier.
- **Open Department Sales:** By cashier, shows total open department sales by department.
- **Record counts:** By cashier, shows total voids, error corrects, cancelled transactions, refunds, and returns.
- **Media Tendered:** By media type by cashier, shows the total amount tendered for each type of media.
- **Item / Customer Counts:** By cashier, shows the total item count and the total customer count.
- **Electronic Coupons:** By each electronic coupon redeemed by department, show total amount and grand total.

Which TLog to Extract:
In this window, click one specific TLog file to be extracted. Choose from **`GRCTLOG.ASC`** (the daily TLog file created during the last end of day) or Consolidated TLog files from previous days. Older files are named **`CTMMDDYY.ASC`** where MMDDYY is replaced by numbers for month(MM), day(DD), and year(YY).

Use Employee File (GRCPRS.BTR): Click this checkbox to display the employee name on the report along with the employee number. If this box is unchecked, only the cashier number and the default cashier name will display.

Button Options

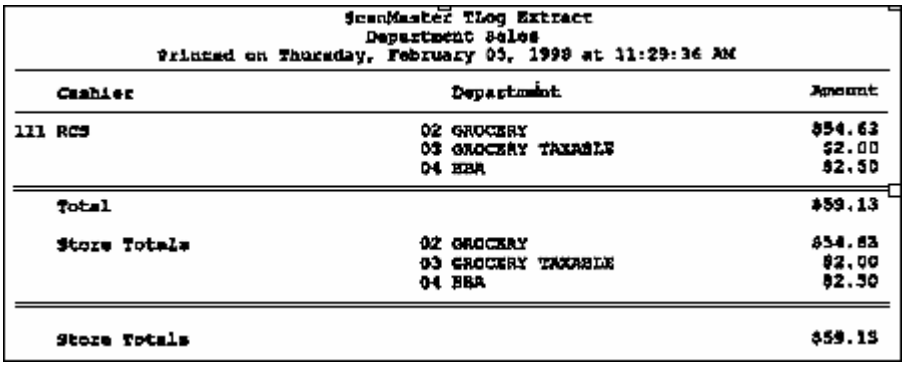
Below are button options for the ScanMaster TLog Extract Screen.

EXIT: Click this button (or press A**lt-X**) to exit to the ScanMaster TLog Extract screen without saving any report information.

PROCESS: Click this button (or press **Alt-P**) to compile data extracted from a consolidated TLog. Once information is processed, click **PRINT** to print a hard copy of the report. Each report chosen begins on a new page.

ABOUT: Click this button (or press **Alt-A**) for software release information about the ScanMaster TLog Extract screen.

Sample ScanMaster TLog Extract Report – Dept. Sales



ScanMaster TLog Extract
Department Sales
Printed on Thursday, February 05, 1998 at 11:29:36 AM

Cashier	Department	Amount
111 RC3	02 GROCERY	$54.63
	03 GROCERY TAXABLE	$2.00
	04 HBA	$2.50
Total		$59.13
Store Totals	02 GROCERY	$54.63
	03 GROCERY TAXABLE	$2.00
	04 HBA	$2.50
Store Totals		$59.13

Optimizing System Performance

Overview

There are several ways to optimize system performance for stores using a server and multiple workstation network configuration for ScanMaster.

- Installing hardware accessories on workstation PCs
- Installing background-processing software on workstation PCs
- Limiting the use of screensavers
- Adding a second LAN card to speed up the network.

Note: It is recommended that the server PC primarily be used to process ScanMaster programs while workstation PCs be used to perform other types of processing duties (for example, electronic journal processor, print server, and host communications).

Installing Hardware Accessories on Workstation PCs

To ensure maximum resource usage for ScanMaster programs, it is recommended that hardware accessories be placed on workstation PCs rather than the server PC. This enables the server PC to run ScanMaster programs without being taxed by other hardware accessories.

Hardware accessories include the following (but are not limited to):

Modems

Printers

Tape backup units

Price verifiers, FM mux boxes, or other ScanMaster-related hardware accessories.

Installing Background Processing Software on Workstation PCs

Software programs that run in the background also tax system resources. It is recommended these software programs be placed on workstation PCs rather than the server PC.

Note: Background processing software should be divided evenly among the server and workstation PC if only one workstation is available.

ScanMaster uses numerous background processing software packages. They include the following (but are not limited to):

ScanMaster Electronic Journal processor

FM Terminal Support

Communication packages (for example, PC Anywhere)

Limiting the Use of Screensavers

Screensavers consume system memory and CPU resources, especially Open GL 3-D screensavers.

It is recommended ***not*** to use OpenGL screensavers. They include the following (but are not limited to):

3D FlowerBox (OpenGL)

3D Flying Objects (OpenGL)

3D Maze (OpenGL)

3D Pipes (OpenGL)

3D Text (OpenGL)

Note: Other (non-OpenGL) screensavers can be used without causing server problems.

Adding a Second LAN Card to Speed up the Network

Optimizing network speed is another way of enhancing ScanMaster's performance. This is especially important in larger stores (with 12 lanes or more).

One way of improving network speed is by installing two network LAN cards in the server PC and two network hubs. This is beneficial for two reasons:

1. It increases the bandwidth and makes the network faster.
2. In case of a LAN card or network hub failure, only the number of lanes attached to that hub would be affected, not the entire network.

Trouble Shooting ScanMaster Balancing Problems

Why are there no Store Totals in the Office Reconciliation?

Did the Store run a double End of Day? This can be checked by viewing **F:\GROCERY\LASTZ.RUN.** If the store did run two End of Days, follow the instructions for reprocessing after two End of Days.

Did they do a Mid-Day Deposit of all the money in the safe? This can be check by viewing **F:\GROCERY\FILES\ASC\AUDTRAIL.OLD**.

Were there server Errors? Check the error logs.

How can I reprocess sales and reproduce reports after I ran two End of Days?

Note: The reprocessing must be done on a lab system. If you follow the procedures in a live store, you will erase all historical and current financial data from the store's system.

1. Gather all files needed from the store that ran the double End of Day.

   F:\GROCERY\FILES\GRCPRS.BTR
   F:\HISTORY\SSJJJTL1.ZIP

2. On the lab system, run **C:\GROCERY\SM2CLR.BAT** from the command prompt or RUN.

   This will clear the system of all financial data to begin the recreation process.

3. **Change the date** on the lab system to the date that you are trying to reprocess.
4. Run an **End of Day**.
5. Do an Office Reconciliation using **Auto → Accept**.

   There should be nothing in the safe.

6. Do a final deposit using **Auto → Accept**.
7. Extract **SM2BCTRL.B**TR from the zipped history file from the store, and place it in the **C:\GROCERY\FILES** directory of your lab system.
8. Create a new directory (name does not matter) and **extract all of the *.BTR and TLrrsss.ccc** files from the zipped history file into this new directory.

   rr = register number
   sss= sequence number
   ccc=cashier number

9. Copy the Btrieve (*.BTR) files to **F:\GROCERY\FILES**.

10. Copy the TLOG (TLrrss.ccc) files to **F:\TLOG**.
11. Change directories to **F:\Grocery\Files**
12. Copy **F:\Grocery\Files\GRCTLDPT.BTR** to **F:\Grocery\Files\GRCDTILL.BTR**
13. Copy **F:\Grocery\Files\GRCFINAL.BTR** to **F:\Grocery\Files\GRCRECON.BTR**
14. Run an **End of Day**.
15. After the End of Day has completed, do the **Office Reconciliation** and **Final Deposits**.
16. Run the **financial reports**.

Why are my handkeyed (0500) paidouts not reporting to the SRR on the correct line?

Each handkeyed paidout needs a general ledger account # of no more than five digits.

If a handkeyed paidout doe not have a general ledger account number, then it's totals from the register will write to Paidouts at the Register (0112) on the SRR.

Why are my Handkeyed (0500) Paidouts reporting to two lines on the SRR?

Each handkeyed paidout must have a unique general ledger account number. If two paidouts have the same general ledger account number, then the paidout total will report to both lines on the SRR.

Why don't the sales in my hourly activity report match my sales on other reports?

The Hourly Activity Report is a productivity and not a balancing report. If a store is 24 hours, the Hourly Activity Report will never match other reports. All balancing reports are based off of settled cashiers. The hourly activity report is based off of hourly sales. If you have a cashier signed on before midnight, but doesn't get settled until the next day, that cashier's totals will skew the hourly activity report.

I can't get my SRR to balance.

First, try to balance the Store Totals Report for the store. If you can't get the store totals report to balance, try to balance the individual cashier reports. If you can't get the store totals and the cashier reports to balance, you will need to gather all balancing files and call global support.

If the Store Totals Report balances, then the problem is in the SRR setup:

1. Print an unhidden copy of the SRR.

2. Compare the totals between the Store Totals Report and the SRR.

   Are any totals missing on the SRR?

3. Add the missing totals, if any, through the SRR Editor.

   Are any Totals on the SRR adding incorrectly?

4. Change their attributes in the SRR editor.

   Are coupons adding to sales?

5. Check your Back Office Settings, SRR setup, and be sure that you are using the correct balancing formula.

What steps can I take to research an individual cashier report that doesn't balance?

Check the register error logs in the history file for any Btrieve errors on the balancing files. You may need to check the history file for the next day. The register copies the register error logs when the register runs the end of day. SM2ARC could possibly run before the register does its end of day.

Run SM2TLOGX to extract the individual cashier's totals from the TLOG then run SM2XTRACT against the cashier's TLOG. Are there any discrepancies?

If the store adds coupons back to sales and the Tlog is missing, the Grand Totals after discount line will be less than the Net Sales figure on the Cashier Report. You would see through SM2XTRACT that the coupon total from the TLOG was less than the coupon total from the cashier report.

Check to see if the store does loans or pickups on cashiers who are not settled on that same business date.

How can I get Cashier Reports from a store without faxing?

1. Have the store run Cashier Reports.
2. Pull back C:\Grocery\Cashier.rpt.
3. Open Cashier.rpt by using Microsoft NotePad.
4. Select Edit → Select All.

   The entire text file will be highlighted.

5. Select Edit → Set Font.
6. Change the Font size to 6 pt and change the font to Courier New.
7. Click OK.
8. Print the file.

How can I get the SRR from a store without faxing?

Option 1

Have the store export an unhidden SRR to a Microsoft Excel Spreadsheet. The Excel spreadsheet can then be emailed.

Option 2

1. Pull-back from F:\Grocery\SRR the following files:

   MEMAP
   POMAP
   REMAP
   Memmddyy.dat
   Pommddyy.dat
   Remmddyy.dat

2. From F:\Grocery\Files, pullback Drmmddyy.dat.
3. Place the files on a lab system and run the SRR report

A

Appendix A: Personalization Survey and Setup Guide

Since each customer using the ScanMaster System has different needs, it was developed with flexibility in mind. Therefore, many user-defined selections were built into the system to help customers meet their needs.

Most of these user-defined features are found under the System Personalization Menu. Selecting the various options in each of these files helps users customize their system.

Customer Survey

Prior to installing the ScanMaster System, a customer survey is conducted to determine that customer's specific needs. This survey deals with the system's various settings. Through it, a proper configuration for that customer is established.

In the event a customer's needs change over the years, system personalization options can change to meet those needs.

Set-Up Preparation

When installing the ScanMaster System, consider the following data when customizing your system.

Item File

- Item File
- Mix & Match Codes
- Flip Charts
- Promotional Coupons
- Bottle Links
- Report Codes
- Tares
- Variable Tares
- Electronic Coupons
- Bundle Codes
- Adjective Prices
- Unit of Measures
- Like Codes

Employee File

- Employee File
- Enhanced Security

Department File

- Department File
- Subdepartment File
- Department Restriction Table
- Group Descriptors

Customer File

- Negative Check File
- Customer File
- Check / Charge Reason Codes
- Frequent Shopper Discount Matrix

Personalization

- System Configuration
- Banner File
- Reason Codes
- Tax Table
- Keyboard Configurator
- Media Configurator
- Foreign Currency Rate Editor
- Tax Code Editor
- SRR Editor
- Communication Parameters
- Customer CRT Promo Editor

Customer Data Sheet

Customer Information

Customer Name: _____

Customer Address: _____

_____

Phone: _____ Fax: _____ Modem: _____

Installation Information

Install Date: _____ Live Date: _____

Training Dates / Hours: _____

_____

_____

Live Support Dates / Hours: _____

_____

_____

Store Information

Please list the appropriate store personnel to contact.

Name	Job Title / Responsibility	Phone

Comments / Requirements

Item File

The Item File can be manually entered, host provided, or possibly derived from an existing system converted into ScanMaster format.

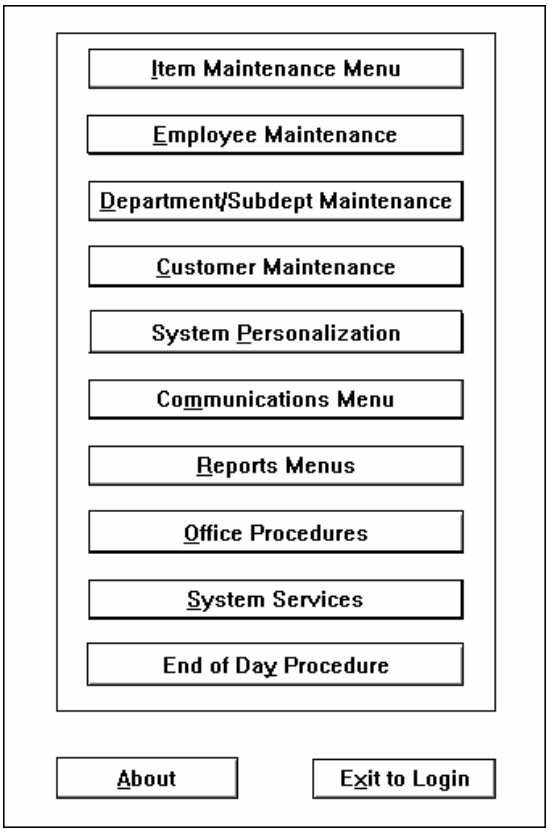


Figure A-1: ScanMaster Item File Menu Screen

Who and when to provide TEST file:_____

Who and when to provide LIVE file: _____

Mix & Match Maintenance

This feature lists all the Mix & Match records on the system and enables the user to perform maintenance on those records. There are nine hundred and ninety-nine (999) Mix & Match records available. The purpose of the Mix & Match file is to permit scanning of different UPCs with the same price to be associated together for split price or limited quantity price breaks (such as Kool-Aid or Jell-O). The Mix & Match file permits a descriptor to be associated with the Mix & Match record.

The Mix & Match pop-up window displays in the item file when the Mix & Match field is accessed. A Mix & Match record may also be created in Direct Item Maintenance.

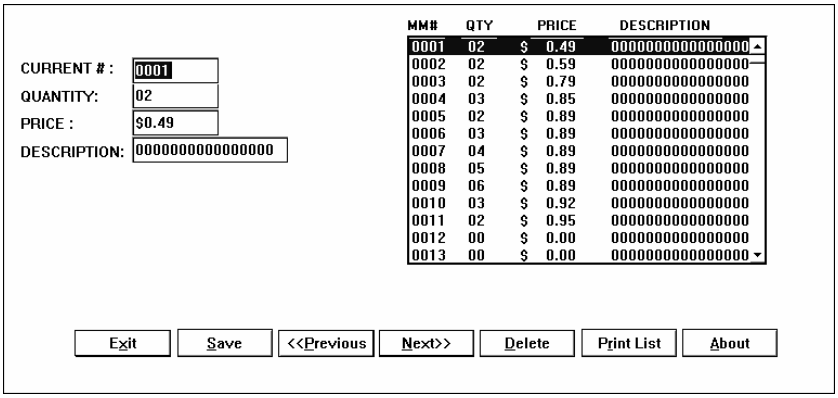


Figure A-2: Mix and Match Record Maintenance

Flip Chart Maintenance

This feature builds the Preset Menus that display store code numbers at the POS workstation. There are two ScanMaster Flip Chart Maintenance screens. The first screen displays a list of available departments. The second screen enables the user to assign look-up codes to the selected department.

From the Flip Chart Maintenance screen, you can select the desired department on which you want to perform flip chart maintenance. Simply click on the desired department and the ScanMaster Flip Chart Maintenance edit screen displays.

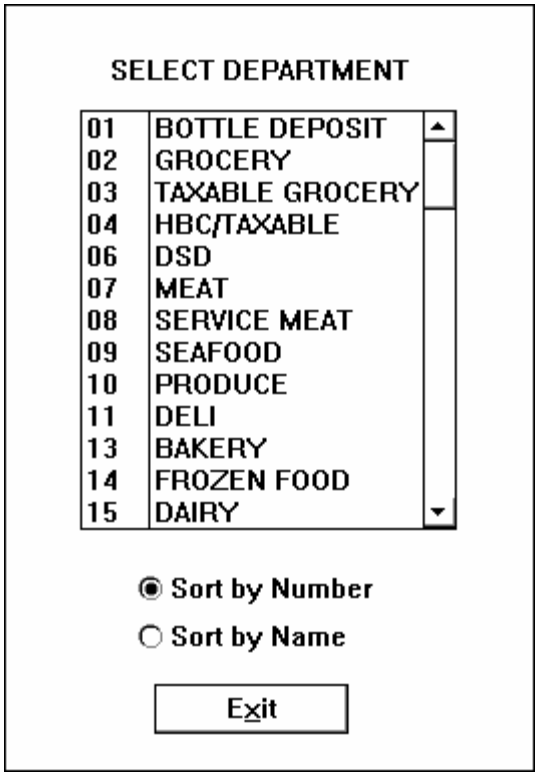


Figure A-3: Flip Chart Maintenance Screen (List)

Promotion / Coupon Editor

Through Promotion/Coupon Editor, you can create or edit coupons (or promotional advertisements) that print at the end of the customer's receipt if the transaction meets the system criteria.

Promotion/Coupons can print by random winner, frequent shopper, over/under total sale, over/under department sale, and by a link to a UPC. There can be up to 9999 promotion/coupons created on the system.

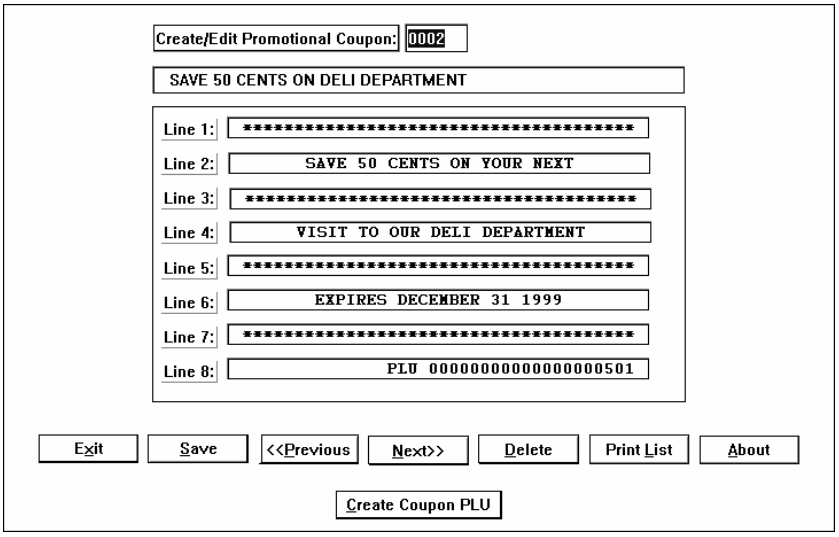


Figure A-4: Promotion/Coupon Editor Screen

Bottle Link Editor

This feature permits the user to link a bottle deposit amount to an item and to different departments. There can be up to ninety-nine (99) bottle links created on the system. The bottle link table can be viewed from the Direct Item Maintenance screen. It is found in the lower left corner above the button options.

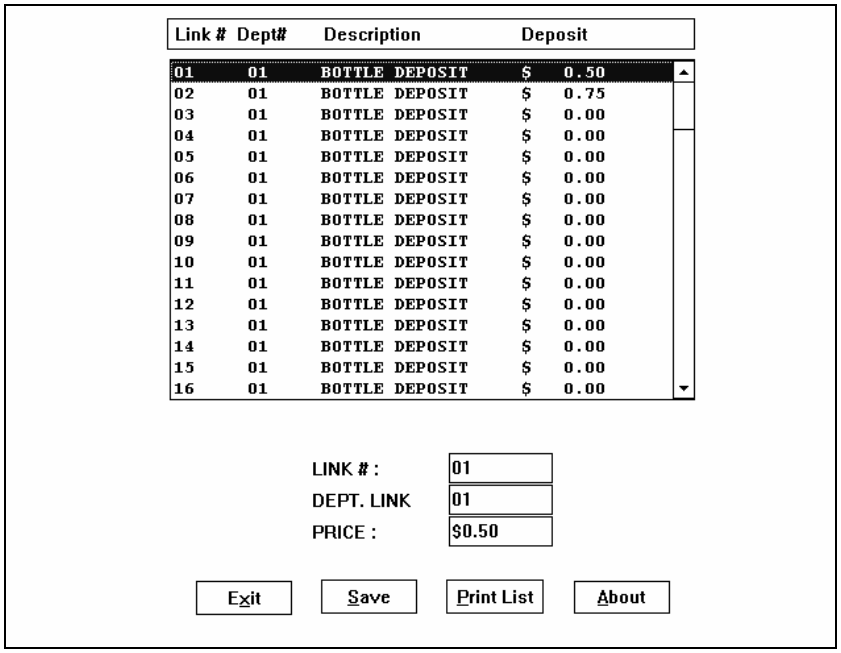


Figure A-5: Bottle Link Maintenance

Report Codes

The report code table associates a descriptor to a report code number. There are ninety-nine report codes available through Item Maintenance. Report codes can be used to group items into specific categories for reporting purposes. For example, all products from Company A can be grouped under a specific report code.

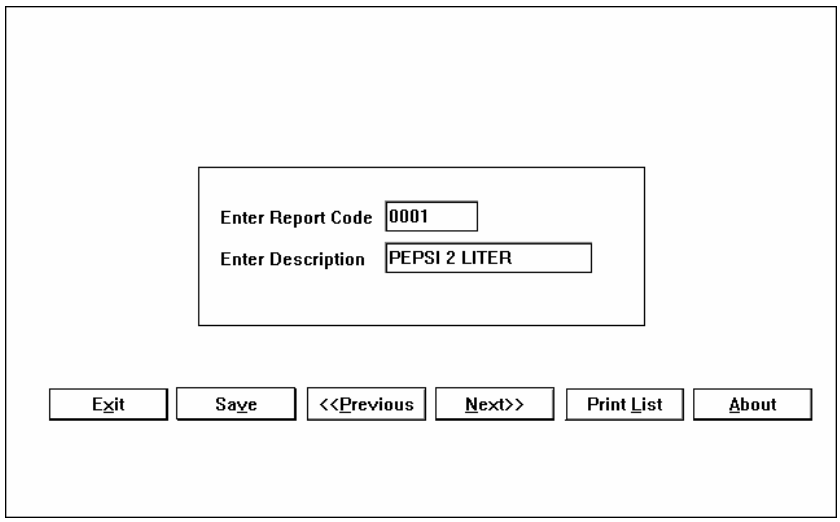


Figure A-6: Reason Code Maintenance Screen

Tare Table

This feature permits you to assign up to 99 associated weight values to specific tare items. Tare items are products that must be weighed to determine their price. The tare value is the weight of the package the product is placed in. Tare codes 1 through 79 are reserved for Fixed Tare Codes, where the weight of the package is consistent regardless of the amount of product purchased. Tare codes 80-98 are reserved for Variable Tare Codes, where the weight of the package varies with the amount of product purchased. An item with a tare code of 99 prompts the cashier to manually enter a tare code.

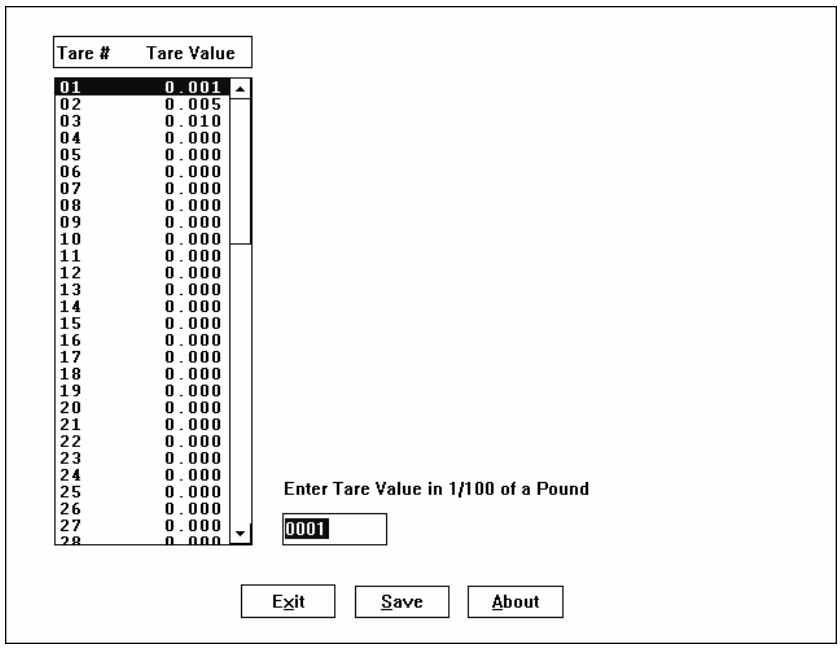


Figure A-7: Fixed Tare Table Maintenance

Variable Tare Tables

If this feature is enabled, the system will support multiple package weights per individual product.

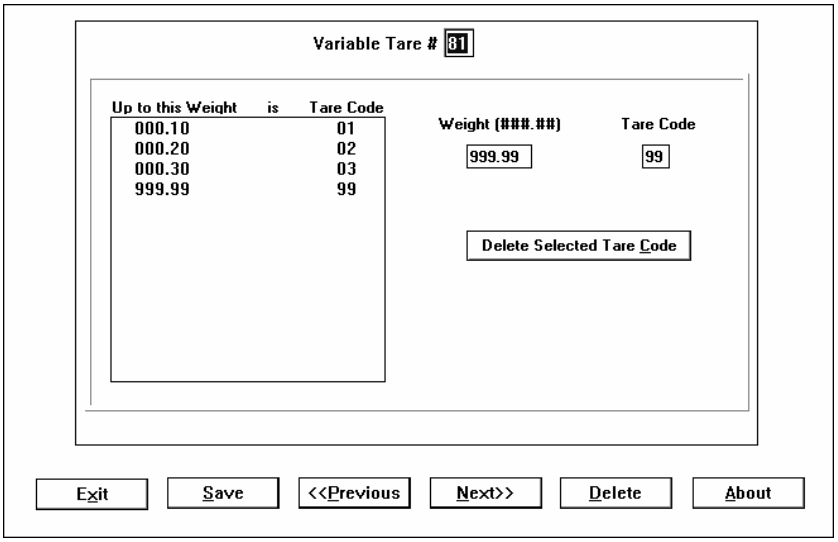


Figure A-8: Variable Tare Table

Electronic Coupon Maintenance

This feature enables stores to generate electronic promotions and provide electronic discounts and frequent shopper benefits.

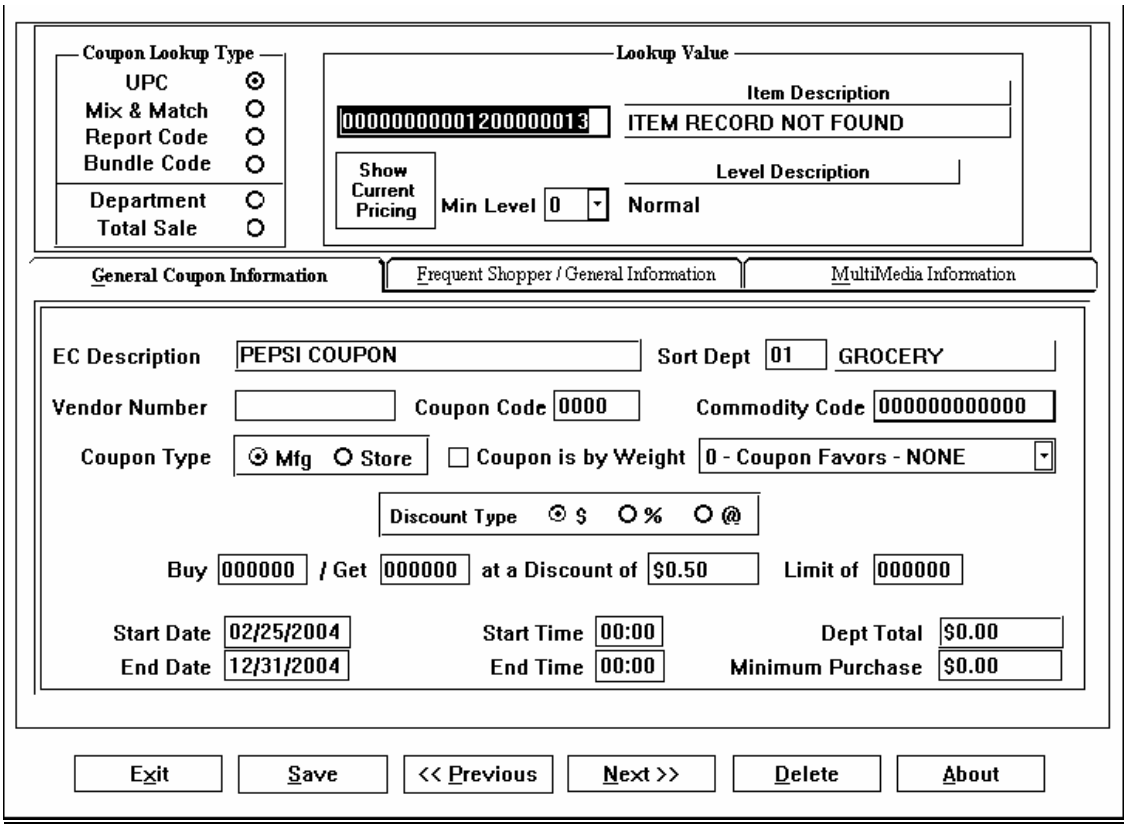


Figure A-9: Electronic Coupon Maintenance Screen

Bundle File Maintenance

This feature enables stores to organize a group of items together in a "bundle" for sale or promotional purposes. Customers get free or discounted item if all items included the bundle are purchased. Up to 99 bundles can be created in ScanMaster. As many as five and as few as two items or groupings can be included in the bundle.

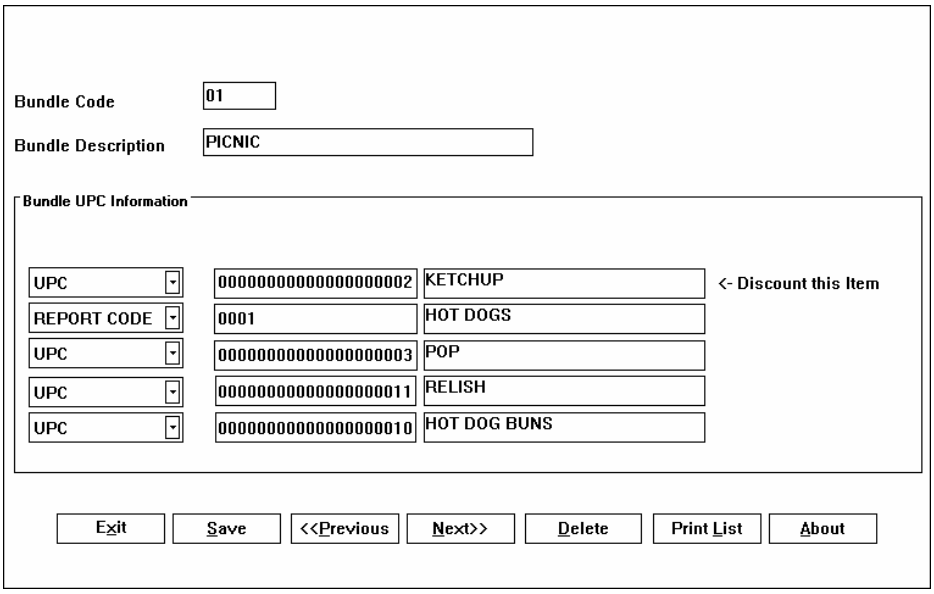


Figure A-10: ScanMaster Bundle Maintenance Screen

Adjective Price Maintenance

Adjective Pricing and Adjective Price Maintenance features are used to configure multiple level pricing for a single UPC. Through adjective price maintenance, stores can use a single UPC to create layers of pricing for an individual product.

There are two ways to configure Adjective pricing. They are:

By Level

By Quantity

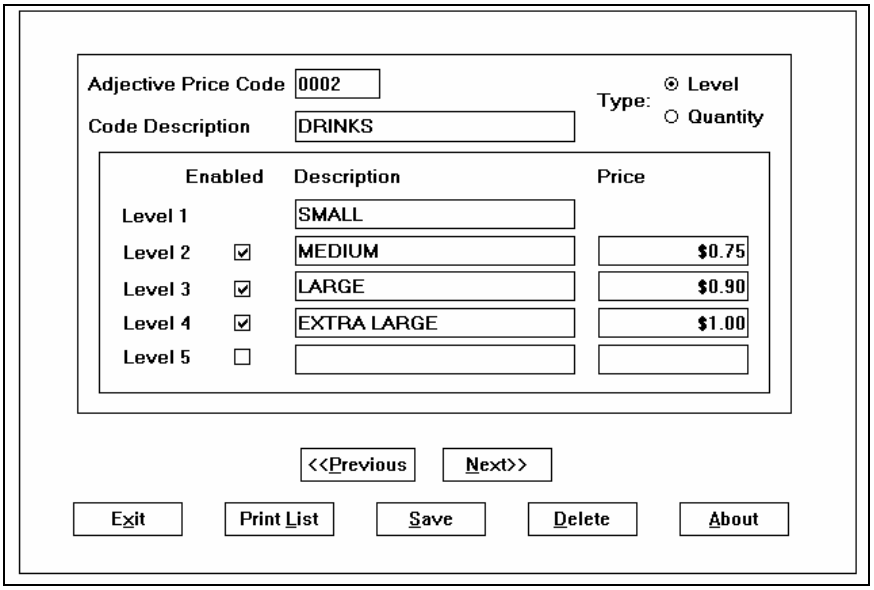


Figure A-11: Adjective Pricing By Level

Unit of Measure Maintenance

An item's Unit of Measure, Unit Size and Price (established in Item Maintenance) are used to print a common unit of measure price on shelf labels as required by some state laws. The Unit of Measure Table (for Tag IDs 1-999) is "pre-built" using the global SIL Unit of Measure Table. These UOMs are fixed and cannot be changed.

User-defined Tag IDs of 1000 and greater may be created in Unit of Measure Maintenance and assigned to the desired unit of measure group.

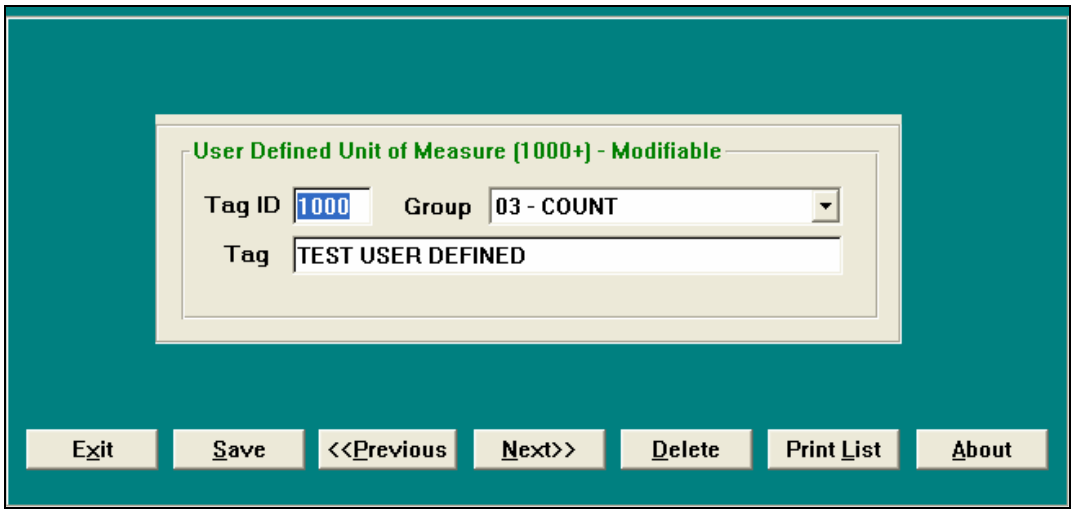


Figure A-12: Unit of Measure Maintenance

Like Code Maintenance

The Like Code Editor holds the pricing codes for identically priced items to facilitate pricing maintenance. Like Codes can either be:

- Established in the Like Code Editor and assigned to your items within Item Maintenance, or
- Established directly within Item Maintenance and added to the Like Code table using the Like Editor's "Auto Add" feature.

Pricing Maintenance using Like Codes can be performed one of three ways:

1. Pricing Maintenance made to a Like Code in the Like Code Editor will automatically update the pricing fields for all items in the Item File that share the same Like Code.
2. Within Direct Item Maintenance, a change made to the pricing fields of an item containing a Like Code will automatically update the pricing fields of those items sharing the same Like Code.
3. Within Batch Maintenance, place one item within batch with a Like Code and perform the pricing maintenance. When the staging process runs, all items sharing that Like Code with be placed within the batch and their pricing fields will be automatically updated to match the first item.

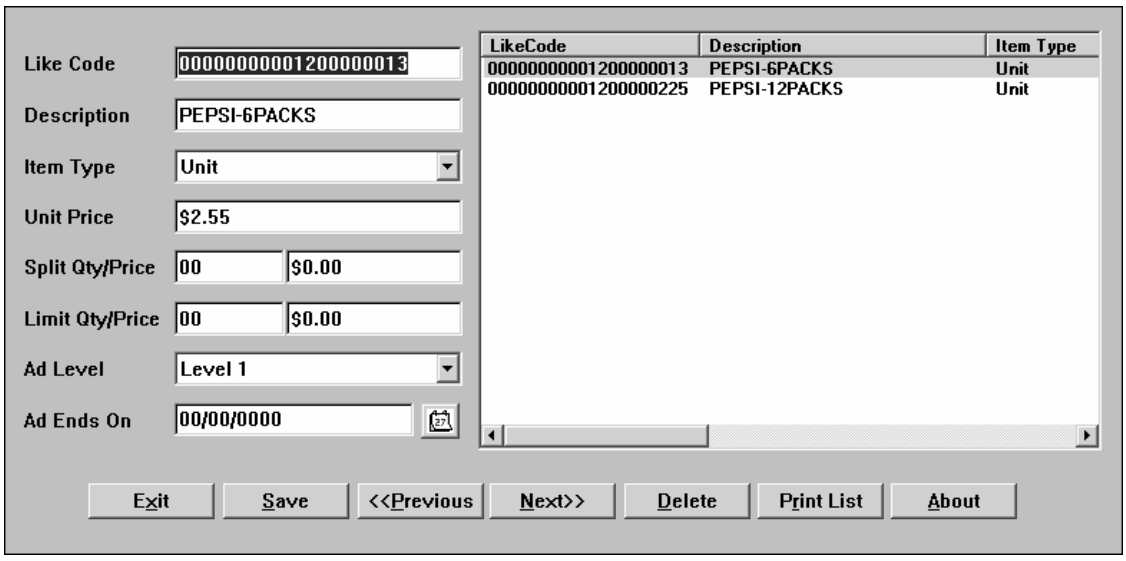


Figure A-12: Unit of Measure Maintenance

Employee File

Employee File options enable you to add, edit, delete, or view the store employee file, as well as monitor cashier activity and force logoff of a cashier. It explains each field associated with employee maintenance, as well as how to generate and interpret a list of all employees and a list of active employees.

Employee Name	Employee Number	Security Level	Birth Date	Employee Password

Enhanced Security

Enhanced Security limits employee access to menu options on the ScanMaster System.

Security is available for each menu item. Main Menu and submenu options are listed below. Use the Enhanced Security worksheet to identify security levels for your employees.

Item Maintenance Menu: Direct Item Maintenance; Create/Edit Batches; Activate Batches; Delete Batches; Print Batches; Mass Attribute Batches; Convert PLU Report to Batch; Mix & Match Maintenance; Flip Chart Maintenance; and Miscellaneous Maintenance.

Employee Maintenance: Employee Maintenance; Active Employee/Lane List; Cashier Monitoring; Force Cashier Logoff; Enhanced Security; and Active Cashier Status Editor.

Department/Subdepartment Maintenance: Department Maintenance; Subdepartment Maintenance; Department Restriction Matrix; and Group Descriptor Maintenance.

Customer Maintenance: Negative Check File Maintenance; Negative Check Report; Customer File Maintenance; Check/Charge Reason Codes; Clear Customer Totals; Customer Report; Frequent Shopper Discount Matrix; and Level Code Maintenance.

System Personalization: System Configuration; Banner File; Reason Code Maintenance; Tax Table Maintenance; Keyboard Configurator; Media Configurator; Foreign Currency Rate Editor; Tax Code Editor; SRR Editor; Communication Parameters; and Customer CRT Promo Editor.

Communications Menu: Call Host; Send PLU File to Host; Get Electronic Coupon File; Send Coupon Submission; and Kronos Communication..

Reports Menu: Financial Report Menu; Item File Reports; Electronic Coupon Reports; Delete Electronic Coupons; Print End-of-Day Reports; Electronic Journal by Transaction; and Electronic Journal by Cashier..

Office Procedures: Pickups and Loans; Cashier Settlement; Delay Cashiers; Office Reconciliation; Deposits; ScanMaster Reconciliation Report; Adjust Settled Cashiers; Active Cashiers List; Media Flash Report; and Office Adjustments.

System Services: View Security Log; View/Delete Suspend/Lock Files; Label Printing; Third Party Menu; Electronic Journal Backup; System Backup; and View/Print Error Logs.

Miscellaneous Maintenance: Promotion/Coupon Editor; Bottle Link Editor; Report Code Editor; Tare Table Maintenance; Variable Tare Maintenance; Electronic Coupon Maintenance; Bundle Code Maintenance; and Adjective Price Maintenance.

Accounts Receivable Menu: Post A/R Payments; Post A/R Finance Charges; A/R Month-End Close; A/R Statement Printing; A/R Aging Report; and A/R Activity Report.

Financial Reports Menu: Department Flash Report; Enhanced Department Report; Department Historical Report; Department Activity Report; Hourly Activity Report; Consolidated TLOG Reports; Summary Audit Trail Reports; Detail Audit Trail Reports; Cashier Report; Lane Productivity Report; and Non-Resettable Totals Report.

Item File Reports Menu: PLU File Reports; PLU Movement Reports; Ad Movement Reports; and Clear Item Movement.

Special Menu Access: Keyboard Configurator; User-Defined Menu; Third Party Menu; and End-of-Day Procedures.

Application Security: View SRR; Print SRR; Export SRR; Edit Handkeyed Totalizers; Edit Imported Totalizers; Edit Customer FS Info; and Allow SIL Configuration.

Enhanced Security Worksheet

Cashier Name: _____

ITEM MAINTENANCE MENU

Direct Item Maint.	_____	Print Batches	_____	Flip Chart Maint.	_____
Create/Edit Batches	_____	Mass Attribute Batches	_____	Misc. Maint Menu	_____
Activate Batches	_____	Convert PLU Report To Batch	_____	reserved	_____
Delete Batches	_____	Mix & Match Maint.	_____	reserved	_____

EMPLOYEE MAINTENANCE

Employee Maint.	_____	Force Cashier Logoff	_____	reserved	_____
Active Cashier List	_____	Enhanced Security	_____	reserved	_____
Employee List	_____	Active Cashier Status Editor	_____	reserved	_____
Cashier Monitoring	_____	Cashier/Lane Messaging	_____	reserved	_____

DEPARTMENT/SUBDEPARTMENT MAINTENANCE

Dept. Maintenance	_____	reserved	_____	reserved	_____
Subdept. Maint.	_____	reserved	_____	reserved	_____
Dept. Restriction Matrix	_____	reserved	_____	reserved	_____
Group Desc. Maint.	_____	reserved	_____	reserved	_____

CUSTOMER MAINTENANCE

Neg. Check File Maint.	_____	Clear Cust. Totals	_____	P.C. Expt/Impt	_____
Negative Check Report	_____	Customer Reports	_____	Level Code Maint	_____
Customer File Maint.	_____	Freq. Shpr. Disc. Matrix	_____	Customer Host Configuration	_____
Check/Chg. Reason Codes	_____	Accounts Rec. Menu	_____	reserved	_____

SYSTEM PERSONALIZATION

System Configuration	_____	Tax Table Maint.	_____	SRR Editor	_____
Reserved	_____	Keyboard Configurator	_____	Comm. Params	_____
Banner File	_____	Media Configurator	_____	CRT Promo Edit	_____
Reason Code Maint.	_____	Tax Code Editor	_____	Foreign Curr. Edit	_____

REPORTS MENU

Electronic Coupon Reports	EJ Reports	reserved
Delete Electronic Coupons	reserved	reserved
APT Coupon Report	reserved	reserved
Print End of Day Reports	reserved	reserved

OFFICE PROCEDURES

Pickups and Loans	Deposits	Media Flash Report
Cashier Settlement	ScanMaster Recon. Report	Office Adjustments
Delay Cashiers	Adjust Settled Cashiers	reserved
Office Reconciliation	Active Cashiers List	reserved

SYSTEM SERVICES

View Security Log	System Back Up	reserved
View/Del. Susp/Lock Files	View/Print Error Logs	reserved
Label Printing	reserved	reserved
Electronic Journal Back Up	reserved	reserved

MISCELLANEOUS MAINTENANCE

Promotion/Coupon Editor	Variable Tare Maintenance	Adj. Price Maint.
Bottle Link Editor	Elec. Coupon Maintenance	Unit of Measure Table
Report Code Editor	reserved	Multi Media Maintenance
Tare Table Maintenance	Bundle Maintenance	Like Code Editor

ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE MENU

Post A/R Payments	A/R Aging Report	reserved
Post A/R Finance Charges	A/R Activity Report	reserved
A/R Month End Close	reserved	reserved
A/R Statement Printing	reserved	reserved

FINANCIAL REPORTS MENU

Department Flash Report		Sum. Audit Trail Reports		Det. Audit Trail Rpt.	
Dept. Historical Report		Cashier Report		Dept. Activity Rpt.	
Hourly Activity Report		Enhanced Dept. Report		Lane Prod. Rpt.	
Consolidated TLOG Report		Non-Resettable Totals		E.C. by Dept Rpt.	

ITEM FILE REPORTS MENU

PLU File Reports		reserved		reserved	
PLU Movement Reports		reserved		reserved	
Ad Movement Reports		reserved		reserved	
Clear Item Movement		reserved		reserved	

SPECIAL MENU ACCESS

reserved		Communication Menu		reserved	
User Defined Menu		reserved		reserved	
Third Party Menu		reserved		reserved	
End of Day Procedures		reserved		reserved	

Application Security

View SRR		Edit Imported Totalizers		reserved	
Print SRR		Edit Customer FS Info		reserved	
Export SRR		Allow SIL Configuration		reserved	
Edit Handkeyed Totalizers (500)		reserved		reserved	

Department File

Through Department Maintenance, you can add, edit, or delete departments and set associated parameters for those departments. There can be up to 99 departments on the ScanMaster System.

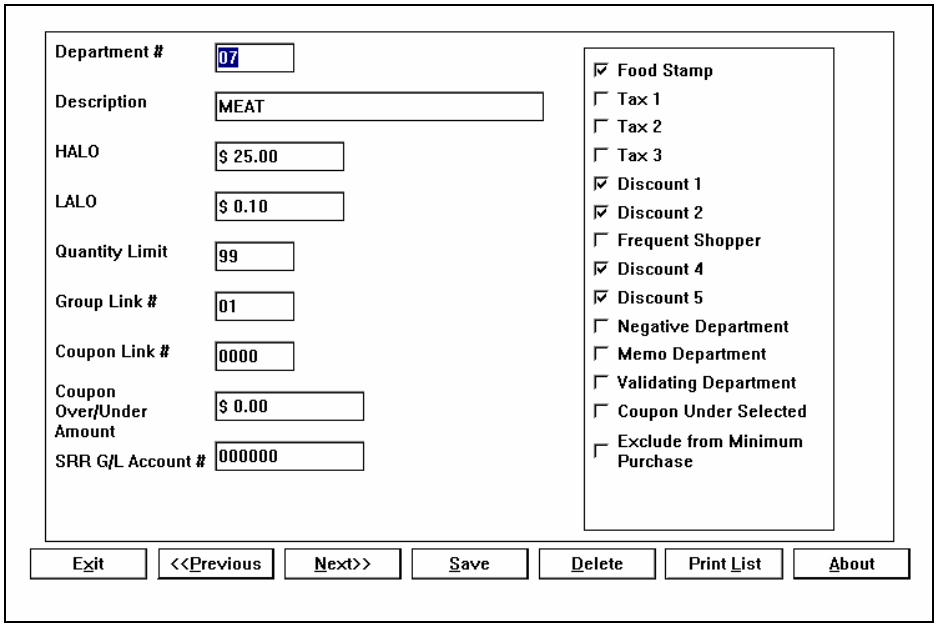


Figure A-12: Department Maintenance Screen

Subdepartment Maintenance

Through Department Maintenance, you can add, edit, or delete subdepartments and set associated parameters for those subdepartments. There can be up to 999 subdepartments on the ScanMaster System.

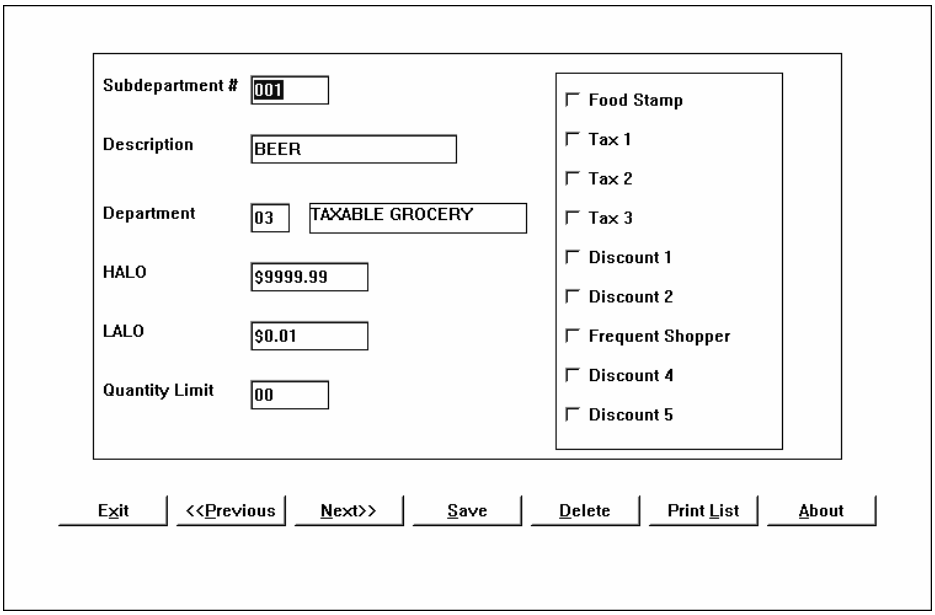


Figure A-13: Subdepartment Maintenance Screen

Department Restriction Matrix

This feature enables restrictions to be placed on specific departments, cashiers and customers. It can be used to restrict the cashier from selling items if the cashier is under age or it can be used to restrict the sale of certain items to customers under a certain age. There can be up to 99 department restrictions on the ScanMaster system.

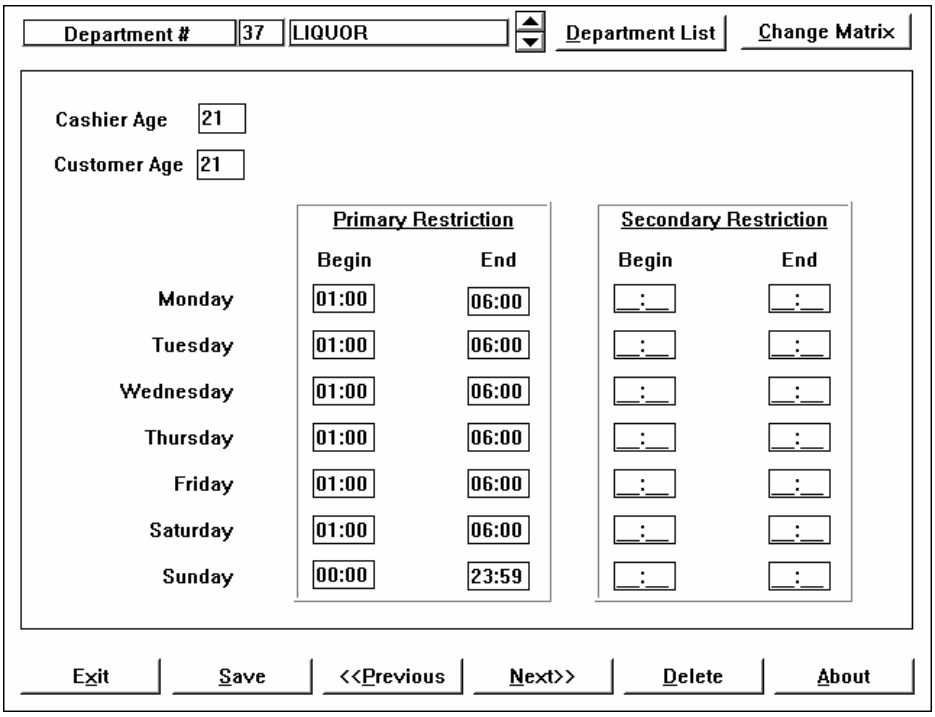


Figure A-14: Subdepartment Maintenance Screen

Group Descriptors

This feature enables the creation of group link headings for system reports. You can create group descriptions, memo descriptions or both.

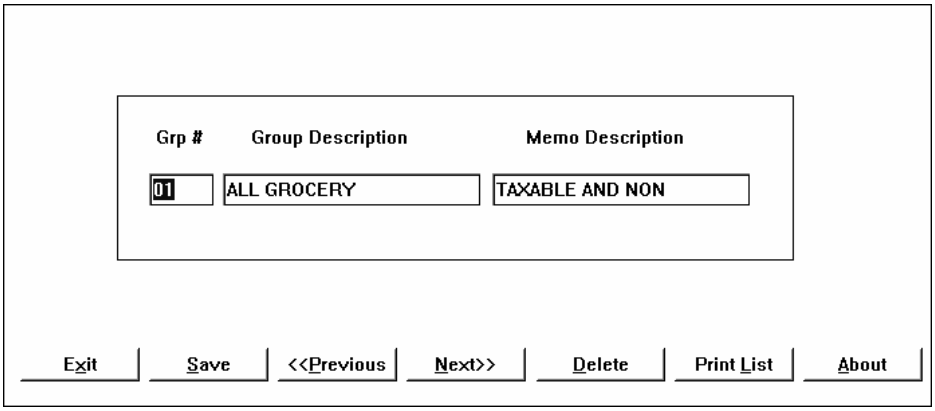


Figure A-15: Subdepartment Maintenance Screen

Customer File

The Customer File enables the user to create and maintain the negative or positive check file, the frequent shopper file, and the customer charge file. This chapter also discusses how to perform reason code maintenance, clear customer totals, and maintain accounts receivable records.

Customer Maintenance enables the stores to create a user-defined customer database. Through this option, a store can set limits, assign charges and payments, establish store programs, and provide several Accounts Receivable tracking and reporting programs.

Negative Check File Maintenance

The Negative Check File creates and maintains a file on customers who have written bad checks to the store. This alerts the cashier about customers with a negative check history and prompts for office interaction. There can be up to 9 user-defined negative check reason codes. The system default is 0 = Good Account. This code does not require office interaction.

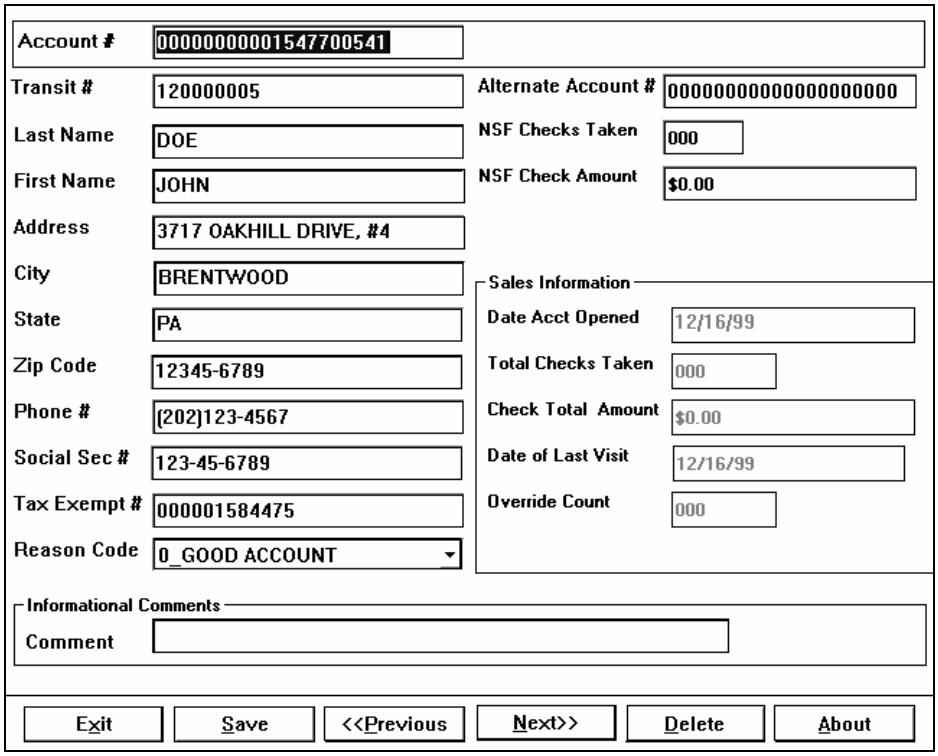


Figure A-16: Negative Check File Screen

Customer File Maintenance

Customer File Maintenance enables you to track customer check cashing, frequent shopper dollars and points, and in-store charges. Customer information is entered into the ScanMaster customer database from this screen.

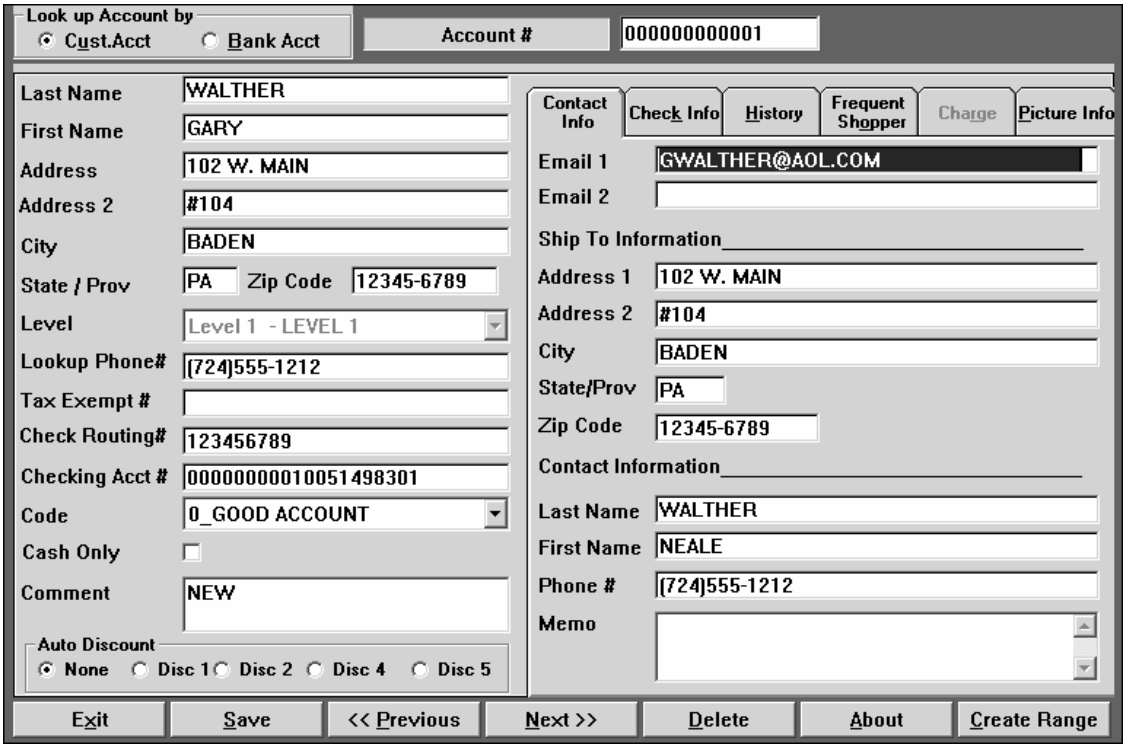


Figure A-17: Customer File Maintenance Screen

Check/Charge Reason Codes

You can assign up to nine reason codes each for negative checks, positive checks, and in-store charges.

Check Reason Codes:	**0**	Good Account
	1	
	2	
	3	
	4	
	5	
	6	
	7	
	8	
	9	
Charge Reason Codes:	**1**	30-60 Days
	2	60-90 Days
	3	90 Days Past Due
	4	Over Limit
	5	
	6	
	7	
	8	
	9	

Frequent Shopper Discount Matrix

The Frequent Shopper Discount Matrix permits the user to set up and define the discount percentage given to frequent shoppers. This matrix can be set up using frequent shopper dollars or points depending on the frequent shopper program used by a particular store.

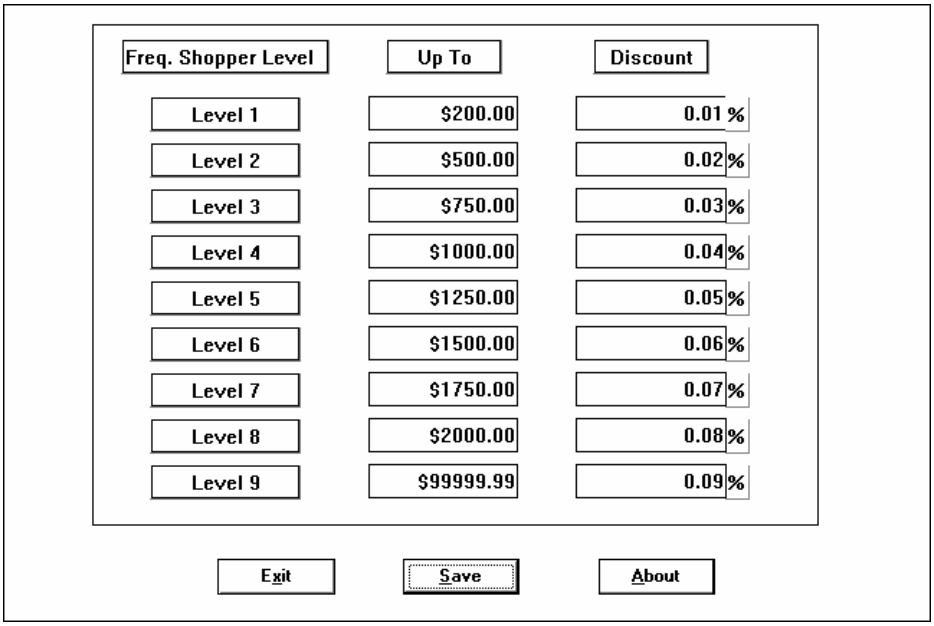


Figure A-18: Frequent Shopper Discount Matrix Screen

POS Workstation Settings Survey

The POS Workstation Settings control parameters for each POS workstation on the ScanMaster System.

You can utilize every POS Workstation Setting option or select only those you need. Each POS workstation can have its own settings.

For detailed information on each field in the POS Workstation Settings, please refer to *Chapter 8: Personalization*.

POS Workstation Settings

Devices Settings	
Coin Changer 0=No 1=OCIA 2=Ser	
Disable Cust Name on CID	
Interface NCR OCIA Scan/Scale	
Interface 7870 RS232 scan/scal	
Interface 7870 RS232 Scanner	
Interface 7880 RS232 scanner	
Interface 7890 RS232 scanner	
Interface 960LS RS485 Scan/Scl	
Interface 960LS RS232 Scan/Scl	
Interface Space RS232 Scanner	
Interface SP210 RS232 Scanner	
Interface 4100 RS232 Scale	
Interface Cyberdata 9 bit 7824	
Interface ML2010 RS232 Scanner	
Interface MS951 RS232 Scanner	
Interface Orion RS232 scan/scl	
Interface 960LS RS232 (ICL)	
Interface 7835/7836 Scanner	
Interface 7837 Scanner	
Enable MICR Reader Support	
Enable Video Customer Display	
Use 40 Column CID Mode	
Beep Scanner On Not Found	
Beep Scanner on Manual Item	
Beep Scanner on Offline Sale	
Beep Scanner on Item Intervent	
Beep Scanner on Error	
MultiMedia to 64Key Op Display	
Enable LaneHawk Interface	

LaneHawk Port# (0=2223)	
Retotal on LaneHawk Added Item	
EFT Settings	
Enable Gift Card Recharge	
Disable Bank Charge Verify	
Disable Debit Card Verify	
Disable EBT Cash Card Verify	
Enable APT Interface	
XiNETix Cust Assume Level 1	
xiNETix EFT Merchant ID	
Enable Greenpoints TCP/IP	
Enable Electronic Payment Sys	
Universal EFT Auth File Name	
Universal EFT Str & Frwd File	
Universal EFT Setlemnt File Nam	
Secondary EFT Auth File Name	
Secondary EFT Str & Frwd File	
Secondary EFT Setlmnt File Nam	
Checks use Secondary EFT Files	
Electronic Paymt Term Attached	
Enable Elec Signature Capture	
Press Clear After EFT Approval	
Prompt Partial Tender Approval	
Exp Year < 71 then Year > 1999	
Enable EFT Settlement Capture	
EFT Authorization Timeout Secs	
Enable EFT Tender Reversal	
Print EBT Decline Slip	
Configurable Term Amt Verify	
Disable EFT Logging	
Accept Stand Beside 2nd EFS	

Stand Beside 2nd EFS Desc	
Enable S&H Auto Pnt Redemption	
Enable Credit/Debit Conv (Y/N)	
Disable Credit/Debit Override	
Enable Print Activation Slips	
Actv Slips 0=Always 1=Prompt	
Actv Slip Trailer Line 1	
Actv Slip Trailer Line 2	
Actv Slip Trailer Line 3	
Receipt Settings	
Receipt/Endorse Header Line 1	
Receipt/Endorse Header Line 2	
Receipt/Endorse Header Line 3	
Receipt Header Line 4	
Receipt Header Line 5	
Receipt Header Line 6	
Receipt Header Line 7	
Receipt Header Line 8	
Receipt Header Line 9	
Receipt Header Line 10	
Receipt Trailer Line 1	
Receipt Trailer Line 2	
Receipt Trailer Line 3	
Receipt Trailer Line 4	
Receipt Trailer Line 5	
Receipt Trailer Line 6	
Receipt Trailer Line 7	
Receipt Trailer Line 8	
Receipt Trailer Line 9	
Receipt Trailer Line 10	
Signature Slip Header Line 1	

Signature Slip Header Line 2	
Signature Slip Header Line 3	
Print Cashier Name On Receipt	
Item Detail on Journal Printer	
Print To Date Frq Shp Totals	
To Date Frq Shp Totals Desc	
Print Period Frq Shp Totals	
To Period Frq Shp Totals Desc	
Store CPN Mult 1 Description	
Mfg CPN Mult 1 Description	
Store CPN Mult 2 Description	
Mfg CPN Mult 2 Description	
Store Cpn Mult Subtotal Desc	
Mfg Cpn Mult Subtotal Desc	
Disable Wide Receipt Printing	
Disable Wide Validation Print	
Disable Wide Debit Slip Print	
Enable 7156 Delayed Receipt	
Remove Voids from Delayed Rcpt	
Receipt Only On Demand	
Print Elec Coupons After Items	
Disable Itemized EC on Receipt	
Enable Receipt History Capture	
Print Dual Delayed Receipts	
Disable Cust Name On Receipt	
Disable Cust Name on Sig Slip	
Disable Frq Shp # on Receipt	
Disable Acct# Print on Receipt	
Disable Acct# Print on Sig Slip	
Print 2nd Payment Slip for Cust	
Reverse Order of Payment Slips	
Disable Prt of IRI CPN Receipt	

Disable Chrg Info on Sig Slip	
Enable "You Saved" On Receipt	
Print "You Saved" Percentage	
"You Saved" With Store Coupon	
"You Saved" With Str Cpn Mult	
"You Saved" With Mfg Coupon	
"You Saved" With Mfg Cpn Mult	
"You Saved" With Str Elec Cpn	
"You Saved" With Mfg Elec Cpn	
"You Saved" With Key Discount	
"You Saved" With Frq Discount	
"You Saved" With TPR	
Double Wide Receipt Header 1	
Double Wide Receipt Header 2	
Double Wide Receipt Header 3	
Double Wide Receipt Header 4	
Double Wide Receipt Header 5	
Double Wide Receipt Header 6	
Double Wide Receipt Header 7	
Double Wide Receipt Header 8	
Double Wide Receipt Header 9	
Double Wide Receipt Header 10	
Double Wide Receipt Trailer 1	
Double Wide Receipt Trailer 2	
Double Wide Receipt Trailer 3	
Double Wide Receipt Trailer 4	
Double Wide Receipt Trailer 5	
Double Wide Receipt Trailer 6	
Double Wide Receipt Trailer 7	
Double Wide Receipt Trailer 8	
Double Wide Receipt Trailer 9	
Double Wide Receipt Trailer 10	

Double High Receipt Header 1	
Double High Receipt Header 2	
Double High Receipt Header 3	
Double High Receipt Header 4	
Double High Receipt Header 5	
Double High Receipt Header 6	
Double High Receipt Header 7	
Double High Receipt Header 8	
Double High Receipt Header 9	
Double High Receipt Header 10	
Double High Receipt Trailer 1	
Double High Receipt Trailer 2	
Double High Receipt Trailer 3	
Double High Receipt Trailer 4	
Double High Receipt Trailer 5	
Double High Receipt Trailer 6	
Double High Receipt Trailer 7	
Double High Receipt Trailer 8	
Double High Receipt Trailer 9	
Double High Receipt Trailer 10	
Double High Mfg & Store Coupon	
Double High Coupon Multiple	
Double High Mfg & Store EC Cpn	
Double High Discount	
Double High Subtotal Info	
Double High Transaction Total	
Double High Tenders	
Double High Change	
Double High You Saved	
Double High Return & Refund	
Double High Sale Items	
Double High Freq Shopper Items	

Double High TPR Savings	
Combine Store & Mfg Cpn Subtot	
Combine Cpn & Mutiple Subtot	
Combined Cpn & Mutiple Desc	
Combine Store & Mfg EC Cpn Sub	
Combine All Tax Totals	
Combined Tax Total Description	
Print TPR Savings After Item	
TPR Savings Description	
Disregard TPR less or equal to	
Print Department Quantity List	
Print Department Amount List	
Enable Delivery Receipt Func	
Phone # on Delivery Receipt	
Subtract # Lines from End Rcpt	
Mask Cust Acct #s on Receipt	
Enable Print of Item # on Rcpt	
Tax Settings	
Enable Tax 1	
Enable Tax 2	
Enable Tax 3	
Tax1 Rate ##.####% (0 = Table)	
Tax2 Rate ##.####% (0 = Table)	
Tax3 Rate ##.####% (0 = Table)	
Tax 1 Receipt Description	
Tax 2 Receipt Description	
Tax 3 Receipt Description	
Tax Exempt 1 Forgives All Tax	
Auto Tax Exempt if Num on File	
Use Tax3 Total for Memo Total	
Tax3 Memo Total Description	

Coupons Settings	
Store CPN Multiplier (0 = None)	
Mfg CPN Multiplier (0 = None)	
Automate Store CPN Multiplier	
Automate Mfg CPN Multiplier	
Store CPN Max Amt. To Multiply	
Mfg CPN Max Amt. To Multiply	
Store CPN Max Result Amount	
Mfg CPN Max Result Amount	
Store CPN Multiplier2 (0 = None)	
Mfg CPN Multiplier2 (0 = None)	
Store CPN Max Amt. to Multiply2	
Mfg CPN Max Amt. to Multiply2	
Store CPN Max Result Amount2	
Mfg CPN Max Result Amount2	
Price LALO on Store Coupons	
Price HALO on Store Coupons	
Price LALO on Mfg Coupons	
Price HALO on Mfg Coupons	
Store CPN Forgives Tax	
Store CPN Disc. Forgives Tax	
Mfg CPN Forgives Tax	
Mfg CPN Disc. Forgives Tax	
Check CPN Against Dept. Sales	
Scan Cpn Desc (0=dept 1=item)	
Check Scan Mfg Cpn in Itm File	
Enable Family Code Cpn Check	
Disable Scan Mfg Coupons	
Allow Scan Mfg Cpn > Itm Price	
Allow Scan Mfg Dbl > Itm Price	
Reduce Cpn if > Sale Total	

Buy X Get Cpn Allows Cpn to X	
Buy X Get Cpn Allows Dbl to X	
Enforce Dept Entry on Mfg CPN	
Discounts Settings	
Enable Non Frq Shp Surcharge	
Surcharge Percentage ##.##%	
Surcharge Description	
Disc 1 (1=Item 2=Sale 3=Both)	
Disc 2 (1=Item 2=Sale 3=Both)	
Disc 4 (1=Item 2=Sale 3=Both)	
Disc 5 (1=Item 2=Sale 3=Both)	
Disc 1 Fixed % (0=variable %)	
Disc 2 Fixed % (0=variable %)	
Disc 4 Fixed % (0=variable %)	
Disc 5 Fixed % (0=variable %)	
Discount 1 Description	
Discount 2 Description	
Discount 4 Description	
Discount 5 Description	
Discount 1 Total Time Limit	
Discount 2 Total Time Limit	
Discount 4 Total Time Limit	
Discount 5 Total Time Limit	
Discount 1 Line Item Limit	
Discount 2 Line Item Limit	
Discount 4 Line Item Limit	
Discount 5 Line Item Limit	
Verify NSC4 Acct # on Disc 1	
Verify NSC4 Acct # on Disc 2	
Verify NSC4 Acct # on Disc 4	
Verify NSC4 Acct # on Disc 5	

Exclude Dsc 1 if Cpn Applied	
Exclude Dsc 2 if Cpn Applied	
Exclude Dsc 4 if Cpn Applied	
Exclude Dsc 5 if Cpn Applied	
Exclude Dsc 1 If Item on Sale	
Exclude Dsc 2 If Item on Sale	
Exclude Dsc 4 If Item on Sale	
Exclude Dsc 5 If Item on Sale	
Auto Apply Dsc1 at End of Sale	
Auto Apply Dsc2 at End of Sale	
Auto Apply Dsc4 at End of Sale	
Auto Apply Dsc5 at End of Sale	
Total Disc 1 Set During Sale	
Total Disc 2 Set During Sale	
Total Disc 4 Set During Sale	
Total Disc 5 Set During Sale	
Minimum Item Count for Disc 1	
Minimum Item Count for Disc 2	
Minimum Item Count for Disc 4	
Minimum Item Count for Disc 5	
Minimum Purchase Amt for Disc1	
Minimum Purchase Amt for Disc2	
Minimum Purchase Amt for Disc4	
Minimum Purchase Amt for Disc5	
Enable Net Discount Str Cpn	
Enable Net Discount Str Dbl	
Enable Net Discount Mfg Cpn	
Enable Net Discount Mfg Dbl	
Enable Net Discount Line Disc 1	
Enable Net Discount Line Disc 2	
Enable Net Discount Line Disc 4	
Enable Net Discount Line Disc 5	

Enable Net Discount Str EC Cpn	
Disable Item Disc Net FrqShp	
Promotions Settings	
Enable Enhanced Electronic Cpn	
Enable Enhanced Frq Shp Prgm	
Frequent Shopper Program Desc.	
Electronic Coupon Description	
Prmpt for Frq Sh # at New Sale	
Prompt for Freq Shp # at Total	
Enable Phone # Lookup	
Enable Driver's License Lookup	
Enable User Defined Lookup	
Force Customer Entry	
Print Frequent Shopper Msg.	
Print Non Freq. Shopper Msg.	
Use Item Price Based Points	
FS Points Reduce by StrCpn	
FS Points Reduce by StrCpn Mult	
FS Points Reduce by MfgCpn	
FS Points Reduce by MfgCpn Mult	
FS Points Reduce by ElecStrCpn	
FS Points Reduce by ElecMfgCpn	
Use Item/EC Pnts & Bonus Pnts	
Item Price Based Points Desc	
Points Description	
Bonus Points Description	
Combine Price Pts & Itm/EC Pts	
Combine Points & Bonus Points	
Points Format (0=Amt 1=Number)	
Max # of cpns to Prt up to 19	
Under Total Sale Amount	

Under Total Sale Coupon #	
Over Total Sale Amount	
Over Total Sale Coupon #	
Over Freq. Shopper $$ Amount	
Over Freq. Shopper Coupon #	
Disable FrqShp Msg Over $$	
Repeat FS Cpn While Over Limit	
Freq. Shopper Rollover Amount	
Maximum # of Random Winners	
Random Winner Coupon #	
Frq Shp Stat Set by Chk Verify	
Frq Shp Stat Set by ACH Verify	
Frq Shp Stat Set by Store Chrg	
Minimum Purchase for Elec Cpns	
Min Purch Not Reducd by StrCpn	
Min Purch Not Reducd by StrDbl	
Min Purch Not Reducd by MfgCpn	
Min Purch Not Reducd by MfgDbl	
Inhibit EC if Exceeds Sale Tot	
Enable Dynamic Customer Build	
Dynamic Customer Default Level	
Default CID Promotion Number	
Display Customer Comment Info	
EAN Cust # Trim 0=Right 1=Left	
Enable Unvrsl Mrktng Interface	
Enable Unvrsl Credit Insertion	
UCI-Item Credit Timeout(0-10)	
UCI-Tender Cred Timeout(0-10)	
UCI-All Credit Timeout(0-10)	
Special Promo Description	
Special Promo Accum Begin Date	
Special Promo Accum Begin Time	

Special Promo Accum End Date	
Special Promo Accum End Time	
Add FS Dollrs to Special Promo	
Add Points to Special Promo	
Add Bonus Pts to Special Promo	
Redemption Reset Special Promo	
UPC Type 4 Cust Num Support	
Disable MultiMedia	
MultiMedia Image Display Time	
Disable Motion Video	
Disable MultiMedia Sound	
Disable MultiMedia Full Screen	
Min FrqShp Level for Cpn Mult1	
Min FrqShp Level for Cpn Mult2	
Enable MobileLime FS Interface	
Prompt for ML# at New Sale	
MobileLime Merchant ID	
MobileLime Comm Test Timeout	
MobileLime Cust Use FS Level	
Allow Multiple Total EC Promo	
Voids/Refunds Settings	
Line Item Void Limit	
Total Void Limit	
Line Item Refund Limit	
Total Refund Limit	
Enable Refund Mode Operation	
Enable Error Correct Validatn	
Enable Void Validation	
Enable Refund Validation	
Items Settings	

Use Manual Tare Entry	
Use Auto Not Found Batching	
Dept/Plu Status (0=Plu 1=Dept)	
Enable Dept # Key Flip Chart	
Enable Sales Restriction Table	
Cust Age (0=Date 1=Id 2=Both)	
Copy Item File at Reg. Update	
Disable Halo/Lalo Check on UPC	
Enable Variable Tare	
Birthdate Display Age Verify	
Print restricted Customers Age	
Enable Department Validation	
Enable Negative Dep Validatn	
Flag Sale Itms on Receipt w/ $	
Bottle Deposit Description	
Reprompt same Item Vis Verify	
Allow Manual Weight Entry	
Use Var Weight 5 Digit Price	
Report Code Prompt Begin Range	
Report Code Prompt End Range	
Report Code Prompt Text	
Report Code Mgr Begin Range	
Report Code Mgr End Range	
Report Code Mgr Text	
Allow Flipcharts to Cycle	
Enable Sell By Date Checking	
Sell by Date (0-Prmpt 1-Rstrct)	
Enable Expiry Date Checking	
Expiry Date (0-Prmpt 1-Rstrct)	
Media Settings	
Cash Pickup Warning Amount	

Cash Pickup Compulse Amount	
FS Pickup Warning Amount	
FS Pickup Compulse Amount	
FC Pickup Warning Amount	
FC Pickup Compulse Amount	
Foreign Change if Last Tender	
Check File (1=Neg 2=Pos 0=none)	
Use Check Acct for POS Check	
Use Paper Check	
Use Payroll Check	
Use Electronic Check	
Payroll Check Max Amount (Mgr)	
Payroll Check Overtender (Mgr)	
Payroll Check Max Overtender	
Use Enhanced Split Qty Calc.	
Maximum # Checks / Day	
Maximum # Checks / Week	
Maximum Amount Checks / Day	
Maximum Amount Checks / Week	
Disable Store Charge Verify	
Automatic Check Pay to Field	
FS# for Check Verify (Non EFT)	
Disable Bank Chrg Acct Capture	
Enable WIC Sale Mode	
Capture Max Wic Check Amount	
Check Wic Begin & End Dates	
WIC Tender Forgives Tax	
Disallow Open Dept in WIC Mode	
Ensure Signature on WIC Check	
Enable FSA	
Open Drawer Before Chk Validtn	
Alarm if Drawer Remains Open	

Enable Gift Cert Sold Validatn	
Drawer Alarm Delay in Seconds	
Use Routing # for Neg Check	
Enable NSF RTN Endorsement	
Return Endorsement Line 1	
Return Endorsement Line 2	
Return Endorsement Line 3	
Return Endorsement Line 4	
Return Endorsement Line 5	
Return Endorsement Line 6	
Return Endorsement Line 7	
Return Endorsement Line 8	
Return Endorsement Line 9	
Return Endorsement Line 10	
Enable WIC CVV Sale Mode	
Allow WIC CVV Split Tender	
Allow WIC CVV Mixed Basket	
Max Num WIC CVV Vouchers	
Capture WIC CVV Amts	
Capture WIC CVV Dates	
Ensure Signature on CVV Check	
Prmpt if POS reduce CVV Tender	
Sign On/Off Settings	
Print Accountability Receipt	
Print Pickup & Loan Receipt	
Disable Drawer Open Signon/off	
Signoff From Idle in Seconds	
One Step Entry for Signon/off	
Disable Signon/off Security #	
Check Cashier Active Status	

Security Settings	
Minimum Security Level for Mgr	
No Security if Manager Cashier	
Prevent Manager Self-Override	
Security On Cancel	
Security On Override	
Security On Refund	
Security On Error Correct	
Security On Void	
Security On Discount 1	
Security On Discount 2	
Security On Discount 4	
Security On Discount 5	
Security On Suspend Sale	
Security On Retrieve Sale	
Security On Report Function	
Security On Utilities	
Security On Sale of Gift Cert.	
Security On Sale of Money Ord.	
Security On Misc. Functions	
Security On Paidout	
Security On Coupon Paidout	
Security On Gift Card Cash Out	
Security On Check Cashing	
Security On Media Swap	
Security On Rtrn to Item Entry	
Security On HALO/LALO Errors	
Security On Nosale	
Security On Tax Exemption	
Security On Dynamic Cust Build	
Security On Currency Exch Rate	
Security On Age Rstrct Decline	

Security On Paidin	
Security On Manual Type 2 Entry	
Security on Quantity Entry	
Security on Price Inquiry	
Disable Key Entry of Mgr Id	
Rtrn to Itm Entry During Tendr	
Allow Manager Override of ACH	
Enable Remote Manager Approval	
Utilities Settings	
Enable Gift Certificate Sales	
Enable Money Order Sales	
Enable Paidout Function	
Enable Coupon Paidout	
Enable Gift Card Cash Out	
Gift Card Cash Out Limit	
Enable Vendor Gift Card Prgm	
Gft Crd follow Item GC Setting	
Enable Auto Gft Crd Activation	
Enable Check Cashing Function	
Check Cashing Fee Link	
Check Cashing Fee Dept	
Media Fee Exempt FrqShp Level	
Allow Check Fee Override	
Enable Media Swap Function	
Enable PaidIn/Out Validation	
Misc Settings	
Idle mode timeout in seconds	
Display Running FS Total	
Use Override Reason Code Menu	
Use Refund Reason Code Menu	

Use Void Reason Code Menu	
Print Voucher for Check Fee	
Voucher Text Promo Cpn Num	
Allow Voucher Redeem > Total	
Disable UPC Repeat Key (ENTER)	
Enable Shoppers Hotline	
Use Local Scan Resource	
End of Sale Delay in Seconds	
Disp Cust Name at End of Sale	
Enable Paidout Acct Flip Chart	
Enable Power Fail Recovery	
Background Screen Color 0-7	
Disable Training Mode	
Disable Validation in Training	
Bottle Statuses Follow Item	
Distribute Multi-Lane EOD Time	
Number of Lanes in EOD Set	
Minutes Between EOD Sets	
Enable Catalina Interface	
Use Media Swap Reas. Code Menu	
Enable CVC Interface	
Allow Offline Card Activation	
Operator Display Item Detail	
Enable Total Prompt	
Total Prompt Text	
Financials Settings	
Use Media Counts	
Enable Pickups/Loans at Lanes	
Disable Pickups/Loans Offline	
Instore Charge Settings	

Enable Instore Charge	
Disp Chg Info? (1=Al 2=Name)	
Allow Charge Only if Balance 0	
Disable Instore Charge Masking	
Amount Compulse on Charge Menu	
Min Charge Status for Mgr Auth	
Print Customer History Msg.	
Disable Charge Payment	

Back Office Settings Survey

The Back Office Settings pertain to the set up of the Back Office PC, the File Server PC, and additional workstation PCs. Back Office workstations may be configured slightly different.

For detailed information on each field in the Back Office Settings, please refer to the Chapter 8: Personalization in the ScanMaster User's Guide.

Back Office Setting Options

Global/Store Settings	
Store #	
Store Name For Reports	
Are Subdepartments Used	
Force Freq. Shopper Bit On	
Page Host Batches in UPC Order	
# of Days of TLOG to Save	
Days of Hist. Archives to Save	
Weight in LBS (Y) (N) = Kg.	
Sec. Level on Item Maint.	
Sec. Level on Employee Maint.	
Sec. Level on Department Mnt.	
Sec. Level on Customer Maint.	
Sec. Level on Personalization	
Sec. Level on Communications	
Sec. Level on Reporting	
Sec. Level on Day End	
Sec. Level on Office Proc.	
Sec. Level on System Services	
Money Order Fee	
Use Store Spreadsheet	
Use Blind Balancing	
End Week on Day # (SUN=1)	
ST Coup O/S Add Into Net O/S	

MFG Coup O/S Add Into Net O/S	
Use Enhanced Security	
Accountability by Lane	
GiftCert O/S add into net O/S	
Print Cashier Log Files	
Turn On Accounts Receivable	
Company Name	
Company Address	
Company City, State, Zip	
Company Telephone Number	
Registers do Local Item Update	
Use Shrink Trax Interface	
Use Normal Balancing Mode	
Add Formfeed to End of Reports	
Treat Cashier O/S as Memo	
Treat Office O/S as Memo	
Add DBL Vendor Coupon to Sales	
Add Store Coupon to Sales	
Add DBL Store Coup to Sales	
Description for TAX1	
Description for TAX2	
Description for TAX3	
Days Historical Data to Save	
Weeks of SRR to Save	
Use Auto Pickup Feature	
Third Party DSD Installed	
Use Item Trail Feature	
Use Coupon Linking Feature	
Disable Price Based Pts Mult	
Allow Item Delete w/ Movement	
Commodity Code = Family Code	
Print Charge Log Information	

No Zero/Neg Balances AR Stmnt	
No Printer Graphics AR Stmnt	
Num of Deposit Accounts (1-3)	
Calc SRR on Current Line	
Settle Media Counts	
Finance Charges Compounded	
EJ Reports use Ehncd Elc Coup	
Electronic Journal Installed	
Hide NRT Totals from EJ Rpts	
Enable Host Batch Separation	
Logoff Windows after EOD	
Point Description	
Bonus Point Description	
Freq. Shop. Level set Manually	
Allow Mult Same ECPN-FRQSP Lvl	
Default Elec. Coupon Dept.	
Enable 2100 Interface	
Lbl App 1=UG 2=General 0=Both	
Item Host Update Recs Dont Add	
# of Days of EFT Log to Save	
Show Suspended Sales at EOD	
Create Daily Movement Files	
Is EBO Installed	
Do Not Include Cpns in Movement	
Use Margin (Y) or Markup (N)	
Allow Deletes in Batches	
Enable Elec Cpn Label Printing	
A/R STMT: Don't Print Remitance	
A/R STMT: Don't Print Aging	
A/R STMT: Don't Print APR% Line	
A/R STMT: Make Address Larger	
Enable Connected Services	

Default Store Elec Cpn EJ Desc	
Default Mfg Elec Cpn EJ Desc	
Default Store UCI CPN EJ Desc	
Default Mfg UCI CPN EJ Desc	
EOD: 1=AUTODELAY, 2=AUTOSETTLE	
Default ECPN Type 0=MFG, 1=STR	
Sec. Level to Edit Cust FS Tab	
Export Cust File 2.01.xx Formt	
User Defined Lookup Desc	
Don't Warn on Zero Priced Items	
# Min Process Inactivity Alert	
Use Enhanced Price Management	
Batch Items Follow Header Date	
Allow Price Holddown	
# Days Delete Expired Coupons	
Add Line Item Disc. To Sales	
Show Receipts First on SRR	
Enable Generic ESL Interface	
Disable EOD copy EJ Database	
Act. Batches Older Than 1 Day	
Rebuild EJ Tables every # days	
Enable Automatic EOD	
# Days Charge Detail to Save	
Offsale Use Retail for Ad Itms	
User Def Tenders in Cshr Exprt	
Reset Login Password Interval	
Password Warning Interval	
Enable WIC CVV Voucher	
Ignore Suspends in Movement	
Store Name	
Store Location	
Random Winner Probability	

Currency Sym (0=$ 1=L 2=none)	
Disable Password Restrictions	
BackOffice Settings	
This PC Processes Tlogs	
This PC Does the End-of-Day	
Enable EJ Processor on This PC	
Enable 7800 on This PC	

Banner File

The Banner File is the scrolling message on the customer display that displays during idle time on the POS workstation. Customized advertising or customer messages can be displayed through this banner.

The Banner File consists of ten (10) lines of fifty-six (56) characters.

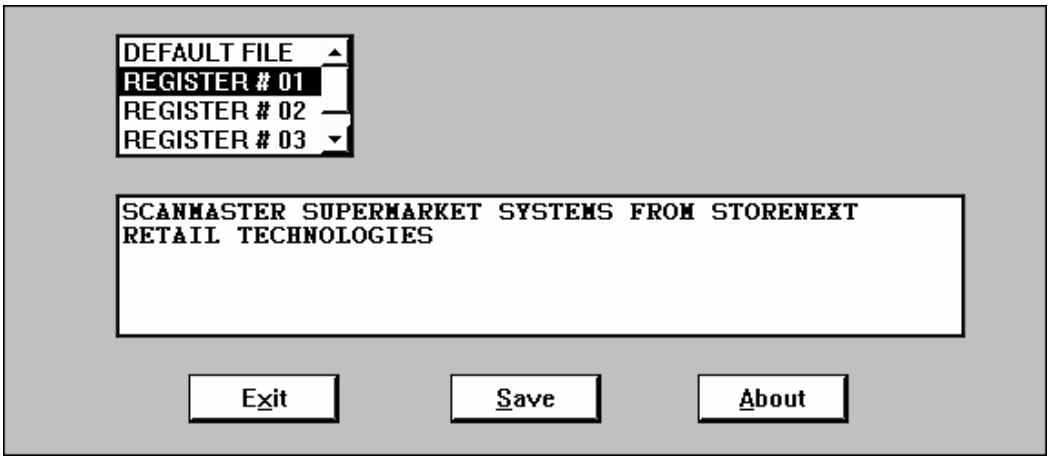


Figure A-19: Banner File Maintenance Screen

Reason Code Maintenance

The Reason Code Maintenance screen is where you set up reasons for Overrides, Refunds, Voids and Media Swaps that appear on the POS workstations. The reason codes appear on the override, refund, void and media swap report by cashier and by item.

Overrides: Overrides reasons permit you to change the price of a PLU at the POS workstation. This price change only effects one line item, not the price in the item file. You can define up to four override reasons that display when a cashier performs an override.

Refunds: Refund reasons permit you to issue refunds based on the reasons defined. You can define up to four refund reasons that display when a cashier performs a refund.

Voids: Void reasons permit you to void a transaction based on the reasons defined. You can define up to four void reasons that display when a cashier performs a void.

Media Swaps: Media Swap reasons permit you to specify a reason for correcting tender errors after a transaction is completed. You can define up to for media swap reasons that display when a cashier performs a media swap.

Reason Code Reasons

Overrides:

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Refunds:

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Voids:

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Media Swaps:

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Tax Table Maintenance

The ScanMaster system can have up to three tax tables. Tax Table Maintenance enables you to configure Tax Tables 1-3 with exception ranges.

The ScanMaster Tax Table is enabled from the POS Workstation Setting "Tax Rate ##.####%(0=Table)". If this feature is not enabled (with a setting of 000000), the POS Workstation will use a table to calculate the tax. If a rate is entered, it will use the percent rate entered in this POS Workstation Setting instead.

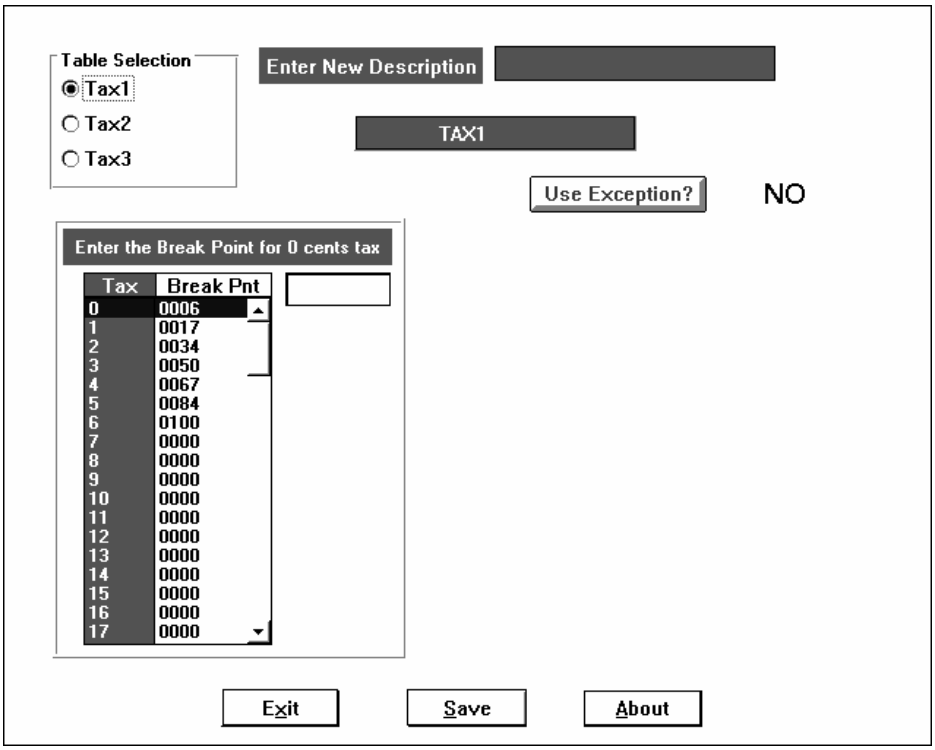


Figure A-20: Tax Table Maintenance Screen

Keyboard Configurator

The Keyboard Configurator enables you to customize the POS workstation keyboard. You can assign department keys, and function/tender keys for the POS workstation.

Keyboard Options

There are six different keyboard options. They are:

Fujitsu Touch Screen

Fujitsu Touch w/TeamKey

Fujitsu 92R

DynaKey™

NCR 56 Key

NCR 64 Key

Each POS workstation on the system can be configured the same way or each can be configured differently.

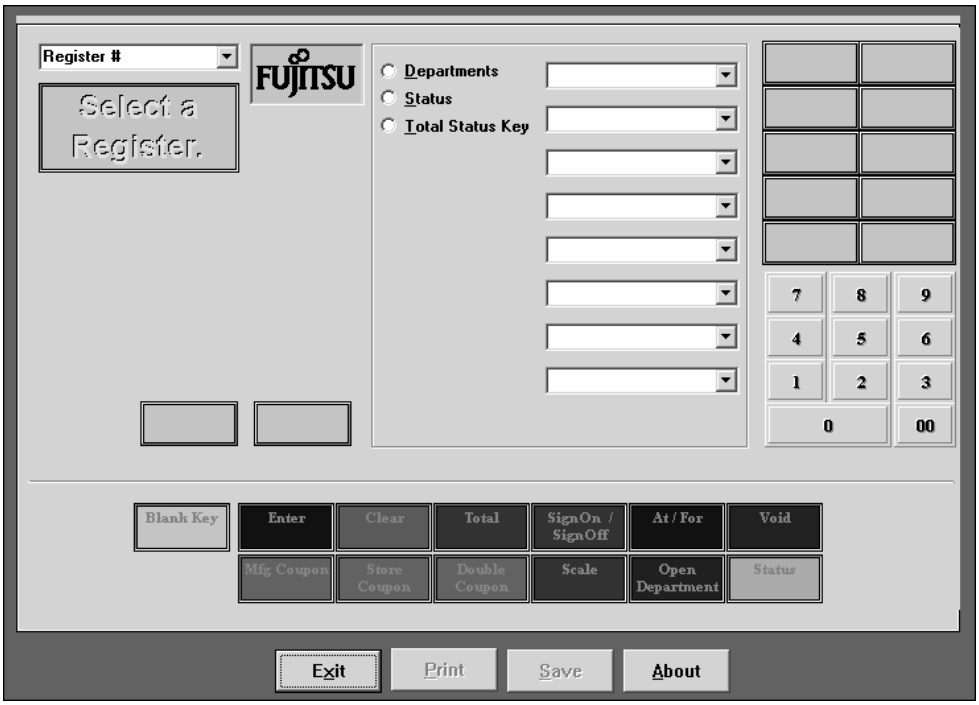


Figure A-21: Fujitsu Touch Screen Configurator

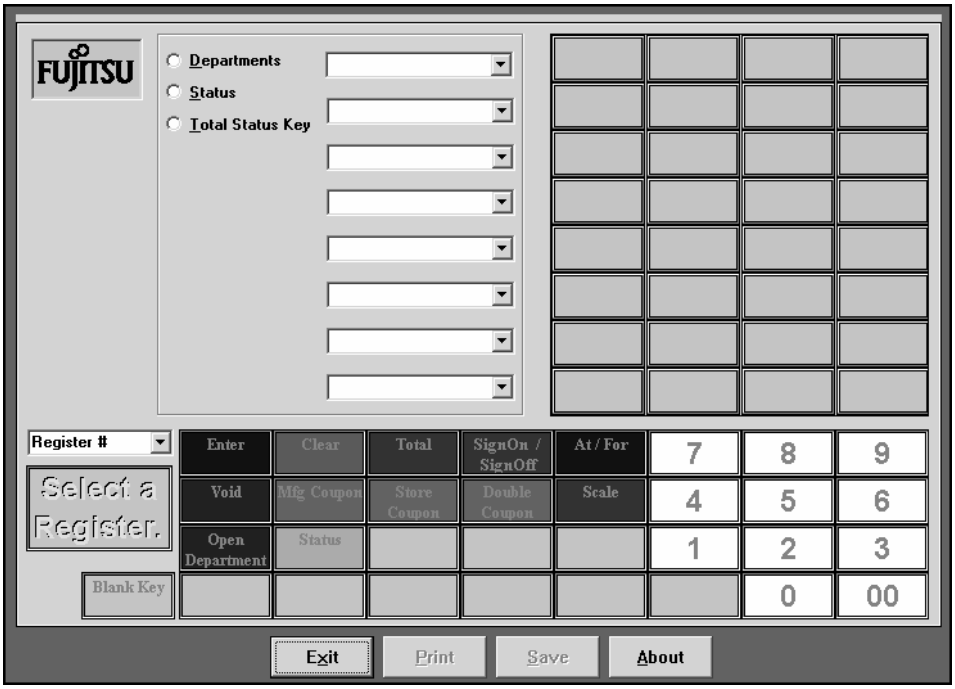


Figure A-22: Fujitsu Touch w/TeamKey Configurator

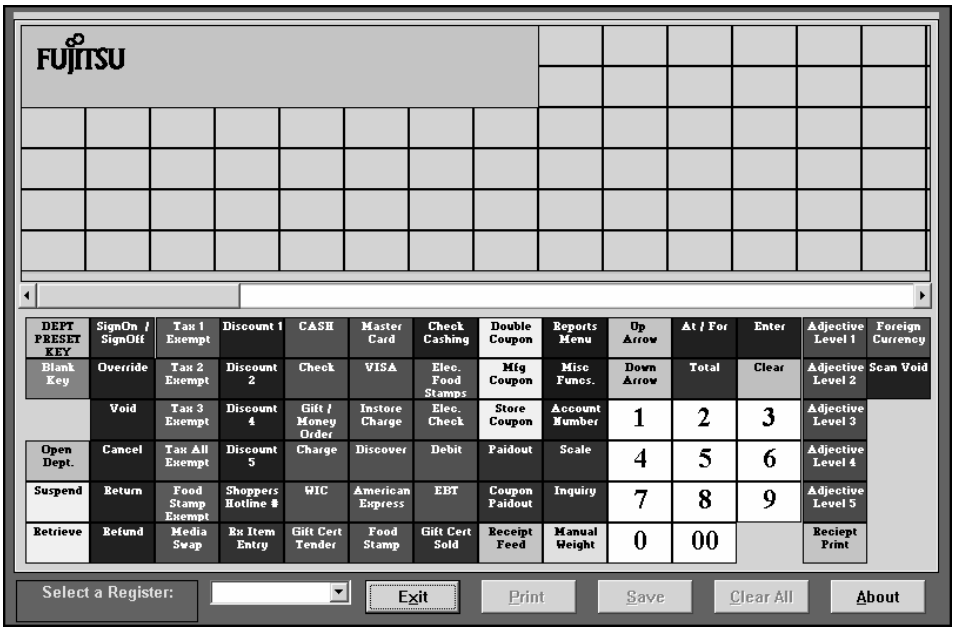


Figure A-23: Fujitsu 92R Key Configurator

Media Configurator

This option enables you to customize the system media fields. There are 23 media types available to customize. Those fields and their default settings are listed below.

Cash

The following configuration options are available for the Cash media.

Enable This Media (Y/N) _____
Amount Compulse (Y/N) _____
Validate (Y/N) _____
Validate Description _____
Validation Line 1 _____
Validation Line 2 _____
Validation Line 3 _____
Media Group Link (0-9) _____
Allow Pickup (Y/N) _____
Allow Loan (Y/N) _____

Check

The following configuration options are available for the Check media.

Enable This Media (Y/N) _____
Amount Compulse (Y/N) _____
Max. Tender Amount (Mgr. Req.) _____
Allow Over Tender (Y/N) _____
Manager Over Tender Limit _____
Max. Over Tender Limit _____
Open Drawer 0=NO 1=FINAL 2=IMD _____
Data Capture/Display Prompt _____
Data Capture Prompt Message _____
Validate (Y/N) _____
Validation Description _____

Validation Line 1 _____

Validation Line 2 _____

Validation Line 3 _____

Enable Check Writing (Y/N) _____

Print Signature Slip (Y/N) _____

Media Group Link (0-9) _____

Allow Pickup (Y/N) _____

Allow Pickup Counts (Y/N) _____

Allow Loan (Y/N) _____

Use Elec Payment Auth (Y/N) _____

PIN Entry Required (Y/N) _____

Maximum Cash Back Amount _____

Signature Line on Slip (Y/N) _____

Allow Manual Account Entry _____

Allow Off-line Approval (Y/N) _____

Off-line Tender Limit _____

Capture Cash Back Amt At Term _____

Term Cash Back Display Amt 1 _____

Term Cash Back Display Amt 2 _____

1-EFT Void 2-No Return to Sale _____

Enable Term Amt Verification _____

Foreign Currency

The following configuration options are available for Foreign Currency Media.

Enable This Media (Y/N) _____

Media Description _____

Amount Compulse (Y/N) _____

Media Group Link (0-9) _____

Allow Pickup (Y/N) _____

Allow Loan (Y/N) _____

ACH (Electronic Check)

The following configuration options are available for the ACH (Electronic Check) media.

Enable This Media (Y/N) _____

Amount Compulse (Y/N) _____

Max. Tender Amount (Mgr. Req.) _____

Allow Over Tender (Y/N) _____

Manager Over Tender Limit _____

Max. Over Tender Limit _____

Open Drawer 0=NO 1=FINAL 2=IMD _____

Data Capture/Display Prompt _____

Data Capture Prompt Message _____

Validate (Y/N) _____

Validation Description _____

Validation Line 1 _____

Validation Line 2 _____

Validation Line 3 _____

Enable Check Writing (Y/N) _____

Print Signature Slip (Y/N) _____

Media Group Link (0-9) _____

Allow Pickup (Y/N) _____

Allow Pickup Counts (Y/N) _____

Allow Loan (Y/N) _____

Use Elec Payment Auth (Y/N) _____

PIN Entry Required (Y/N) _____

Maximum Cash Back Amount _____

Signature Line on Slip (Y/N) _____

Allow Manual Account Entry _____

Allow Off-line Approval (Y/N) _____

Off-line Tender Limit _____

Capture Cash Back Amt At Term _____

Term Cash Back Display Amt 1 _____

Term Cash Back Display Amt 2 _____

1-EFT Void 2-No Return to Sale _____

Enable Term Amt Verification _____

Debit Card

The following configuration options are available for the Debit Card media.

Enable This Media (Y/N) _____

Amount Compulse (Y/N) _____

Allow Refund (Y/N) _____

Max. Tender Amount (Mgr. Req.) _____

Allow Over Tender (Y/N) _____

Manager Over Tender Limit _____

Max. Over Tender Limit _____

Open Drawer 0=NO 1=FINAL 2=IMD _____

Data Capture/Display Prompt _____

Data Capture Prompt Message _____

Check Expiration Date _____

Validate (Y/N) _____

Validation Description _____

Validation Line 1 _____

Validation Line 2 _____

Validation Line 3 _____

Print Signature Slip (Y/N) _____

Media Group Link (0-9) _____

Allow Pickup (Y/N) _____

Allow Pickup Counts (Y/N) _____

Allow Loan (Y/N) _____

Use Elec Payment Auth (Y/N) _____

PIN Entry Required (Y/N) _____

Maximum Cash Back Amount _____

Signature Line on Slip (Y/N) _____

Allow Manual Account Entry _____

Allow Offline Approval (Y/N) _____

Off-line Tender Limit _____

Capture Cash Back Amt At Term _____

Term Cash Back Display Amt 1 _____

Term Cash Back Display Amt 2 _____

1-EFT Void 2-No Return to Sale _____

Enable Term Amt Verification _____

Master Card, Visa, American Express & Discover

The following configuration options are available for the Master Card, Visa, American Express & Discover Card media.

	Master Card	Visa	American Express	Discover
Amount Compulse (Y/N)				
Max. Tender Amount (Mgr. Req.)				
Allow Over Tender (Y/N)				
Manager Over Tender Limit				
Max. Over Tender Limit				
Open Drawer 0=NO 1=FINAL 2=IMD				
Data Capture/Display Prompt				
Data Capture Prompt Message				
Check Expiration Date				
Validate (Y/N)				
Validation Description				
Validation Line 1				
Validation Line 2				
Validation Line 3				

Print Signature Slip (Y/N)				
Media Group Link (0-9)				
Allow Pickup (Y/N)				
Allow Pickup Counts (Y/N)				
Allow Loan (Y/N)				
Use Elec Payment Auth (Y/N)				
PIN Entry Required (Y/N)				
Maximum Cash Back Amount				
Signature Line on Slip (Y/N)				
Allow Manual Account Entry				
Allow Off-line Approval (Y/N)				
Off-line Tender Limit				
Capture Cash Back Amt At Term				
Term Cash Back Display Amt 1				
Term Cash Back Display Amt 2				
1-EFT Void 2-No Return to Sale				
Enable Term Amt Verification				

In-store Charge

The following configuration options are available for the In-store Charge media.

Enable This Media (Y/N): _____

Amount Compulse (Y/N): _____

Max. Tender Amount (Mgr. Req.): _____

Allow Over Tender (Y/N): _____

Manager Over Tender Limit: _____

Max. Over Tender Limit: _____

Open Drawer 0=NO 1=FINAL 2=IMD: _____

Data Capture/Display Prompt: _____

Data Capture Prompt Message: _____

Check Expiration Date: _____

Validate (Y/N): _____

Validation Description: _____

Validation Line 1: _____

Validation Line 2: _____

Validation Line 3: _____

Print Signature Slip (Y/N): _____

Media Group Link (0-9): _____

Allow Pickup (Y/N): _____

Allow Pickup Counts (Y/N): _____

Allow Loan (Y/N): _____

Signature Line on Slip (Y/N): _____

Allow Manual Account Entry: _____

Enable Term Amt Verification: _____

Gift Certificate

The following configuration options are available for the Gift Certificate media.

Enable This Media (Y/N): _____

Amount Compulse (Y/N): _____

Allow Refund (Y/N): _____

Max. Tender Amount (Mgr. Req.): _____

Allow Over Tender (Y/N): _____

Manager Over Tender Limit: _____

Max. Over Tender Limit: _____

Data Capture/Display Prompt: _____

Data Capture Prompt Message: _____

Validate (Y/N): _____

Validation Description: _____

Validation Line 1: _____

Validation Line 2: _____

Validation Line 3: _____

Print Signature Slip (Y/N): _____

Media Group Link (0-9): _____

Allow Pickup (Y/N): _____

Allow Pickup Counts (Y/N): _____

Allow Loan (Y/N): _____

Food Stamps

The following configuration options are available for the Food Stamps media.

Enable This Media (Y/N): _____

Amount Compulse (Y/N): _____

Max. Tender Amount (Mgr. Req.): _____

Media Group Link (0-9): _____

Allow Pickup (Y/N): _____

Allow Loan (Y/N): _____

WIC

The following configuration options are available for the WIC media.

Enable This Media (Y/N): _____

Amount Compulse (Y/N): _____

Max. Tender Amount (Mgr. Req.): _____

Open Drawer 0=NO 1=FINAL 2=IMD: _____

Data Capture/Display Prompt: _____

Data Capture Prompt Message: _____

Validate (Y/N): _____

Validation Description: _____

Validation Line 1: _____

Validation Line 2: _____

Validation Line 3: _____

Enable Check Writing (Y/N): _____

Print Signature Slip (Y/N): _____

Media Group Link (0-9): _____

Allow Pickup (Y/N): _____

Allow Pickup Counts (Y/N): _____

Allow Loan (Y/N): _____

Master Card, Visa, American Express & Discover Credit

The following configuration options are available for the Master Card, Visa, American Express & Discover Card credit media.

	Master Card	Visa	American Express	Discover
Amount Compulse (Y/N)				
Max. Tender Amount (Mgr. Req.)				
Allow Over Tender (Y/N)				
Manager Over Tender Limit				
Max. Over Tender Limit				
Open Drawer 0=NO 1=FINAL 2=IMD				
Data Capture/Display Prompt				
Data Capture Prompt Message				
Validate (Y/N)				
Validation Description				
Validation Line 1				
Validation Line 2				
Validation Line 3				
Print Signature Slip (Y/N)				
Media Group Link (0-9)				
Allow Pickup (Y/N)				
Allow Pickup Counts (Y/N)				
Allow Loan (Y/N)				
Use Elec Payment Auth (Y/N)				
PIN Entry Required (Y/N)				
Maximum Cash Back Amount				
Signature Line on Slip (Y/N)				
Allow Manual Account Entry				

Allow Off-line Approval (Y/N)				
Off-line Tender Limit				
Capture Cash Back Amt At Term				
Term Cash Back Display Amt 1				
Term Cash Back Display Amt 2				
1-EFT Void 2-No Return to Sale				
Enable Term Amt Verification				

In-store Chg Credit

The following configuration options are available for the In-Store Charge Credit media.

Enable This Media (Y/N): _____

Amount Compulse (Y/N): _____

Max. Tender Amount (Mgr. Req.): _____

Allow Over Tender (Y/N): _____

Manager Over Tender Limit: _____

Max. Over Tender Limit: _____

Open Drawer 0=NO 1=FINAL 2=IMD: _____

Data Capture/Display Prompt: _____

Data Capture Prompt Message: _____

Use Neg/Pos Check (0-2): _____

Validate (Y/N): _____

Validation Description: _____

Validation Line 1: _____

Validation Line 2: _____

Validation Line 3: _____

Print Signature Slip (Y/N): _____

Media Group Link (0-9): _____

Add to Net Sales (Y/N): _____

Allow Pickup (Y/N): _____

Allow Pickup Counts (Y/N): _____

Allow Loan (Y/N): _____

Maximum Cash Back Amount: _____

Signature Line on Slip (Y/N): _____

Allow Manual Account Entry: _____

Store Coupon

The following configuration options are available for the Store Coupon media.

Enable This Media (Y/N): _____

Open Drawer 0=NO 1=FINAL 2=IMD: _____

Media Group Link (0-9): _____

Allow Pickup (Y/N): _____

Allow Pickup Counts (Y/N): _____

Allow Loan (Y/N): _____

MFG Coupon

The following configuration options are available for the Mfg. Coupon media.

Enable This Media (Y/N): _____

Open Drawer 0=NO 1=FINAL 2=IMD: _____

Media Group Link (0-9): _____

Allow Pickup (Y/N): _____

Allow Pickup Counts (Y/N): _____

Allow Loan (Y/N): _____

Electronic Food Stamps

The following configuration options are available for the Electronic Food Stamps media.

Enable This Media (Y/N): _____

Amount Compulse (Y/N): _____

Allow Refund (Y/N): _____

Max. Tender Amount (Mgr. Req.): _____

Open Drawer 0=NO 1=FINAL 2=IMD: _____

Data Capture/Display Prompt: _____

Data Capture Prompt Message: _____

Print Signature Slip (Y/N): _____

Media Group Link (0-9): _____

Allow Pickup (Y/N): _____

Allow Pickup Counts (Y/N): _____

Allow Loan (Y/N): _____

Use Elec Payment Auth (Y/N): _____

PIN Entry Required (Y/N): _____

Signature Line on Slip (Y/N): _____

Allow Manual Account Entry: _____

Allow Off-line Approval (Y/N): _____

Off-line Tender Limit: _____

Capture Gen # On Manual Entry: _____

1-EFT Void 2-No Return to Sale: _____

Enable Term Amt Verification: _____

Electronic Benefit Transfer

The following configuration options are available for the Electronic Benefit Transfer media.

Enable This Media (Y/N): _____

Amount Compulse (Y/N): _____

Allow Refund (Y/N): _____

Max. Tender Amount (Mgr. Req.): _____

Allow Over Tender (Y/N): _____

Manager Over Tender Limit: _____

Max. Over Tender Limit: _____

Open Drawer 0=NO 1=FINAL 2=IMD: _____

Data Capture/Display Prompt: _____

Data Capture Prompt Message: _____

Print Signature Slip (Y/N): _____

Media Group Link (0-9): _____

Allow Pickup (Y/N): _____

Allow Pickup Counts (Y/N): _____

Allow Loan (Y/N): _____

Use Elec Payment Auth (Y/N): _____

PIN Entry Required (Y/N): _____

Maximum Cash Back Amount: _____

Signature Line on Slip (Y/N): _____

Allow Manual Account Entry: _____

Allow Off-line Approval (Y/N): _____

Off-line Tender Limit: _____

Capture Gen # On Manual Entry: _____

Capture Cash Back Amt At Term: _____

Term Cash Back Display Amt 1: _____

Term Cash Back Display Amt 2: _____

1-EFT Void 2-No Return to Sale: _____

Enable Term Amt Verification: _____

Gift Card

The following configuration options are available for Gift Card media.

Enable This Media (Y/N) _____

Amount Compulse (Y/N) _____

Allow Refund (Y/N) _____

Max. Tender Amount (Mgr. Req.) _____

Open Drawer 0=NO 1=FINAL 2=IMD _____

Data Capture/Display Prompt _____

Data Capture Prompt Message _____

Check Expiration Date _____

Print Signature Slip (Y/N) _____

Media Group Link (0-9) _____

Allow Pickup (Y/N) _____

Allow Pickup Counts (Y/N) _____

Allow Loan (Y/N) _____

Use Elec Payment Auth (Y/N) _____

PIN Entry Required (Y/N) _____

Signature Line on Slip (Y/N) _____

Allow Manual Account Entry _____

Allow Offline Approval (Y/N) _____

Off-line Tender Limit _____

1-EFT Void 2-No Return to Sale _____

Enable Term Amt Verification _____

Foreign Currency Rate Editor

The Foreign Currency Rate Editor permits stores to enter the foreign currency exchange rate ScanMaster uses when calculating between the face amount and native value.

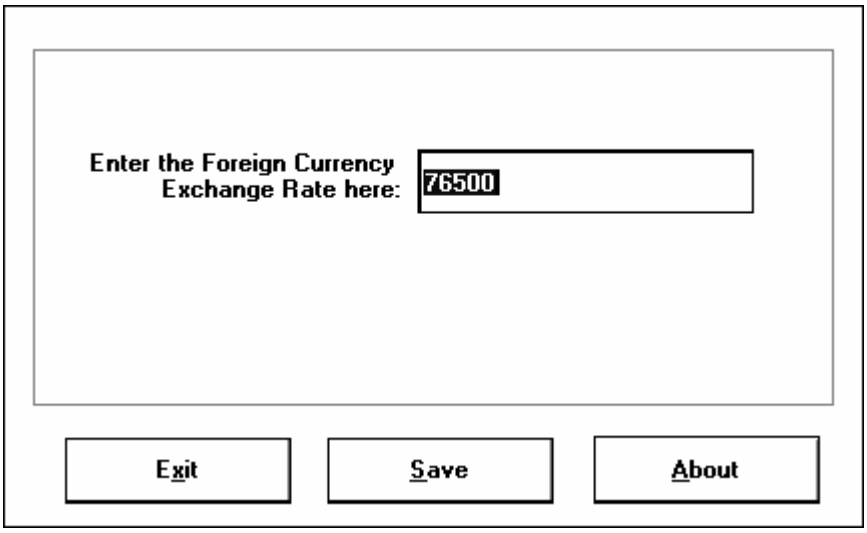


Figure A-24: Foreign Currency Rate Editor

Tax Code Editor

The Tax Code Editor allows you to assign a letter to each tax table or combination of tax tables. This letter is printed on the customer receipt when that tax table or combination is used.

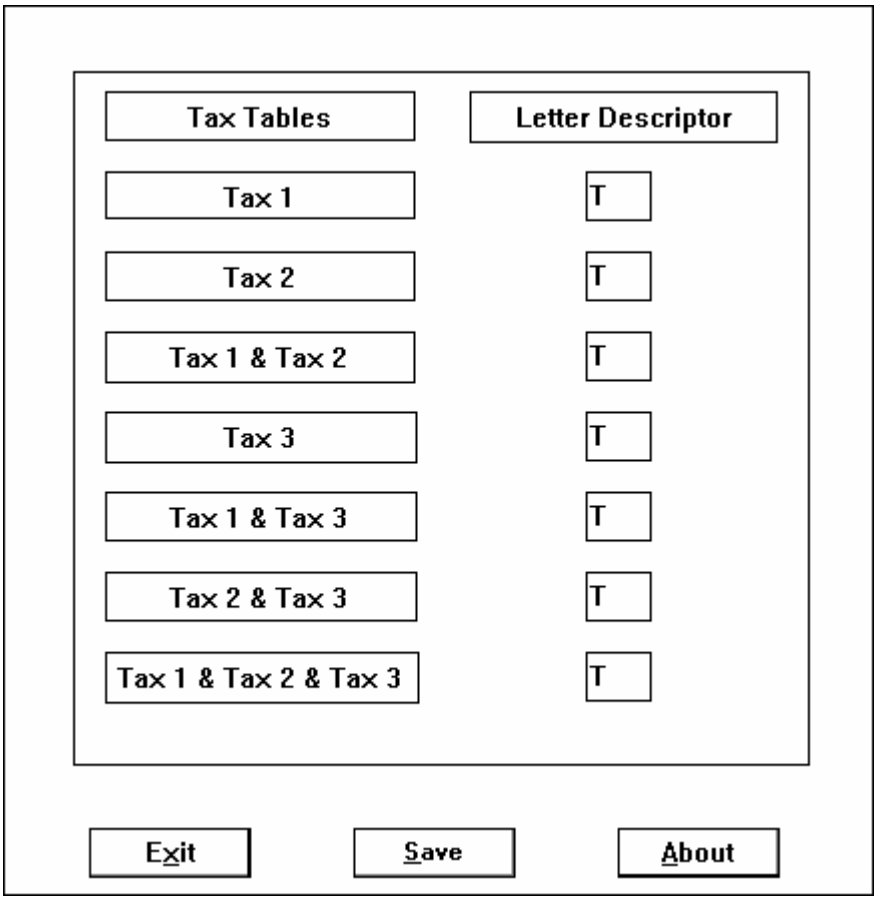


Figure A-25: Tax Code Editor Screen

SRR Editor

The SRR Editor enables you to develop a customized reconciliation report that displays all pertinent accounting information for store balancing under three headings (Paidouts, Receipts & Memos).

Paidouts: The paidouts heading details all store deposits, and anything paid out from the store safe.

Receipts: The receipts heading details all incoming funds to the store safe.

Memos: The memos heading details "other" trackable items that are not considered paidouts or receipts.

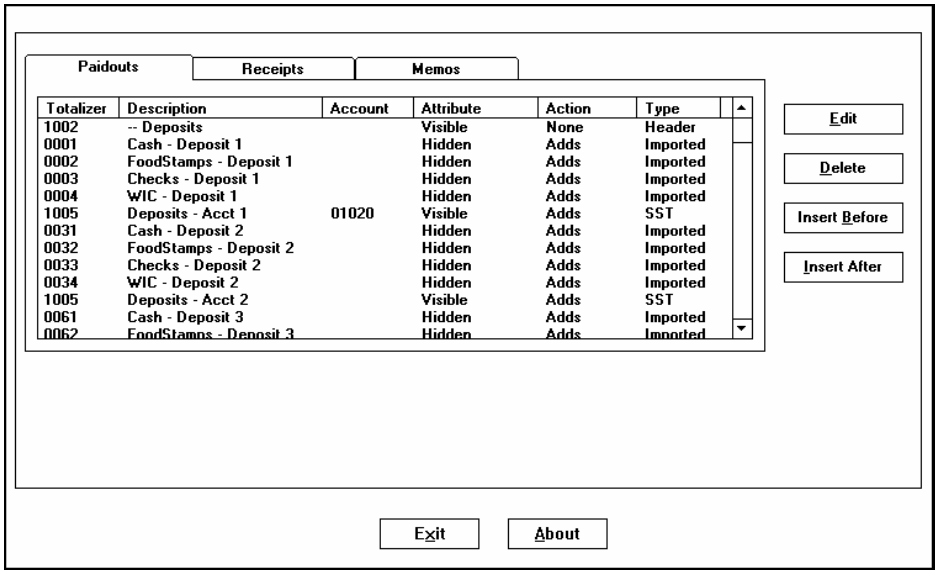


Figure A-26: ScanMaster Reconciliation Report (SRR) Editor Screen

Communication Parameters

This option provides interface parameters for stores using third-party host communication software on their ScanMaster system. Configure these parameters to enable your communications software to interface with ScanMaster.

Comm Software Drive Designator _____

Comm Software Directory _____

Comm Software Upload Directory _____

Comm Software Download Dir. _____

Store Receive Batch Name _____

Store Send PLU File Name _____

Store/VSP Number _____

Save Store Report Codes _____

Save Store Departments _____

Set Discount 1 On _____

Set Discount 2 On _____

Save Subdepartment _____

Save Mix N Match _____

Save Store Mix N Match _____

Save Descriptors _____

Use Alternative Batching _____

Set Tax2 On if Tax 1 On _____

Max Number of Items Per Batch _____

Electronic Coupon File Name _____

Communication CRT Promo Editor

This feature is used to set up promotional messages that display on the customer CRT at each POS workstation.

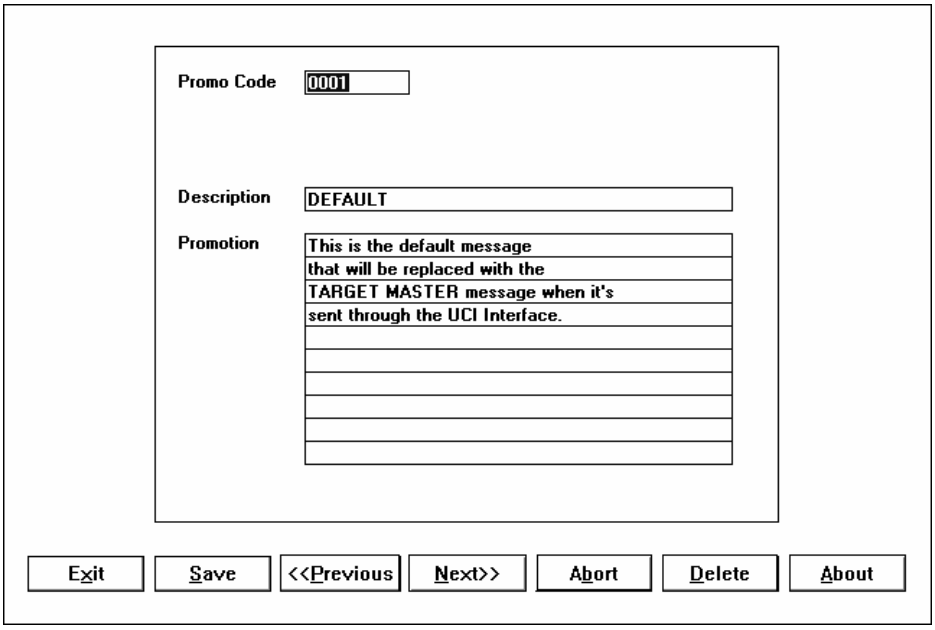


Figure A-27: Customer CRT Promo Editor Screen

Index

—7—

7452, 1-6, 1-7
  Supported Peripherals, 1-7

—A—

Additional Workstation Software Index, 4-33
  Directory Structure, 4-33
Archive
  End of Day Files, 4-72
ASC
  Ascii Directory, 4-24
ASP
  Directory, 4-25
Automatically Back Up ScanMaster, 6-7

—B—

Back Office Workstation
  Configuration, 3-2
  Logging On, 3-4
Batches
  Automatic Activation, 4-63
  Host Directory, 4-20
  Local Directory, 4-20
  Offsale Directory, 4-20
BLANK
  Directory, 4-21
Btrieve
  Creating a File, 5-5
  Displaying File Statistics, 5-2
  File Manager, 5-1
  Rebuilding a File, 5-9
  Recovering a File, 5-7
  Saving Records to Another File, 5-5
  SMWBUTIL, 5-1
Btrieve Data Files, 4-12

—C—

Cable
  Twisted-Pair Interface, 1-15
  Unshielded Twisted-Pair, 1-16
Cashier Reports
  Sending and Receiving, 7-15
Combined Server/ Back Office PC, 1-2
Configuration. *See* also Supported Configuration
Corrupt
  Executables, 7-5
  Files, 7-5
CTL
  Directory, 4-21
  Files, 4-21
Customer File
  Customer File Maintenance, 3-6
  Setting Up, 3-6
Customer Maintenance
  Setting Up, 3-5

—D—

Departments
  Setting Up, 3-4
Disk Mirroring, 2-141
  Hard Drive Failure, 2-142
  Setting Up, 2-141, 2-142
Documentation
  Information Products, 1-12

—E—

Electronic Coupons, 4-46
Electronic Journal, 4-47
  Directory, 4-27
Employee
  Entering Employees into Database, 3-4
  Security, 3-7
Employee Maintenance, 3-4
End of Day
  Adding a Batch File to Script, 4-62
  Adding Executables to the Script, 4-61
  Archiving Files, 4-72
  Automatic Batch Activation, 4-63
  Automatic Server Back Up, 6-7
  Script, 4-61

End-Of-Day
  Two in One Day, 4-26
Equipment location, 1-14
Ethernet Card, 1-14
  Adding Second LAN Card, 7-12
  Configuration, 1-15
  Integrated 10Base T Card, 1-3
  Intel Ethernet Cards, 1-3
  SMC Ethernet 10BaseT Cards, 1-3
  Supported 10Base T, 1-3
Executable Files. *See* ScanMaster Executable Files
Extracting TLog Files, 7-8

—F—

File Recovery Procedures, 6-11
File Structure, 4-1
  Workstation/Server, 4-2
Financial Data Flow, 4-45
FM Terminal Support, 1-11
Full-Disk Condition, 7-6
Full-Table Condition, 7-6

—H—

Handkeyed (0500) Paidouts, 7-14
HISTORY
  Directory, 4-26
Hubs, 1-16

—I—

Individual Server & Back Office PC, 1-2
Installation, 2-1
Installation Procedures, 2-1
Item File
  Setting Up, 3-5
Item Maintenance
  Direct Item Maintenance, 3-5

—L—

LAN Communications, 1-3
License, 1-10
Locked File Condition, 7-7
Log
  Directory, 4-23
Logging On
  Back Office Workstation, 3-4

—M—

Manuals, 1-12
Messages
  Pervasive.SQL v8, 5-11
Minimum and Recommended Requirements, 1-4, 1-5
Mirroring. *See* Disk Mirroring
Modem, 1-3, 1-4

—N—

Network Characteristics, 1-16
Network Interconnection, 1-14
NT Backup
  Automatic, 6-7
  Parameters, 6-7
  Setting Up, 6-7

—O—

Off-Line Mode, 6-2
  Switching, 7-2
On-Line Mode
  Swtiching, 7-4

—P—

Peripheral Hardware
  Programming, 2-137
Pervasive.SQL v8 Utilities, 5-10
POS Workstation
  Blank Directory, 4-40
  CTL Directory, 4-41
  Files, 4-37
  Grocery Directory, 4-37
  Grocery Files Directory, 4-39
  Printer Error, 7-7
  RAMDRIVE Directory, 4-41
  Troubleshooting, 7-7
POS Workstation Directories, 4-36
POS Workstation Software Index, 4-35
  Directory Structure, 4-35
Pricer ESL, 4-62
Printer Error, 7-7
Program Errors, 7-6

—R—

RealPOS 80 / 80c

Supported Peripherals, 1-8
Receipts
Personlize, 3-7
Recovery Procedures, 6-1
File Recovery, 6-11
File Server Power-On Sequence, 6-5
File Server Requires Service, 6-4
Network has Failed, 6-2
Powering Down File Server, 6-3
Switching to On-Line Mode, 6-6
REGFILES
Directory, 4-28
Register Files, 4-28
REGSTART.DAT, 4-42
Remote Support, 1-3

—S—

ScanMaster Executable Files, 4-4
Accounts Receivable, 4-6
Communications, 4-7
Customer Maintenance, 4-5
Department Maintenance, 4-5
DOS Applications, 4-9
Employee Maintenance, 4-5
End of Day Procedure, 4-8
Financial Reports, 4-7
General System Log, 4-9
Grocery, 4-4
Item File Reports, 4-7
Item Maintenance, 4-4
Keyboard Configurator, 4-6
Miscellaneous Item Maintenance, 4-4
Office Procedures, 4-8
Reports, 4-7
Standalone Utilities, 4-9
System Personalization, 4-6
System Services, 4-8
ScanMaster Reconciliation Report
Directory, 4-21
Reports, 4-27
ScanMaster Software Registration, 3-3
Scanner / Scales, 2-137, 2-138
Screensavers, 7-12
Security
Setting Up, 3-7
Setting Date and Time, 3-2
Signature Capture Files, 4-46
Site Preparation, 1-13
Site Preperation
Equipment location, 1-14
Site Wiring, 1-13
Site Wiring, 1-13
SMWBUTIL, 5-1
Interface, 5-2
Software
Application.
System, 1-9
SRR. *See* ScanMaster Reconciliation Report
Sending and Receiving, 7-16
Trouble Shooting, 7-14
SRR Editor
Setting Up, 3-7
Status Codes and Messages
Pervasive.SQL v8, 5-11
Subdepartments
Setting Up, 3-4
Support, 1-4, 1-5
Supported Configuration
Combined Server/Back Office PC, 1-2
Individual Server & Back Office PC, 1-2
Supported Configurations, 1-2
System Needs, 1-3
System Performance
Limiting Screensavers, 7-12
Optimizing, 7-11

—T—

Task switching, 1-1
Tax Table
Setting Up, 3-7
Telxon, 4-32
Third Party Products
Telxon Directory, 4-32
Till
Directory, 4-32
TLog Files
Extracting, 7-8
SMWXTRCT.EXE, 7-8
Trouble Shooting
Balancing Problems, 7-13
Cashier Report, 7-15
End of Day, 7-13
Handkeyed (0500) Paidouts, 7-14
Office Reconciliation, 7-13

Sending Reports, 7-16
SRR, 7-14
Two End of Days, 7-13
Troubleshooting, 7-1
Corrupt Executables, 7-5
Corrupt Files, 7-5
Determining the Characteristics of a File, 7-5
Full Disk Condition, 7-6
Full Table Condition, 7-6
Locked File Condition, 7-7
Network is Down, 7-2
Network is Up, 7-3
POS Workstation, 7-7
Program Errors, 7-6
Recovering a Corrupt File, 7-6
Recreating the Corrupted File, 7-5
Twisted-Pair Interface Cable, 1-15

—U—

Update
Directory, 4-32
User-Defined Menu
Editing, 6-9

—W—

Windows device support, 1-1

© StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC 2010

StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC endeavors to ensure that the information in this document is correct and fairly stated but does not accept liability for any error or omission.

The development of StoreNext products and services is continuous and published information may not be up to date. It is important to check the current position with StoreNext. This document is not part of a contract or license save insofar as may be expressly agreed.

StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC
6100 Tennyson Parkway, Suite 130
Plano, Texas 75024

P/N 89000552
PIN 45001/083